
Block-1
Introduction to Uttarakhand

Unit-1:
Geographic Personality of Uttarakhand

Structure:

- 1.1 Introduction
- 1.2 Objectives
- 1.3 Geographic personality of Uttarakhand
- 1.4 The Famous Geographic personality of Uttarakhand
 - 1.4.1 Himalaya
 - 1.4.2 Rivers
 - 1.4.3 Lakes
 - 1.4.5 Fauna World
 - 1.4.6 Floral World
 - 1.4.7 National Parks, Sanctuaries
- 1.5 Summary
- 1.6 Glossary
- 1.7 Answer to Check your Progress
- 1.8 References
- 1.9 Terminal and Model Questions

1.1 INTRODUCTION

We know Uttarakhand is a state in the northern part of India. It is often referred to as the *Devbhumi* due to the many Hindu temples and pilgrimage centres found throughout the state. Uttarakhand is known for its natural beauty of the Himalayas, the Bhabhar and the Terai. On 9 November 2000, this 27th state of the Republic of India was created from the Himalayan and adjoining northwestern districts of Uttar Pradesh.

Archaeological evidence supports the existence of humans in the region since prehistoric times. Among the first major dynasties of Garhwal and Kumaon were the Kunindas in the 2nd century BC who practised an early form of Shaivism. Ashokan edicts at Kalsi show the early presence of Buddhism in this region. During the medieval period the region was consolidated under the Kumaon Kingdom and Garhwal Kingdom. By 1803 the region fell to the Gorkha Empire of Nepal and with the conclusion of the Anglo-Nepalese War in 1816 most of modern Uttarakhand was ceded to the British as part of the Treaty of Sugauli. Although the erstwhile hill kingdoms of Garhwal and Kumaon were traditional rivals, the proximity of different neighbouring ethnic groups and the inseparable and complementary nature of their geography, economy, culture, language, and traditions created strong bonds between the two regions which further strengthened during the Uttarakhand movement for statehood in the 1990s.

Uttarakhand's name is derived from the Sanskrit words *Uttara* meaning North, and meaning Land, simply means Northern Land. The name finds mention in early Hindu scriptures as the combined region of "Kedarkhand" (present day Garhwal) and "Manaskhand" (present day Kumaon). Uttarakhand was also the ancient Puranic term for the central stretch of the Indian Himalayas. Ancient rock paintings, rock shelters, paleolithic stone tools and megaliths provide evidence that the mountains of the region have been inhabited since prehistoric times. There are also archaeological remains which show the existence of early Vedic practices in the area.

The Pauravas, Kushanas, Kunindas, Guptas, Gurjara pratihara, Katyuris, Raikas, Palas, Chands, Parmars or Panwars, Sikhs, and the British have ruled Uttarakhand in turns. The region was originally settled by Kol people, an aboriginal people of the Austro-Asiatic physical type who were later joined by Indo-Aryan Khasas tribe that arrived from the northwest by the Vedic period (1700–1100 BCE). At that time, present-day Uttarakhand also served as a habitat for Rishis and Sadhus. It is believed that the sage Vyasa scripted the Hindu epic *Mahabharata* in the state.^[10] Among the first major dynasties of Garhwal and Kumaon were the Kunindas. By the medieval period, the region was consolidated under the Garhwal Kingdom in the west and the Kumaon Kingdom in the east. During this period, learning and new forms of painting (the Pahari School of art) developed. Modern-day Garhwal was likewise unified under the rule of Parmars who, along with many Brahmins and Rajputs, also arrived from the plains. In 1791 the expanding Gorkha Empire of Nepal overran Almora, the seat of the Kumaon Kingdom. In 1803 the Garhwal Kingdom also fell to the Gorkhas. With the conclusion of the Anglo-Nepalese War in 1816, the Garhwal Kingdom was re-established from a smaller region in Tehri, as the larger portion of Tehri, along with eastern Garhwal and Kumaon ceded to the British as part of the Treaty of Sugauli.

As you know, after India attained independence from the British, the Garhwal Kingdom was merged into the state of Uttar Pradesh, where Uttarakhand composed the Garhwal and Kumaon Divisions. Uttarakhand, which gained significant momentum in 1994, when demand for separate statehood achieved almost unanimous acceptance among both the local populace and national political parties.^[16] The most notable incident during this period was the Rampur Tiraha firing case on the night of 1 October 1994, which led to a public uproar. On 24 September 1998, the Uttar Pradesh Legislative Assembly passed the Uttar Pradesh Reorganisation Bill, which began the process of creating a new state. Two years later the Parliament of India passed the Uttar Pradesh Reorganisation Act 2000, and thus, on 9 November

2000, Uttarakhand became the 27th state of the Republic of India. Here in this unit we go through the geographic importance of the state.

1.2 OBJECTIVES

The main objectives of this chapter are as follows:

- To give you details of Uttarakhand Geography.
- To make you well known to the famous beautiful natural sites of state.
- Importance of state geography

1.3 GEOGRAPHIC PERSONALITIES OF UTTARAKHAND

The state is divided into two divisions, Garhwal and Kumaon, with a total of 13 districts. The interim capital of Uttarakhand is Dehradun, the largest city in the region, which is a railhead. The geography of Uttarakhand reveals that it is surrounded by Himachal Pradesh in the north-west and Uttar Pradesh in the south and shares its international borders with Nepal and China. The state is quite rich in natural resources. The well known Himalayan peaks of Nanda Devi, Kedarnath, Trishul, Bandarpunch and Mt Kamet and the important glaciers like Gangotri, Pindari, Milam and Khatling are situated in Uttarakhand. The Ganga, the Yamuna, Ramganga and Sharda are rivers contributing to the geography of this region. The state of Uttarakhand covers twelve prominent ecological zones of the country. These are:

- Nanda Devi National Park
- Valley of Flowers
- Gangotri
- Govind National Park
- Rajaji National Park
- Kedarnath
- Mussoorie
- Binsar
- Sanadi
- Govind sanctuary

- Ascod sanctuary

The key factor of the above division is:

- All these divisions support many rare plants and animal communities.
- Uttarakhand is one of the most picturesque areas of north India (and beyond). It is a land of considerable natural beauty. The northern part of the state of Uttarakhand is shrouded by Himalayan ranges and glaciers, whereas the lower parts of the state are thickly forested. The Himalayan ecosystem plays host to a large number of animals, plants and rare herbs.
- The geography of Uttarakhand makes it an ideal place for hiking, walking or trekking. You will find several frequented trails, several among them even well documented. Besides, you can also take advantage of the long and solitary walks through fields, hills and mountains.
- Two of India's biggest rivers, the Ganga (Ganges) and the Yamuna originate in the glaciers of Uttarakhand and are supplied with water on a perennial basis by numerous lakes, glaciers and many streams in the region. The geography of Uttarakhand is such that it has been usually divided into two parts, the western half known as Garhwal and the eastern region as Kumaon. The source of the word Uttarakhand is the Sanskrit term for North Country.

Uttarakhand has a total area of 53,484 km², of which 93% is mountainous and 65% is covered by forest. Most of the northern part of the state is covered by high Himalayan peaks and glaciers. In the first half of the nineteenth century, the expanding development of Indian roads, railways and other physical infrastructure was giving rise to concerns over indiscriminate logging, particularly in the Himalaya. Two of the most important rivers in Hinduism originate in the region, the Ganga at Gangotri and the Yamuna at Yamunotri. These two along with Badrinath and Kedarnath form the Chota Char Dham, a holy pilgrimage for the Hindus. The state hosts the Bengal tiger in Jim Corbett National Park, the oldest national park of the Indian subcontinent. The Valley of Flowers, a Unesco World

Heritage Site located in the upper expanses of Bhyundar Ganga near Joshimath in Gharwal region, is known for the variety and rarity of its flowers and plants.

One who raised this was Sir Joseph Dalton Hooker, Director of the Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew, who visited the region. As a consequence, Lord Dalhousie issued the Indian Forest Charter in 1855, reversing the previous laissez-faire policy. The following Indian Forest Act of 1878 put Indian forestry on a solid scientific basis. A direct consequence was the founding of the Imperial Forest School at Dehradun by Dietrich Brandis in 1878. Renamed the 'Imperial Forest Research Institute' in 1906, it is now known as the Forest Research Institute (India). The model "Forest Circles" around Dehradun, used for training, demonstration and scientific measurements, had a lasting positive influence on the forests and ecology of the region. The Himalayan ecosystem provides habitat for many animals (including bharal, snow leopards, leopards and tigers), plants, and rare herbs. Two of India's largest rivers, the Ganges and the Yamuna, originate in the glaciers of Uttarakhand, where they are fed by myriad lakes, glacial melts and streams.

Uttarakhand lies on the southern slope of the Himalaya range, and the climate and vegetation vary greatly with elevation, from glaciers at the highest elevations to subtropical forests at the lower elevations. The highest elevations are covered by ice and bare rock. Below them, between 3,000 and 5,000 metres (9,800 and 16,400 ft) are the western Himalayan alpine shrub and meadows. The temperate western Himalayan subalpine conifer forests grow just below the tree line. At 3,000 to 2,600 metres (9,800 to 8,500 ft) elevation they transition to the temperate western Himalayan broadleaf forests, which lie in a belt from 2,600 to 1,500 metres (8,500 to 4,900 ft) elevation. Below 1,500 metres (4,900 ft) elevation lie the Himalayan subtropical pine forests. The Upper Gangetic Plains moist deciduous forests and the drier Terai-Duar savanna and grasslands cover the lowlands along the Uttar Pradesh border in a belt locally known as Bhabhar. These lowland forests have mostly been cleared for agriculture, but a few pockets remain.

CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. How many districts are in Uttarakhand?

Ans.....

2. In how many ecological zones the state is divided?

Ans.....

3. What is Kumaun called in early Hindu edicts?

Ans.....

4. Who founded F.R.I?

Ans.....

5. Name the first major dynasty of Uttarakhand

Ans.....

1.4 THE FAMOUS GEOGRAPHIC PERSONALITY OF UTTARAKHAND

The state Uttarakhand is the unique place. The state has its identity for its specific geographical situation. There are number of geographic places which we can treat as the Geographic personality of state. The short descriptions of some of them are as follows:

1.4.1 Himalaya

Uttarakhand is a state of immense natural beauty, boasting some major hills that contribute much to rendering tourism, the source of revenue in the state. The northern areas comprise part of the Greater Himalayan ranges, shrouded by lofty Himalayan peaks and glaciers, whereas the lower foothills were thickly forested till deforested by British log traders and forest contractors in the post independence period. The major hills are regularly visited by tourists from all over the country.

The Himalayas, or Himalaya, Sanskrit word meaning "abode of the snow") is a mountain range in South Asia which separates the Indo-Gangetic Plain from the Tibetan Plateau. This range is home to more than one hundred mountains exceeding 7,200 metres (23,600 ft) in altitude, and all of the planet's peaks exceeding 8,000 metres, including the highest, Mount Everest. The Himalayas have profoundly shaped the

cultures of South Asia. Many Himalayan peaks are sacred in both Buddhism and Hinduism. The Himalayas are bordered on the north by the Tibetan Plateau, on the south by the Indo-Gangetic Plain, on the northwest by the Karakoram and Hindu Kush ranges, and on the east by the Indian state of Assam. The western anchor of the Himalayas – Nanga Parbat – lies just south of the northernmost bend of the Indus River, while the eastern anchor – Namcha Barwa – is situated just west of the great bend of the Yarlung Tsangpo River. The Himalayas span five countries: India, Nepal, Bhutan, China, and Pakistan, with the first three countries having sovereignty over most of the range. Lifted by the collision of the Indian tectonic plate with the Eurasian Plate,^[3] the Himalayan range runs northwest to southeast in a 2,400 kilometres (1,500 mi) long arc. The range varies in width from 400 kilometres (250 mi) in the west to 150 kilometres (93 mi) in the east. Besides the Greater Himalayas, there are several parallel lower ranges. The southernmost of these, located along the northern edge of the Indian plains and reaching about a thousand meters in altitude, are called the Sivalik Hills. Further north is a higher range, reaching two to three thousand meters, known as the Lower Himalayan Range. Three of the world's major rivers – the Indus, the Ganges and the Brahmaputra – arise in the Himalayas. While the Indus and the Brahmaputra rise near Mount Kailash in Tibet, the Ganges rises in the Indian state of Uttarakhand. Their combined drainage basin is home to some 600 million people.

So, Uttarakhand is also called as the “Land of the Gods” is one of the most beautiful state in India, very well known for its Himalayan Mountain Peaks, natural beauty and Terai, The marshy grasslands, savannas and forests of the Himalaya. Uttarakhand has some of the tallest and most beautiful peaks of the great Himalayas in India, Many Himalaya mountain peaks of Uttarakhand are unclimbed and unnamed are situated in the Karakoram ranges, Garhwal and Kumaon Himalayas. The major hills of Uttarakhand Himalaya:

- **Nanda Devi:** The Nanda Devi is the second highest mountain peak in India and highest entirely within the country. Nanda Devi main summit is 7,816 m (25,643 ft) high located at Chamoli District and Nanda Devi East is 7,434 m (24,390 ft) high in Pithoragarh-Chamoli. The peak of Nanda Devi is a national park known as Nanda Devi National Park and Valley of Flowers National Park at northwest.
- **Kamet:** Kamet is the second tallest mountain in Garhwal region of Uttarakhand in the Chamoli District, It is 29th highest mountain peak in the world and 3rd highest mountain in Indian Territory.
- **AbiGamin:** Abi Gamin Mountain peak is situated in the Chamoli district of Uttarakhand and very famous for Joshimath Trek. Joshimath is gateway to several Himalayan mountain climbing expeditions, trekking trails and pilgrim centers.
- **Mana Peak:** Mana Peak is one of the three Himalayan peaks linked by a ridge, Kamet, Abi Gamin and Mukut Parbat being other. Badrinath the land of God Shiva offers amazing view of the Mana Peak.
- **Mukut Parbat:** The Mukut Parbat is situated in the Garhwal Himalayas, It is the four main peaks of the Kamet group known as (Kamet, Abi Gamin, Mukut Parbat, Mana). Mukut Parbat is well famous peak in the Uttarakhand.
- **Hardeol:** The Temple of God or Hardeol is situated in Kumaon Himalaya and known as one of the major peaks of Pithoragarh district. Hardeol is guarding the Nanda Devi Sanctuary from the northeast corner.
- **ChaukhambaI:** Chaukhamba I is the main summit and the highest peak in the Gangotri Group of the Garhwal Himalaya, It has four mountain summits other are known as Chaukhamba II, Chaukhamba III and Chaukhamba IV.
- **Satopanth:** Satopanth mountain peak is major peak of the Garhwal division of the Himalayas and very famous for its Satopanth Glacier, Satopanth Tal or Satopanth Lake. Garhwal region is very famous for its amazing snow-capped peaks.

- **Tirsuli:** Tirsuli is one of the top 10 highest Himalayan mountain peak of Uttarakhand, situated in the Pithoragarh district of Kumaon region. It is part of the complex Greater Himalaya Mountains.

1.4.2 Rivers

Uttarakhand, located in Northern India, contains some of the most important and major rivers of India. The Ganga and the Yamuna have their sources in this state and comprise the most famous and major rivers of the country as a whole. They are supplied with water on a perennial basis by numerous lakes, glaciers and countless streams in the area.

1. Alaknanda: The is a Himalayan river in the state of Uttarakhand, India and one of the two headstreams of the Ganges, the major river of Northern India and the holy river of Hinduism. In hydrology, the Alaknanda is considered the source stream of the Ganges on account of its greater length and discharge;^[1] however, in Hindu mythology and culture, the other headstream, the Bhagirathi, is considered the source stream. Several rivers in the Garhwal region merge with the Alaknanda at Panch Prayag or 'holy confluence of rivers'. These are:

1. Vishnuprayag, where the Alaknanda is met by the Dhauliganga River
2. Nandaprayag, where it is met by the Nandakini River
3. Karnaprayag, where it is met by the Pindar River
4. Rudraprayag, where it is met by the Mandakini River
5. Devprayag, where it meets the Bhagirathi River and officially becomes the Ganges

The headwaters of the Bhagirathi are formed at Gaumukh (elevation 3,892 metres (12,769 ft)), at the foot of the Gangotri glacier and Khatling glaciers in the Garhwal Himalaya. It is then joined by its tributaries; these are, in order from the source:

- *Kedar Ganga* at Gangotri (elevation 3,049 m (10,003 ft)),
- *Jadh Ganga* at Bhaironghati (elevation 2,650 m (8,690 ft)),

- *Kakora Gad* and *Jalandhari Gad* near Harsil (elevation 2,745 m (9,006 ft))
- *Siyon Gad* near Jhala (elevation 2,575 m (8,448 ft)),
- *Asi Ganga* near Uttarkashi (elevation 1,158 m (3,799 ft)),
- *Bhilingna River* near Old Tehri (elevation 755 m (2,477 ft)).

The *Bhilingna* itself rises at the foot of the Khatling Glacier approximately 50 km (31 mi) south of Gaumukh.

2. Ganga: The Ganges is the most sacred river to Hindus. It is also a lifeline to millions of Indians who live along its course and depend on it for their daily needs.^[5] It is worshipped as the goddess *Ganga* in Hinduism. It has also been important historically, with many former provincial or imperial capitals located on its banks.

The Ganges begins at the confluence of the Bhagirathi and Alaknanda rivers at Devprayag. The Bhagirathi is considered to be the true source in Hindu culture and mythology, although the Alaknanda is longer^{[14][15]} The headwaters of the Alakananda are formed by snowmelt from such peaks as Nanda Devi, Trisul, and Kamet. The Bhagirathi rises at the foot of Gangotri Glacier, at Gaumukh, at an elevation of 3,892 m (12,769 ft)

3. Tons: The Tons is the largest tributary of the Yamuna and flows through Garhwal region in Uttarakhand, touching Himachal Pradesh. The Tons thrust is named after this river. Tons valley lies in Jaunsar Bawar region, as it emerges from the Himalayas has Dehradun on its eastern bank. The cantonment town of Chakrata is situated between, the Tons and Yamuna rivers. Along with Ganges, it has now become a major destination for water-based adventure sports like white-water rafting in Uttarakhand. You can stay at Jaunsar Bawar region on the banks of the Tons river and enjoy the grade 4 rafting. Typical season for rafting in Tons is till July.

4. Yamuna: Originating from the Yamunotri Glacier at a height of 6,387 metres on the south western slopes of Banderpooch peaks in the uppermost region of the Lower Himalayas in Uttarakhand, The source of Yamuna lies in the Yamunotri Glacier at a height 6,387 metres, on the south western slopes of Banderpooch peaks, which lie in

the Mussoorie range of Lower Himalayas, in the Uttarkashi district, Uttarakhand, north of Haridwar.

Yamunotri temple, a shrine dedicated to the goddess, Yamuna is one of the holiest shrines in Hinduism, and part of the Chota Char Dham Yatra circuit. Also standing close to the temple, on its 13 km trek route, that follows the right bank of the river, lies the *Markendeya Tirtha*, where the sage Markandeya wrote the Markandeya Purana.

1.4.3 Lakes

Uttarakhand is located in the northern India and is a place that has something to offer for every visitor visiting the place. It is a beautiful place that is also called the land of lakes and waterfalls. It is a place where one can find some of the most beautiful landscapes, mountains, etc. There are a number of beautiful and picturesque lakes in Uttarakhand. Given below is a list of some famous lakes in Uttarakhand: The following are the important lakes of Uttarakhand:

- Devaria Tal
- Kedar Tal
- Dodi Tal
- Sahastra Tal & Masar Tal
- Nachiketa Tal
- BhimTal
- **Sat Tal:** Sat Tal is one of the major tourist attractions, situated in the Nainital district of Uttarakhand. The term Sat Tal, in Hindi, means “seven lakes”. The place is so called because it is an interconnected group of seven freshwater lakes, namely 'Panna or Garud Tal', 'Nal-Damyanti Tal', 'Purna Tal', 'Sita Tal', 'Ram Tal', 'Laxman Tal', and 'Sukha Tal or Khurdariya'. Sat Tal is located in lower range of Himalayas, just 23 km away from Nainital city.
- **Vasuki Tal:** Uttarakhand is one of the most beautiful state in India and lakes in Uttarakhand makes the place more scenic and mesmerising. These picturesque lakes

of Uttarakhand tourism not only makes it admirable but also attracts lots of photographers and nature lovers. Also known as land of lakes and waterfalls, Uttarkahand tourism also harbours many mountain lakes which makes the angelic landscape a must-visit place for the tourists. Here are some of the alluring lakes of Uttarakhand which should be a part of your itinerary the next time you venture out for Uttarakhand tourism.

- **Naini Lake:** One of the appealing lakes in Uttarakhand, Naini Lake or Nainital Lake is situated in Nainital. It has a crescent shape and there are various legends related to it. Naina Peak surrounds the lake and as such the coniferous forests from the lake look splendid. Various species of flora and fauna are found around the lake. Annual Kingfisher Yachting Competition in June and Kumaon Festival in October and November are some of the occasions organised here.
- **Shyamla Tal:** This Lake in Uttarakhand is renowned for Swami Vivekananda Ashram which is located at the bank of the lake. Legends of Pandavas and Chand rulers are associated with the lake. The blue colour looks pictorial as it attracts many photographers.
- **Bheemtal:** Bheemtal Lake situated in Bheemtal is a unique lake in Uttarakhand. An island at the middle of the lake is the largest lake of Uttarakhand. This lake is perennial and houses innumerable water species which are worth discovering in Uttarakhand tourism. It attracts many birds from the Himalayas.
- **Dodital:** A freshwater lake, Dodital is regarded as abode of Lord Ganesha. Tourists coming here can halt at forest houses which are maintained by the Forest Department. Adventure seekers can also carry tents. One has take a walk from Uttarkashi, where the road leads through many small villages beside river Ganga. Enthusiasts can also enjoy trekking.
- **Kagbhusandi Lake:** This Lake in Uttarakhand is on the way to Valley of Flowers. Situated in Vishnuprayag, the crystal clear water of the lake grants a magical stature to

the lake. Trekkers can seek the way from Bhundhar Village which involves a trek of 20 km. It is a difficult route and as such travellers to Kagbhusandi Lake are very less.

- **Vasuki Tal:** Situated at a height of above 4135 m, Vasuki Tal is a gorgeous lake of Uttarakhand tourism. A mountain lake by nature, Vasuki Tal is 8 km from Kedarnath. Chaukhamba Peak surrounds the lake. Visitors are suggested to pay a visit during the months of June to October as weather conditions become too harsh before and after that. Apart from pilgrims touring to Kedarnath, Vasuki Tal is also a photographer's hub.
- **Maneri:** Maneri Dam is responsible for the production of hydroelectricity. Situated in Uttarkashi, it is located on the left bank of river Bhagirathi. A magnificent lake has formed here which looks dazzling with the reflection of sunlight. Though it is not that popular, yet it is slowly gathering tourist attraction. Travellers can also camp at this site.
- **Dhalipur Lake:** Asan Barrage at Uttarakhand-Himachal Pradesh border owes a reservoir called Dhalipur Lake. More than 53 bird species resides here and around 19 species of birds migrate from Eurasia. This makes Dhalipur Lake one of the favourite spots for bird lovers. Water sports resort has been developed here which gives an opportunity to enjoy water skiing, boating, rowing, kayaking and canoeing.
- **Kedar Tal:** Kedar Tal is a mountain lake which is formed from glacier. Situated in the Garhwal region of the Himalayas, the lake holds mythological importance. It is an important trek route where trekkers come across various Himalayan birches and rocky landscape.
- **Nachiketa Tal:** This Lake in Uttarakhand is 3 km trek from Chaurangkhal which is 29 km from Uttarkashi. The serenity by the lake is ideal place to soothe your tired nerves. The temple located by the Nachiketa Tal also attracts many pilgrims. Due to dense forest which comprises the surrounding of the lake, migratory birds are found in huge density. Yachts and paddle boats keep the tourists engaged.

- **Sahastra Tal and Masar Tal:** Trekkers who are venturing the Khatlang glacier will come across these two lakes in Uttarakhand which lie on either side of the glacier. June to September is the ideal time to trek this route when the lakes look divine with green meadows and colourful flowers. Sahastra Tal situated at the end of Khatling Glacier can be reached after rigorous trekking through streams and woodlands. The elegant view of Himalayas from these lakes will remain for a lifetime memory.
- **Devaria Tal:** Devaria Tal or Deoria Tal is on Ukhimath-Chopta road. Verdant green landscape with snow clad mountain as the backdrop is ideal feature of Uttarkhand tourism. Tourists can reach the lake by jeep which starts from Ukhimath. A 7 km trek can also be enjoyed from Ukhimath to Devaria Tal. Jungle trek and overnight camp are some of the activities which can engage the enthusiasts. Mythological stories are related to the lake.
- **Hemkund:** Though Hemkund Sahib is a pilgrimage destination for Sikhs, Hemkund Lake is a mountain lake which is surrounded by seven mountain peaks. Located in Chamoli district, this lake looks gorgeous during winters when it is fed by glaciers. Situated in the Himalayas, the lake becomes inaccessible from October to April.
- **Govind Ghat:** This sublime lake leads to the famous Hemkund Sahib and Valley of Flowers. While the former is 20 km trek from this lake in Uttarakhand, the later is around 17 km. Located in the Chamoli district, the lake has formed by the rivers Lakshman Ganga and Alaknanda.
- **Satopanth Tal:** A mountain lake by nature, Sayopnath Lake is situated amidst snow-capped peaks. It holds lots of religious significance for the local people residing here. Trekkers can trek by this lake which is triangular in shape. The route to the lake is quite risky and challenging. Lotus flower is found in abundance in this lake.
- **Sattal:** Sattal or Sat Tal means seven lakes and it is a group of seven fresh water lakes in Bhimtal. Verdant orchards are found by the landscape just above the lakes. Oak and pine trees form the lush green backdrop. This lake in Uttarakhand attracts

many migratory birds and adventure seekers love to camp by the pristine lake. It harbours variety of aqua species.

- **Kashni Tal:** Situated by the Madhyamaheshwar temple, this serene lake can be visited on the way to Kedarnath and Badrinath. It is a part of Garhwal Himalayas where a river Madhyamaheshwar Ganga originates.
- **Naukuchiatal:** Literally meaning a lake with nine corners, Naukuchiatal is amazing lake of Uttarakhand tourism. It is situated in Nainital district. Hilly landscape makes for its backdrop which comprises of trees and shrubs. Apart from rowing, paddling and yachting, tourists can also enjoy bird watching and angling.

CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

6. Why Uttarakhand is called Abode of God?

Ans.....

7. Name the decond hiegest mountain of India.

Ans.....

8. How many pryag are in Uttaakhand?

Ans.....

9. Where do Bhagirathi meet Alknanda?

Ans.....

10. Which lake is called Abode of Ganesha?

Ans.....

.....

1.4.5 Fauna World

Uttarakhand, owing to its diverse topography and unexploited territories boasts of a vast variety of exotic fauna. Ranging from towering mountains perennially snow bound to the river valleys, undulating hills to the densely forested Terai, you will find a rich variety of fauna. This is why most visitors to the state find their travel incomplete without a trip to the wild life sanctuaries of Uttarakhand.

The wide diversity of bird - life in Uttarakhand is distributed according to the

altitude. Among the pheasants found here are the kalij, kokla, chir and monal. The monal with its resplendent plumage of metallic green, glistening purple, startling red and jet - black, is a sight to behold. It moves about in small groups and takes flight when one almost stumbles upon it. Monal is state bird of the state. More than four hundred varieties of birds have been recorded in the Himalayan region. The shore a forest host, the Jewel Thrush, Black headed Oriole, Black headed yellow Bulbul, Rosy Minivet, Laughing Thrush, Golden Backed Wood pecker and the Blue fly Catcher, Wintering waterfowl include the Goosander, Brahminy Duck & Green Shank, Grey headed Fishing Eagles may also be seen by the river edge.

Among the animal world, Leopards are found in areas which are abundant in hills but may also venture into the lowland jungles. Smaller felines include the jungle cat, fishing cat, and leopard cat. Besides monkeys, longurs, wild-cats, goats, pigs, foxes and dogs, the district is noted for its black bears which are found in the Tehri forest division at lower altitudes and the brown and white bears which are found at higher altitudes. The black bear lives generally in oak forests. The brown and white bear is found mostly in the snow regions. Besides domesticated cattle, other animals generally met with here are bharal (Himalayan blue sheep), Himalayan thar, goral, kastura (musk-deer) and sambar. The Himalayan blue sheep or bharal is generally found above 4,270 m. in summer and is seldom seen at below 3,000 m. It is shy, quick and speedy and prefers undulating open ground. The flying squirrel, locally known as rinoola, is found largely in the Yamuna forest division.

Snakes are not numerous in the district but the cobra and the Russel's viper are commonly found up to 1,800 m. The only hill- snake found above the altitude of 2,400 m. is *Ancistrodon himalayanus* which attains a length of about 65 cm. and is venomous though its bite is not fatal. Among the non-venomous snakes, the python is most notable. Fish is found in almost all the rivers, streams and lakes. The Jalkur, the Aglar, the Bhillangana, the Bhagirathi (the Ganga) and the Alaknanda abound in the larger

fish. Some of these known as Gidhi, Gyoonri, Ghoonla weigh from 1 to 3 kg. while bara khasra weighs about 10 kg.

1.4.6 Floral World

Uttarakhand houses a rich wealth of flora that mostly comprises of a variety of flowers. The flora of Uttarakhand contains the alpine meadows where flowers of different hues bloom every spring. The flora of Uttarakhand is chiefly concentrated in the Garhwal region, which is also known as the 'Valley of Flowers'. Analogous to its name, the valley in Garhwal houses a multitude of flowers of different colors. Moreover, as the statistics says, the flora of Uttarakhand comprises 343 species representing 256 genera belonging to 107 families.

Uttarakhand comprises of 13 districts spreading over an area of 51,082 sq km, Floristically, it falls under the west Himalayan Biogeography zone and it is well-known for floral diversity similar to any other Himalayan region in the country with nearly 4048 species of Angiosperms and Gymnosperms belonging to 1198 genera under 192 families. Of these nearly 116 species are specific to Uttarakhand i.e. their geographical distribution is limited to the boundaries of the state. 161 species of flora found in Uttarakhand are recognized as rare or threatened under the categorization of the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN). Out of the 223 species of Orchids reported from the North Western Himalayas, over 150 have been reported from the State. This precious natural wealth is our common heritage. In order to conserve this heritage, the state has declared twelve areas as 'Protected' including 6 National Parks and six Wildlife Sanctuaries. Nearly 65% of the geographical area of the State is under forest cover, of which over 12% comes under the Protected Area network. This exceeds the national average by a fair margin and is a reflection of the state's commitment to conservation. The Corbett National Park, established in 1936 is the first National Park of the Asian mainland. The Nandadevi Biosphere Reserve, established under the "Man and biosphere" programme of UNESCO has the honour of being Uttarakhand's only

and the country's second Biosphere Reserve. This biodiversity wealth is the pride of Uttarakhand. The floral diversity of state can be classified as:

- The sub-tropical zone has pure as well as mixed forests of Shore Robusta (Sa I), the others being *Lanea coromandelica* (Jhingan), *Buchanania lanzan*, *Dalbergia disso* (Shisham), *Haldina cordifolia* (Haldu), *Syzygium cumini* (Jamun), *Mallotus philippinensis* (Rohini), *Mitragyna parvifolia*, *Terminalia* spp. (Myrobalans), *Ficus* spp. (Figs), *Macaranga pustulata*, *Callicarpa arborea*, *Diopoknema butyracea* (Chyura), *Bauhinia variegata* (Kachnar).
- The Temperate zone is marked by the presence of *Quercus leucotrichophora* (Banj oak), *Rhododendron arboretum* (Burans), *Myrica esculenta* (Kaphal), *Leonia ovalifolia* (Aynor), *Ilex dipyrrena*, *Quercus semecarpifolia* (Kharsu Oak), *Q. dilatata* (Moru Oak), etc. The coniferous forests in this zone are unique. Pure stands of *Pinus roxburghii* (Chir Pine) and *Cedrus deodar* (Deodar, Cedar), *Abies windrow* (Raga), *Pinus wallichiana* (Kail), *Taxus wallichiana* (Thuner, Himalayan Yew) at places give a pristine look to the slopes.
- In the sub-alpine and alpine zone the tree species are represented by *Pinus wallichiana*, *Abies pindrow*, *Prunus cornuta*, *Acer caesium*, *Betula utilis* (Bhoj Patra) and *Salix* sp. Species of the genera *Cotoneaster*, *Rosa*, *Berberis*, *Ribes*, *Junipers*, *Rhododendron anthropogenic*, *Rhododendron campanulas* are the shrubby components of the zone. The herbaceous vegetation is represented by a number of species of genera *Potentilla*, *Primula*, *Aster*, *Saxifrage*, *Achaeon*, *Delphinium*, *Polygonal*, *Corydalis*, *Pleurospermum*, *Meconopsis*,

1.4.7 National Parks, Sanctuaries

1. Govind (Pashu Vihar) Wild Life Sanctuary (altitude: 1,300m to 6,315m): Govind Wildlife Sanctuary is surrounded by Uttarkashi district. The sanctuary spread over an area of 953 sq. kms. This sanctuary was set up in 1955. It is believed to be one of the most beautiful towns in the Garhwal region. It has snowclad peaks and glaciers

including mountains like Swarg Rohini, Black Peak and Bandarpunch. The popular destination for the trekkers is Har-ki-dun, which is famous for its emerald greenery.

2. Kedarnath Sanctuary: The Sanctuary established in the year 1972. Kedarnath Sanctuary lies broadly at 967 sq km in the land of gods Garhwal. In the wasteland of this sanctuary, animals like snow leopard, snow cock, tahr, musk deer, leopard and serow can be seen along with many species of birds.

3. Nanda Devi Sanctuary: Nanda Devi Sanctuary is situated in Chamoli district. It lies just next to the Nanda Devi peak. It was established in 1980. The first men to have reached this Sanctuary, while yet in its perfect form, were the British mountaineers Eric Shipton and Bill Tillman. The area had largely remained peaceful until then, except for Tillman's successful attempt on Nanda Devi in 1936. The present sanctuary came into existence in 1939. There are no roads available and the area is unreachable. The only way to reach this sanctuary is to drive from Joshimath 25 km by road upto Lata and then 51 km trekking up to the sanctuary. Fauna includes Snow leopard, Himalayan Bear, Musk deer and Pheasant. The best season to visit is from April to May. Nanda Devi Sanctuary covers an area of 630 sq km.

4. Rajaji National Park: Uttarakhand: The Rajaji National Park is rich in faunal wealth because of the varied types of ecological niches existing in the reserve. The main groups occur are birds, mammals & reptiles snakes and lizards, amphibians (frogs & toads) and fishes. Besides, other mammals like hyena, jackal and Bengal fox are not an uncommon sight and work as scavengers in the park. 315 birds species are reported to occur in the park. Birds like ducks, teals, cormorants, egrets, lapwing, pond herons, peafowl, jungle fowl, various species of partridges and pheasants, drongo, crows, owlets and nightjars, birds of prey, etc, are quite common.

5. Valley of Flowers National Park: Uttarakhand: The famous Valley of Flowers with the largest concentration of various species of wild flowers. A virtual treat to the eyes, this beautiful valley in the Himalayas was established in the year 1982. This park, the

smallest national park in the Himalayas was created to protect the catchment area of the Pushpavati River.

6. Askot Sanctuary: Askot sanctuary is situated at a distance of 54 km from Pithoragarh. Askot was the ancient kingdom of Katyur dynasty it also has a palace of the last Katyuri king. The name of Askot has been derived from the word Asi-kot that is 80 forts. There are remains of the ancient forts all over the area. The area is rich for its sal, oak and pine forest and rich waterfalls. The places of interest in the sanctuary are snow leopards, Himalayan black bears, musk deers, snow cocks, tahrs, bharals, monals, chirs, koklas, pheasants and chukors.

7. Binsar Sanctuary: Binsar was summer capital of the Chand kings. It is located at a distance of 31 km from Amoral. Binsar is famous for its outstanding Himalayan view, Birds and wild life. Binsar is one of the most attractive spots in the Kumaon Himalayas and a well - acclaimed hill resort with plenty of Wild Life. Binsar Hills is also known, as Handy Dear. The surroundings prosper in alpine flora, ferns, hanging moss and species of wild flowers. The chief attraction of Binsar is the splendid view of the Himalayas-a 300 km stretch of famous peaks, which includes Kedarnath, Chaukhamba, Trisul, Nanda Devi, Nanda Kot and Panchchuli

8. Corbett National Park: Country's first wildlife Park established in 1936, extends in an area of 1318.54 sq km lies in Pauri Garhwal and Nainital districts. Jim Corbett Park is home to the thunderous tiger, trumpeting elephant and the twittering birds. The park has earned the name of "Land of Roar, Trumpet and Song". The Park is situated in the foothills of Uttarakhand gifting a sight of extraordinary beauty. It is the Patlidun, a broad flat valley, where the shining, rushing water of the river Ramganga wander through the hills and valleys. In Jim Corbet Park wild elephants, leopards, hyenas, jackals and wild dogs are found. There are also some superb hog deer, barking deer, sambhar, chital and bears, both lazy and Himalayan. There is an occasional grief and some goral, mongooses, palm squirrel, flying squirrel, ratel, wild cat, antelopes, deer, wild boar, otter and porcupine. There are eight watchtowers in the park and to view

the wonders from November to June elephants are available in Dhikala and Bijrani. The river passes through the heart of the park and emerges into the plains at Kalagarh.

1.5 SUMMARY

Uttarakhand is the state having rich variety of geography. In other word we can say that the state has its name not in the country but out side country for its Geographic personality. In this unit we described this variety of its geographic personality under the heading mountain, rivers, Lake Etc. No doubt the huge number of tourists came here to enjoy the geographic beauty of state. Almost all the pilgrimage place of the state have their identity also for their peculiar geography.

The geographic personality of the state plays important role in the economy of state. Hence it is duty of all of us to conserve the geographic personality of the state.

1.6 GLOSSARY

- Pilgrimage- to go for holy place
- Flora- botanical plants
- Fauna- animal world
- Glacier-moving field of ice
- Unique-unmatched
- Roar-sound like lion

1.7 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1.13

2.12

3. Manskhand

4. Dietrich Bradis

5. Kuninda

6. Number of Holy places

7. Nanda Devi

8. 5

9. Devpryag

10. Dodital

1.8 REFERENCES

1. "About Us". Government of Uttarakhand. Retrieved 17 July 2012.
2. Kandari, O. P., & Gusain, O. P. (Eds.). (2001). Garhwal Himalaya: Nature, Culture & Society. Srinagar, Garhwal: Transmedia.
3. Negi, B. (2001). "Round One to the Lobbyists, Politicians and Bureaucrats." The Indian Express, 2 January.
4. "Uttarakhand becomes Uttarakhand". UNI. The Tribune (India). 13 October 2006. Retrieved 22 January 2013.
5. Subhash, Kak. "The Mahabharata as an encyclopaedia". Louisiana State University. Retrieved 5 August 2012.
6. Saklani, D. P. (1998). Ancient communities of the Himalaya. New Delhi: Indus Pub. Co.
7. Pande, B. D. (1993). History of Kumaun: English version of "Kumaun Ka Itihas". Almora, U.P., India: Shyam Prakashan: Shree Almora Book Depot.
8. Rawat, A. S. (1989). History of Garhwal, 1358-1947: an erstwhile kingdom in the Himalayas. New Delhi: Indus Pub. Co.
9. Saklani, A. (1987). The history of a Himalayan princely state: change, conflicts and awakening: an interpretative history of princely state of Tehri Garhwal, U.P., A.D. 1815 to 1949 A.D. (1st ed.). Delhi: Durga Publications.
10. Aggarwal, J. C., Agrawal, S. P., & Gupta, S. S. (Eds.). (1995). Uttarakhand: past, present, and future. New Delhi: Concept Pub. Co.
11. Jain, Sharad K.; Pushpendra K. Agarwal; Vijay P. Singh (2007). Hydrology and water resources of India- Volume 57 of Water science and technology library - Yamuna River. Springer. pp. 344-354. ISBN 1-4020-5179-4.

1.9 TERMINAL AND MODEL QUESTIONS

Long Questions:

1. Describe the Geographic personality of Uttarakhand.

2. Describe the Himalaya as the geographic personality of Uttarakhand.
3. Write an essay on lakes of Uttarakhand.

Short Questions:

1. What is Bharal?
2. Flying squirrel of Yamuna forest is called.
3. Where do you find the valley of flowers?
4. What percentage of forest is of Uttarakhand?
5. Where is Govind Wild life sanctuary situated?

Unit-2

Historical Perspective

Structure:

- 2.1 Introduction
- 2.2 Objectives
- 2.3 Touristic Heritage
- 2.4 Historical Touristic Heritage of Uttarakhand
 - 2.4.1 Culture
 - 2.4.2 Temples and Caves
 - 2.4.3 Forts / Garhis
 - 2.4.5 Monuments
 - 2.4.6 Churches and mosques
- 2.5 Need of Conservation
- 2.6 Summary
- 2.7 Glossary
- 2.8 Answer to Check your Progress
- 2.9 References
- 2.10 Terminal and Model Questions

2.1 INTRODUCTION

Uttarakhand implies the terrain and the landforms present within its territory. Nestled amid the Himalayas, the topography of Uttarakhand offers a wide range of landforms from hills and peak to cliffs and ridges. The topography of Uttarakhand boasts of many rich forests, glaciers, mountains peaks, and beautiful network of the mighty rivers. In fact, the hills and mountains present in the territory of Kumaoni-Garhwal is said to be the 'Abode of Gods and Goddesses'.

Uttarakhand is known for its natural beauty of the Himalayas, the Bhabhar and the Terai. On 9 November 2000, this 27th state of the Republic of India was carved out of the Himalayan and adjoining northwestern districts of Uttar Pradesh. It borders the Tibet Autonomous Region on the north; the Mahakali Zone of the Far-Western Region, Nepal on the east; and the Indian states of Uttar Pradesh to the south and Himachal Pradesh to the northwest. The state is divided into two divisions, Garhwal and Kumaon, with a total of 13 districts. Uttarakhand has a great diversity of flora and fauna. It has a recorded forest area of 34651 km² which constitutes 65% of the total area of the state. Uttarakhand is home to rare species of plants and animals, many of which are protected by sanctuaries and reserves a number of plant species in the valley is internationally threatened, including several that have not been

recorded from elsewhere in Uttarakhand. Rajaji National Park in Haridwar District and Govind Pashu Vihar National Park and Sanctuary and Gangotri National Park in Uttarkashi District are some other protected areas in the state.

The state is full with the natural resources. In the floral world the Evergreen oaks, rhododendrons, and conifers predominate in the hills. *Shorea robusta* (sal), silk cotton tree (*Bombax ciliata*), *Dalbergia sissoo*, *Mallotus philippensis*, *Acacia catechu*, *Bauhinia racemosa*, and *Bauhinia variegata* (camel's foot tree) are some of the other trees of the region. *Albizia chinensis*, the sweet sticky flowers of which are favoured by sloth bears, are also part of the region's flora. The park has many species of medicinal plants including *Dactylorhiza hatagirea*, *Picrorhiza kurroa*. In the fauna world, Leopards are found in areas which are abundant in hills but may also venture into the lowland jungles. Smaller felines include the jungle cat, fishing cat, and leopard cat. Other mammals include four kinds of deer (barking, sambar, hog and and chital) sloth and Himalayan black bears, Indian grey mongooses, otters, yellow-throated martens, bharal (goat-antelopes), Indian pangolins and langur and rhesus monkeys. In the summer, elephants can be seen in herds of several hundred. Marsh crocodiles (*Crocodylus palustris*), Gharials (*Gavialis gangeticus*) and other reptiles are also found in the region.

Local crocodiles were saved from extinction by captive breeding programs and subsequently re-released into the Ramganga River. Several freshwater terrapins and turtles like the Indian sawback turtle (*Kachuga tecta*), Brahminy river turtle (*Hardella thurgii*), and Ganges softshell turtle (*Trionyx gangeticus*) are found in the rivers. Butterflies and birds of the region include red Helen (*Papilio helenus*), the great eggfly (*Hypolimnos bolina*), common tiger (*Danaus genutia*), pale wanderer (*Pareronia avatar avatar*), Jungle Babbler, Tawny - bellied Babbler, Great Slaty Woodpecker, Red - breasted Parakeet, Orange - Breasted Green Pigeon and Chestnut - winged Cuckoo.

2.2 OBJECTIVES

The unit describes the historic perspective of touristic heritage of Uttarakhand and hence it aims:

- To make you aware of historical monuments.
- The cultural heritage of the state.
- Need of this rich heritage.

2.3 TOURISTIC HERITAGE

The National Trust's definition of cultural heritage tourism is “traveling to experience the places and activities that authentically represent the stories and people of the past and present. It includes historic, cultural and natural resources. “Heritage tourism focuses on the story of people and places told through interpretation of cultural landscapes and preservation or restoration of historic structures. Heritage tourism is travel directed toward experiencing the heritage of a city, region, state or country. This travel enables the tourist to learn about, and be surrounded by, local customs, traditions, history and culture.” “An activity in which people enjoy the discovery of a place's unique identity derived from its history. . . A form of tourism based upon the enhancement and protection of cultural resources as an element of tourism resources.

2.4 HISTORICAL TOURISTIC HERITAGE OF UTTARAKHAND

Ancient rock paintings, rock shelters, paleolithic stone tools (hundreds of thousands of years old), and megaliths provide evidence that the mountains of the region have been inhabited since prehistoric times. There are also archaeological remains which show the existence of early Vedic (c. 1500 BCE) practices in the area. Different types of art forms are practiced and Uttarakhand Handicrafts is characterized because of its distinct quality which is to be found nowhere. Temple architecture is one of the most important forms of Handicrafts of Uttarakhand. This form of art was actually patronized by the elite classes of the then society along with the Royal families of the state who took a keen interest in making such forms of art more popular. What

makes this particular handicraft of Uttarakhand so interesting is the fact that the construction of big temples encouraged such form of art.

The different forms of painting are a reflection of the rich art and heritage of the region. It's important to mention that the local handicrafts of Uttarakhand have been widely influenced by the famous Garhwal School of Painting. Also during the festivities the different types of wall paintings done in red, ocre made from rice are a common sight in the state. Monuments of Uttarakhand include several religious monuments and beautiful colonial structures that have historical importance and promote the state tourism. The entire state is dotted with religious monuments and the nearby hill-stations of Dehradun, Mussourie, Nainital, Almora, Bhimtal, Kausani and Ranikhet consist of many resorts and colonial monuments of the British province. Another major monumental attraction of Uttarakhand that depicts the historical value is the Deogarh Fort in Dhanaulti. This 16th century fort is a popular structure comprising several palaces, decorated with frescoes and outstanding Jain temples. Uttarakhand also represent the Britisher's colonial imprints to its major hill stations. The major monuments present in these British colonies are the churches and mansions. These are considered as heritage monuments and have been converted into lavish museums, hotels and institutes. Some of the major colonial monuments of Uttarakhand are St. John's Church, Children's Lodge at Mussourie, and Forest Research Institute of Dehradun.

2.4.1 Culture

Culture and people are very closely associated with each other. The term 'culture' refers to the complex collection of knowledge; folklore, language, rules, rituals, habits, lifestyles, attitudes, beliefs, and customs that link and give a common identity to a particular group of people at a specific point in time. All social units develop a culture. Thus it is the inhabitants of a specific region that collectively contribute to form that extraordinary cornucopia of life we call culture. In case of Uttarakhand, the Land of Gods, natural diversity and the element of the Himalaya's

unparalleled beauty and sanctity add a new dimension to the word 'culture'. The people of the state are as diverse as the landscape. Uttarakhand is blessed with a whole multiplicity of culture greatly influenced and inspired by its geo-social factors. The ancient cultural traditions of Uttarakhand are deep rooted primarily in religion. Music, dance and arts are a manifest for the firm religious bonds of the people with the awe-inspiring Himalayas. The folklores, traditions, customs of the state are treasure. The traditional dress, music, instruments have own beauty.

2.4.2 Temples and Caves

- **Badrinath:** Badrinath is situated at a height a height of 3,133 m. Badrinath shrine is located in the Narnarayan range against the magnificent Neelkanth peak. The residing deity at the Badrinath temple is Shri Badrinathji (Shiva). The Badrinath temple stands in a beautiful valley on the bank of River Alaknanda. The Badrinath temple traces its origins to Adi Shankaracharya (8th century) while the present temple was built by the Garhwal rulers. Below the Badrinath temple are the hot springs (Tapt Kund and Surya Kund) with waters at a temperature of 55°C. There are four other shrines (dedicated to Lord Vishnu) near to Badrinath shrine. They are Yogadhyan Badri, Bhavishya Badri, Bridha Badri and Adi Badri. Not far from the Badrinath temple is the beautiful valley of flowers and the Hemkund Lake. According to legends, Guru Govind Singh, the tenth Guru of the Sikhs, meditated on the banks of this Lake.
- **Baleshwar:** The Baleshwar temple is dedicated to Lord Shiv (who is also known as Baleshwar). There are two other temples in the compound of Baleshwar, one dedicated to Ratneshwar and other to Champawati Durga.
- **Chandi Devi:** Chandi Devi Temple, Haridwar is dedicated to *Goddess Chandi Devi*. Chandi Devi Temple is highly respected by devotees as a Siddh Peetha which is a place of worship where desires get fulfilled.
- **Gangotri:** Gangotri is an important pilgrim and tourist place. Gangotri is located at 3,048 m above sea level. The Gangotri glacier is the original source of river Ganga. There is a temple dedicated to Goddess Ganga and the sacred stone where King

Bhagirath is believed to have worshipped Lord Shiva. There is a natural Shivlinga submerged in the river (It is believed that Lord Shiva received the Ganges here).

- **Hemkund Sahib:** Hemkund or Hemkunt is a pilgrimage site for Sikhs in Chamoli district. It is most known for a gurudwara, known as Sri Hemkunt Sahib Ji, associated with *Guru Gobind Singh Ji*. It is said that Guru Gobind Singh Ji meditated here in the 16th century.
- **Kalpeshwar:** Kalpeshwar is a Hindu temple dedicated to Lord Shiv. Kalpeshwar is the only Panch Kedar temple accessible throughout the year.
- **Kedarnath:** Kedarnath is situated at a height of 3,581 m. The Kedarnath shrine stone stands against the backdrop of the Kedarnath range. According to legends, the Pandavas came here to pray to Lord Shiva after great battle of Kurukshetra to atone for killing their own near and dear ones in the war. It is said that Lord Shiva kept eluding the Pandavas and sought refuge at Kedarnath in the form of a bull.

On being pursued, he plunged into the ground, with his hump exposed on the earth. Legends has it that his arms surfaced at Tungnath, his face at Rudranath, belly at Madmaheshwar, his locks and head at Kalpeshwar. These spots where he reappeared form the Panch Kedar. The present Kedarnath temple is said to have been resurrected by Adi Guru Shankaracharya. Kedarnath Mandir is one of the holiest Hindu temples dedicated to Lord Shiv and is located at the top of the Garhwal Himalayan range near the Mandakini River in Kedarnath, Uttarakhand in India. Due to extreme weather conditions, the temple is open only between the end of April to start of November. Here Lord Shiv is worshipped as Kedarnath, the 'Lord of Kedar Khand', the historical name of the region.

- **Madhyamaheshwar:** Madhyamaheshwar or Madmaheshwar is a Hindu temple dedicated to Lord Shiv, located in the Mansuna village of Garhwal Himalayas in Uttarakhand, India. It is the fourth temple to be visited in the Panch Kedar pilgrimage.
- **Mansa Devi:** Mansa Devi Temple, Haridwar is a Hindu temple dedicated to Goddess Mansa in the holy city of Haridwar in the Uttarakhand state of India. The

temple is known for being the holy abode of Mansa, a form of Shakti and is said to have emerged from the mind of the sage Kashyap.

- **Neelkanth Mahadev:** Neelkanth Mahadev Temple is a Hindu temple dedicated to Neelkanth (Lord Shiv). The Temple is one of the most revered holy shrines dedicated to Lord Shiva and is a prominent Hindu pilgrimage site.
- **Rudranath:** Rudranath is a Hindu temple dedicated to Lord Shiv, located in the Garhwal Himalayan Mountains in Uttarakhand, India. It is the third temple to be visited in the Panch Kedar pilgrimage.
- **Surkanda Devi:** Surkanda Devi is a Hindu temple situated close to the small resort hamlet of Dhanaulti in Tehri District.
- **Tungnath:** Tungnath is the highest temple in the world and is one of the five and the highest Panch Kedar temples located in the mountain range of Tunganath in the Chamoli district of Tehri Garhwal, in Uttarakhand, India. The Tungnath temple is the highest Hindu shrine dedicated to Lord Shiv. The temple is believed to be 1000 years old and is the second in the visiting order of the Panch Kedars.
- **Yamnotri:** Yamunotri is also an important pilgrim as well as tourist place. The shrine of Yamunotri is located at a height of about 3,235 m and is dedicated to the river Goddess, Yamuna. The main pilgrim place at Yamunotri is the temple of Goddess Yamuna. There are many hot water springs in the vicinity of the temple.
- **Group of Temples, Jageshwar:** The temple site of Jageshwar is situated in a deep and extremely cold valley about 35 km from Almora. Jageshwara temple is the prominent temple here and also gives its name to the site it stands towards the east of the enclosure. It consists of the sanctum chamber, having curvilinear spire and mandapa of pyramidal type. The sanctum is *triratha* on plan. The central faces are provided with the perforated window screens. The *sikhara* has six *bhumis*. The crowning members are concealed under a canopy in accordance with the style of the region. The temple is dedicated to Yogisvara Siva, and worshipped in the form of a linga. Stylistically the temple is datable to eighth century AD.

- **Monuments, Dwarahat, Almora:** Dwarahat is about 43 km far from Almora. It was the capital of the Katyuri Kings. There are groups of 7 temples viz. Maniyan Group of temples, Kacheri Group of temples, Gujar De Temple, Bando Temple, Ratandeo shrines, Mritunjaya Group of temples and Badri Nath Group of temples. These seven groups of temples date from 10th to 13th centuries AD.
- **Surya Temple, Katarmal:** This imposing temple structure is located on a lofty hill on the right bank of the river Kosi and about 18 km from Almora. The temple is locally known as “*Bara Adit*” or the great sun god. The main temple is surrounded by a paved enclosure measuring about 48.75 m by 30.48 m. There are 14 subsidiary shrines around the main temple. The main shrine faces east and consists of a *garbhagriha* and *mandapa*. The sanctum has a curvilinear elevation while the *mandapa* is covered with a gabled roof and is a later addition. The entrance of the sanctum chamber was provided with beautifully carved wooden door leaves which have been shifted to the National Museum, New Delhi for better preservation. Stylistically the temple can be dated from 12th
- **Remains of Sixteen Temples, Adibadri:** Adibadri, a halting-place between Lohba and Karnaprayag is situated in Patti Sili Chandpur and lies about 17 km away from Karnaprayag. A group of 16 temples are noted at Adibadri, which are small to very small in size. The chief temple consists of a *garbhagriha*, surmounted by a pyramidal roof with a raised platform at the front.
- **Bajjnath Temples:** Lying in the Katyuri valley, 19 KMs away from Kausani and 26 kms from Bageshwar, is the small but ancient town of Bajjnath. It was once upon a time the capital of the Katyuri dynasty of kings and the place was then called Kartikyapura. In Kumaun socio cultural region, Bajjnath is one among remote antiquity and of historical importance. The remnants of those glorious days lie at the bank of the Gomti River in the form of a group of temples. The temple is famous for its ancient and magnificent stone idol of the Hindu goddess Parvati. Around 8 KMs from Bajjnath on

the Gwaldam road is lies the famous Kotkimai temple. One can also visit Pandusthal which lies nearby.

Check Your Progress

1. Baleshwer temple is dedicated to.....

Ans.....Hem kund sahib is associated to.....

Ans.....

2. How many kedar are in the Uttarakhand?

Ans.....

3. Name the highest temple of lord shiva in the state.....

Ans.....

4. Sun temple of Katarmal is situated on the bank of river.....

Ans.....

- **Patal Bhuvaneshwar Caves (Patal Bhuvaneshwar):** The Patala Bhuvaneshwar Caves are a network of limestone caves. The cave main cave is around 160 m long and 90 feet deep from the entrance point. With the passage of time, the flow of water over the limestone in these caves has formed many stalactites and stalagmites.

- **Robbers Cave, Dehradun:** Robber's Cave, located at a distance of 8 km from the city centre, is one of the most popular picnic spots of the destination. Popularly known as Guchu Pani, this place is situated at a distance of 1 km from the village of Anarwala. The place is famous for a strange.

- **Gauri Udiyar, Bageshwar:** Gauri Udiyar is located some 8 km from Bageshwar. There is a huge cave here that has the old idols of Lord Shiva. The cave measures approximately 20 by 95 sq m.
- **Pandav Gufa, Gangotri:** The Pandav Gufa can be reached after a trek of 1.5 km from Gangotri. This very site is believed to be the place, where the Pandavas of Mahabharata meditated on their way to Kailash.

2.4.3 Forts / Garhis

The forts in Uttarakhand are mute witnesses to great local historical events. Many of the fortresses in Uttarakhand have even been battlegrounds for mighty armies. Naturally, anyone interested in the history and culture of Uttarakhand, heads to the forts around Uttarakhand. Many of the forts of Uttarakhand also have huge lawns, where visitors can enjoy lovely family picnics. In a nutshell, the forts and fortresses near Uttarakhand count amongst the most popular of attractions in Uttarakhand. A wrong spelling for forts and fortresses is fortrice. Garhwal originally consisted of 52 petty chieftainships, each chief with his own independent fortress (garh). Nearly 500 years ago, one of these chiefs, Ajai Pal, reduced all the minor principalities under his own sway, and founded the Garhwal kingdom. He and his ancestors ruled over Garhwal and the adjacent state of Tehri, in an uninterrupted line till 1803

- **Chandpur Garhi, Chandpur, Dehradun:** Chandpur Fort is situated in Patti Sili Chandpur, Pargana Chandpur in District Chamoli. The Fort was the seat of Kanak Pal, the actual founder of the present Garhwal dynasty. His descendant Ajaipal consolidated the kingdom of Garhwal. The fort is situated on the peak of a promontory formed by the bend of a stream flowing about 150 m below. Some of the ruins of the fort have been noticed here.
- **Ancient Site at Jagatgram:** The excavation exposed the remains of three sites at Jagatgram where the King Silavaraman of the 3rd century AD performed *asvamedhas*. Here, well designed bricks are laid like a *syena* (hawk or eagle) with spread wings.

Bricks from the first site bore Sanskrit inscriptions in the Brahmi script of the 3rd century AD. It says that the place was the city of the king's fourth horsesacrifice. The other two sites produced anumber of inscribed bricks.

2.4.5 Monuments

This is a list of Monuments of National Importance (ASI) as officially recognized by and available through the website of the Archeological Survey of India in the Indian state Uttarakhand. The monument identifier is a combination of the abbreviation of the subdivision of the list (state, ASI circle) and the numbering as published on the website of the ASI. 44 Monuments of National Importance have been recognized by the ASI in Uttarakhand.

- **Asokan Rock Edict, Kalsi, Dehradun:** As we were heading to *Chakrata* in the spring of 2013, an Information Board by the highway, near Herbertpur, announced the location of an *Asokan* Rock Edict at *Kalsi* still a few kilometres ahead. The entrance-lane to the site lies towards the right side at the end of the main market of *Kalsi* town. Located near the confluence of *Yamuna* and *Tons*, *Kalsi* is about 50 km from *Dehradun* on the road to *Chakrata* via Herbertpur. The military barricade on the road to *Chakrata* is positioned just ahead of the market of *Kalsi* after which foreigners are required to furnish a permission from the Home Ministry to venture beyond. The *Great Mauryan Emperor Ashoka* (273 – 232 BC) got his fourteenth edict inscribed on a rock at *Kalsi*. However, the site was brought to light by John Forest in 1860. Considered to be one of the most important monuments in the field of Indian epigraphy, the rock edict is looked after by the Archaeological Survey of India (*ASI*). Representing the times when *Ashoka* had vowed himself to be a *Buddhist*, after having conquered a substantial chunk of the globe, the 10 x 8 ft-rock edict is identified in *Prakrit* language and *Brahmi* script. This is an important monument in the field of Indian epigraphy.

2.4.6 Churches and mosques

Churches in Uttarakhand are the significant monuments of the country. Since ages they have played a vital role in serving the Christian devotees and pilgrims of the state. Christianity had emerged in the state of Uttarakhand ages ago and flourished mainly during the British Empire in India. Numerous churches were built in this era, which have been efficiently maintained through years.

- **St. John's Church:** St. John's Church is a famous church of the state built in 1844. It is situated in Nainital near Naina Devi Temple. The Bishop of Calcutta, Daniel Wilson, laid the foundation of the church and also named it. On the altar of the church, a brass plaque is placed on which the names of 1880 Landslip victims are inscribed.
- **Kellogg Memorial Church:** Kellogg Memorial Church is located in Mussoorie. This ancient Presbyterian Church was constructed in the year 1903. Built in greystone, the church exhibits magnificent gothic architecture with elegant stained glass windows. The church serves as a famous landmark as well as a popular tourist destination.
- **Christ Church:** Christ church of Mussoorie is one of the oldest churches of the Himalayan belt. It was established in 1836 by the British community who were the residents of this region at that time. The spectacular church was built in gothic style of architecture and the magnificent stained glass windows portray life events of Jesus Christ. The interiors of the church are impressively decorated. An ancient William Hill organ is kept inside the church which is believed to be about 100 years old.
- **St. Mary's Church:** St. Mary's Church is another ancient church of the state, constructed in 1895 by Col. A.H.B Hume of the Royal Engineers. Around 1947, when the church started to deteriorate, it was converted into a small museum by the Garhwal Rifles Regimental Centre. It presently houses pictures of pre-independence era and audio visuals narrating the history of the regiment.

Churches in Uttarakhand exhibit excellent architecture mostly belonging to gothic style. Intricate and brilliant artistry adorns the interiors of these churches which allures people from different parts of the country irrespective of caste and religion to

visit these magnificent monuments. These churches serve as popular tourist attractions and also contribute to the national heritage of the country.

- **Piran Kaliyar:** Piran Kaliyar is the dargah of 13th-century Sufi saint of Chishti Order, Alauddin Ali Ahmed Sabir Kalyari also known as Sarkar Sabir Pak and Sabir Kaliyari, situated at Kaliyar village, near Haridwar on the banks of Ganga Canal, 7 km. from Roorkee, It is one of the most revered shrine for Muslims in India and is equally revered by Hindus and Muslims. The dargah shrine built by Ibrahim Lodhi, a ruler of Delhi, He was the South Asian Sufi Saint of Chishti Order in the 13th century, a successor to Baba Farid (1188–1280), and the first in the Sabiriya branch of Chishti Order.

Over the centuries, a small town developed around the shrine and came to be known as Piran Kaliyar. In later history, India's first steam engine, Mary Lind, (specially shipped from England moved on rails in India) ran in Roorkee on December 22, 1851, between Roorkee and Piran Kaliyar, two years before the first passenger train ran from Bombay to Thane in 1853. Operated by the Bengal Sappers, the railway line was built to carry soil used for the construction of the Upper Ganges Canal aqueduct from Piran Kaliyar, 10 km (6.2 miles) from the city.

2.5 NEED OF CONSERVATION

The state of Uttarakhand have rich touristic heritage. Historically the culture of state, folklores, folk song, folk music, tradition, forts or garhi etc has their unique identity. All they are amazing and attracts the number of tourists and art lover.

Some of them are protected by the Archeological survey of India. But many of them are in worst conditions. At present they are not only in danger due to the natural but also by the man-made hazards'. ASI is trying its best to preserve them but the state having typical geographic condition and hence it required that the local people help to conserve them.

2.6 SUMMARY

Nestled amid the Himalayas, the topography of Uttarakhand offers a wide range of landforms from hills and peak to cliffs and ridges. The different forms of painting are a reflection of the rich art and heritage of the region. It's important to mention that the local handicrafts of Uttarakhand have been widely influenced by the famous Garhwal School of Painting. Also during the festivities the different types of wall paintings. Monuments of Uttarakhand include several religious monuments and beautiful colonial structures that have historical importance and promote the state tourism. The cave, temple .edicts architecture is unique.

2.7 GLOSSARY

- **Terrain** - tract of land
- **Topography** - detail description on map
- **Perspective** - a particular aspect
- **Depict** - To describe word
- **Autonomous** - under self rule

2.8 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. Lord shiva
2. Sikh
3. 5
4. Tungnath
5. Kosi

2.9 REFERENCES

- History of Kumaon
- Omacanda Hāṇḍā (2002). History of Uttarakhand. Indus Publishing. pp. 72-. ISBN 978-81-7387-134-4. Retrieved 22 July 2012.
- Pande, B. D. (1993). History of Kumaun: English version of "Kumaun ka itihās". Almora, U.P., India: Shyam Prakashan: Shree Almora Book Depot.
- Robert Montgomery Martin, History of the Possessions of the Honourable East India Company, Volume 1, pg. 107
- Brief History of the Kumaon Regiment from official site of the Indian Army

- Piran Kaliyar Times of India, 13 March 2003.
- Piran Haridwar Official website.
- Chopra, Jasi Kiran (2 January 2007). "Uttarakhand is Uttarakhand, BJP cries foul". TNN. The Time of India. Retrieved 22 January 2013.
- Agrawal, Rakesh. "Van Panchayats in Uttarakhand." Economic and Political Weekly 25 Oct. 1999. JSTOR.
- Chaudhary, Pashupati, and Kamaljit S. Bawa. "Local Perceptions of Climate Change Validated by Scientific Evidence in the Himalayas." Biology Letters (2011): 1- 4.

2.10 TERMINAL AND MODEL QUESTIONS

Long Questions

1. Write an essay on Monuments of Uttarakhand.
2. Through light on touristic importance of temple of Uttarakhand
3. Write an essay on the historic perspective on touristic heritage of State.

Write short note on the following

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| a. Piryan Kaliyer | b. Ashoka's edict of Kalsi |
| c. Badrnath temple | d. St. Marry church |

Unit-3
Flora and Fauna

Structure:

- 3.1 Introduction
- 3.2 Objectives

- 3.3 Flora of Uttarakhand
 - 3.3.1 Sub-Tropical Zone of Uttarakhand
 - 3.3.2 Temperate Zone of Uttarakhand
 - 3.2.3 Sub-Alpine and Alpine Zones of Uttarakhand
 - 3.3.4 Orchids
 - 3.3.5 Dhanouti ECO-Park
- 3.4 Fauna of Uttarakhand
 - 3.4.1 Fauna of Garhwal
 - 3.4.4.1 Askot Sanctuary
 - 3.4.4.2 Binsar Sanctuary
 - 3.4.4.3 Corbett National Park
 - 3.4.2 National Parks, Sanctuaries of Garhwal
 - 3.4.3 Fauna of Kumaun
 - 3.4.4 National Parks, Sanctuaries of Kumaun
- 3.5 Importance in Tourism
- 3.6 Summary
- 3.7 Glossary
- 3.8 Answer to Check your Progress
- 3.9 References
- 3.10 Terminal and Model Questions

3.1 INTRODUCTION:

As we all know that Uttarakhand is a state in the northern part of India. It is often referred to as the "Land of the Gods" due to the many holy Hindu temples and pilgrimage centers found throughout the state. Uttarakhand is known for its natural

beauty of the Himalayas, the Bhabhar and the Terai. On 9 November 2000, this 27th state of the Republic of India was carved out of the Himalayan and adjoining northwestern districts of Uttar Pradesh. It borders the Tibet Autonomous Region on the north; the Mahakali Zone of the Far-Western Region, Nepal on the east; and the Indian states of Uttar Pradesh to the south and Himachal Pradesh to the northwest. The state is divided into two divisions, Garhwal and Kumaon, with a total of 13 districts. Uttarakhand has a great diversity of flora and fauna. It has a recorded forest area of 34651 km² which constitutes 65% of the total area of the state. Uttarakhand is home to rare species of plants and animals, many of which are protected by sanctuaries and reserves. National parks in Uttarakhand include the Jim Corbett National Park (the oldest national park of India) at Ramnagar in Nainital District, and Valley of Flowers National Park and Nanda Devi National Park in Chamoli District, which together are a UNESCO World Heritage Site. A number of plant species in the valley are internationally threatened, including several that have not been recorded from elsewhere in Uttarakhand. Rajaji National Park in Haridwar District and Govind Pashu Vihar National Park and Sanctuary and Gangotri National Park in Uttarkashi District are some other protected areas in the state. Historically the state is divided into two parts known by the name of Kedarkhand and Manshand and Mountain Nanda is division line between the two. In present they are called Garhwal division and Kumaun division respectively.

3.2 OBJECTIVES

Uttarakhand the state having more than 65% of total area under the forest and hence very rich in flora and fauna. This unit aims:

- To enrich your knowledge of rich diversity of fauna in your state.
- To make you aware about conservation of fauna
- To establish your relation with the biodiversity of state.

3.3 FLORA OF UTTARAKHAND

Uttarakhand is endowed with a unique and diverse range of biodiversity. From the snowbound peaks of the Himalayas to the moist Alpine scrub, sub Alpine forests, dry - temperate and moist- temperate forests to moist deciduous forests, the state possesses a wide biodiversity that in return nurtures a large multiplicity of floral and faunal forms.

Uttarakhand comprises of 13 districts spreading over an area of 51,082 sq km, floristically, it falls under the west Himalayan Biogeography zone and it is well-known for floral diversity similar to any other Himalayan region in the country with an estimated 4,000 species of flowering plants having great economic medicinal, aromatic and artistic value. The endemic plant wealth of Uttarakhand is worth mentioning as it ultimately forms part of the National heritage. Uttarakhand Himalayas have about 116 species as indigenous group. *Are naria ferruginea*; *Chimonobambusa jaunsarensis*, *Gentian tetrasepala*, *G. saginoides*, *Meeboldia solenoids*, *Microschoenus duthiei*, *Trachycarpus takil*, *Poa rhadina*, etc are some such species.

A decade long study by Prof. C.P. Kala concluded that the Valley of Flowers is endowed with 520 species of higher plants (angiosperms, gymnosperms and pteridophytes), of these 498 are flowering plants. The park has many species of medicinal plants including *Dactylorhiza hatagirea*, *Picrorhiza kurroa*, *Aconitum violaceum*, *Polygonatum multiflorum*, *Fritillaria roylei*, and *Podophyllum hexandrum*.

The state is home to nearly 4048 species of Angiosperms and Gymnosperms belonging to 1198 genera under 192 families. Of these nearly 116 species are specific to Uttarakhand i.e. their geographical distribution is limited to the boundaries of the state. 161 species of flora found in Uttarakhand are recognized as rare or threatened under the categorization of the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN). Out of the 223 species of Orchids reported from the North Western Himalayas, over 150 have been reported from the State. This precious natural wealth is our common heritage. In order to conserve this heritage, the state has declared twelve areas as

'Protected' including 6 National Parks and six Wildlife Sanctuaries. Nearly 65% of the geographical area of the State is under forest cover, of which over 12% comes under the Protected Area network. This exceeds the national average by a fair margin and is a reflection of the state's commitment to conservation. The Corbett National Park, established in 1936 is the first National Park of the Asian mainland. The Nandadevi Biosphere Reserve, established under the "Man and biosphere" programme of UNESCO has the honour of being Uttarakhand's only and the country's second Biosphere Reserve. This biodiversity wealth is the pride of Uttarakhand.

Besides, many plant species new to science have been added from different parts of Uttarakhand. Some such species are *Anemone rauyi*, *Arenaria curvifolia*, *Carex nandadviensis*, *Listera nandadeviensis*, *Saussurea sudhanshui*, *Euphorbia sharmae*, *Androsace garhwalicum*, etc. More interesting to note is the presence of one of the smallest flowering plants *Arceuthobium minutissimum*, parasitising over *Pinus gerardiana* (Chilgoza) and the tallest plant of Asia, the *Pinus roxburghii*, in Uttarkashi district. The sacred Mulberry, *Morus serrata*, said to have been planted by the Adi Shankaracharya at Joshimath, the tree fern *Cyathea spinulosa*, the gigantic *Aesculus indica* on way to Panwali, the tall Shore a Robusta (Raja Sal) near Byasi are some other curiosities of the area. The narrative of the plant wealth of Uttarakhand will not be complete unless a mentioned about the sacred plants commonly used in worship in "The Abode of Gods". Besides, the earlier mentioned "Brahmakamal", *Zanthoxylum armatum* (Timur), *Prunus puddum* (Panya), *Skimmia laureola*, *Primula denticulata*, and *Artemisia nilagirica*, Eagle marvelous etc. are offered to deities. Some other representative and interesting plants of Uttarakhand are enumerated below with a brief description: The vegetation of Uttarakhand can be divided in the following zones:

3.3.1 Sub-Tropical Zone of Uttarakhand

The sub-tropical zone has pure as well as mixed forests of Shore Robusta (Sa I), the others being *Lanea coromandelica* (Jhingan), *Buchanania lanzan*, *Dalbergia disso* (Shisham), *Haldina cordifolia* (Haldu), *Syzygium cumini* (Jamun), *Mallotus*

philippinensis (Rohini), *Mitragyna parvifolia*, *Terminalia* spp. (Myrobalans), *Ficus* spp. (Figs), *Macaranga pustulata*, *Callicarpa arborea*, *Diopoknema butyracea* (Chyura), *Bauhinia variegata* (Kachnar), *Bombax coccinea* (Semal), *Lydia claying* (Pula), *Schleicher oleos* (Kokum), *Holoptelea integrities* (Karanj), *Cassia fistula* (Amaltas), *Nyctanthes arbor-tristis* (Parijat), *Anogeissus latifolia* (Bakli, Dhaura), etc. The shrubby vegetation is represented by *Murraya koenigii*, *Carissa opaca*, *Clerodendrum viscosum*, *Adhatoda vasica*, *Jasminum multiflorum*, *Solanum erianthum*, *Callicarpa macrophylla*, *Eranthemum nervosum*, *Phlogacanthus thyrsoformis*, *Jatropha curcas*, *Rhus parviflora*, *Dodonaea viscosa*, *Woodfordia fruticosa* and many others.

3.3.2. Temperate Zone of Uttarakhand

The Temperate zone is marked by the presence of *Quercus leucotrichophora* (Banj oak), *Rhododendron arboretum* (Burans), *Myrica esculenta* (Kaphal), *Leonia ovalifolia* (Aynor), *Ilex diphyrena*, *Quercus semecarpifolia* (Kharsu Oak), *Q. dilatata* (Moru Oak), etc. The coniferous forests in this zone are unique. Pure stands of *Pinus roxburghii* (Chir Pine) and *Cedrus deodar* (Deodar, Cedar), *Abies pindrow* (Raga), *Pinus wallichiana* (Kail), *Taxus wallichiana* (Thuner, Himalayan Yew) at places give a pristine look to the slopes. The slopes in temperate zone also have insectivorous plants like *Drosera peltata* and species of *Utricularia*. Another such species is *Pinguicula alpina* seen in Martoli Bugyal, Kumaon. The Saprophytes and Parasites are also well represented by *Monotropa uniflora*, *Dendrophthoe falcata* (Banda), *Balanophora involucreta*, and species of *Viscum*, *Korthalsella*, *Arceuthobium*, *Scurrula*, etc. The zone has a variety of useful plants, some of them well known for centuries. These include *Cedrus deodar*, *Pinus* spp., *Abies pindrow*, *Quercus* spp., *Aconitum heterophyllum*, *Paeonia emodi*, *Swertia chirayita*, *Bergenia ciliata*, *Dioscorea deltoidea*, *Angelica glauca* (Choru), etc.

3.3.3 Sub-Alpine and Alpine Zones of Uttarakhand

The altitude above 3,000 metres is generally considered a zone of sub-alpine and alpine vegetation. The tree species are represented by *Pinus wallichiana*, *Abies*

pindrow, *Prunus cornuta*, *Acer caesium*, *Betula utilis* (Bhoj Patra) and *Salix* sp. Species of the genera *Cotoneaster*, *Rosa*, *Berberis*, *Ribes*, *Junipers*, *Rhododendron* anthropogenic, *Rhododendron campanulas* are the shrubby components of the zone. The herbaceous vegetation is represented by a number of species of genera *Potentilla*, *Primula*, *Aster*, *Saxifrage*, *Achaeon*, *Delphinium*, *Polygonal*, *Corydalis*, *Pleurospermum*, *Meconopsis*, *Pedicularis*, *Saussurea*, *Rheum*, *Silene*, etc. The Bugyals of this zone are well known for a rich and diversified flora. Plant species like *Nardostachys grand flora* (Jatamansi), *Podophyllum hexandrum* (Himalayan May-Apple, Papri), *Picrorhiza kurrooa* (Kutaki), *Gentian burro*, *Armenia benthonic* (Bal char), *Rheum moorcroftianum* (Dole), *Ephedra gerardiana*, *Dactylorhiza hatagirea* (Hatthajari), etc., common in this zone, are of immense medicinal value. The floral diversity is further exhibited by the species that grow in the rain shadow areas of Uttarakhand. Such species develop adaptive characters to survive the wrath of adverse climate. *Labium rhomboid*, *Thylacospermum caespitosum*, *Acantholimon lycopodioides*, *Dracocephalum heterophyllum* etc. are a few such examples.

3.3.4 Orchids

Uttarakhand has more than 225 species of this charming group, well known for ornamental flowers with great horticultural potential and long shelf life. *Aerides*, *Coelogyne*, *Cymbidium*, *Dendrobium*, *Thunia* and *Rhynchostylis*, for which Mandai, Baram, Shandev, Dafia Dhoora, Kaflani, etc are rich. Among the global orchids, species of *Calanthe*, *Habenaria*, *Anoectochilus*, *Satyrrium*, etc are fairly common while the Lady's Slipper Orchid-*Cypripedium* is scarcely distributed.

Many small river valleys offer wonderful experience to nature lovers and hikers. The vast open hay field, above the tree line presents endless views of the variously coloured Himalayan flowers. The most interesting of them, aesthetically or botanically are seen in the higher altitudes, from 2,450 metres and above. The arrival of spring brings forward an uprising of colours, when the Semal and Palash put the lower altitude forests on fire with their blazing red flowers. It is also the time for Burans to

spread its fire at a height of or above 2,450 metres adding colour to the blue and white panorama of snow. The flowers do not grow only in the Valley of Flowers but are found on different treks habitually upto great heights as also on the hay field and even in rock cracks or moraines.

Uttarakhand comprises of 13 districts spreading over an area of 51,082 sq km, floristically, it falls under the west Himalayan Biogeography zone and it is well-known for floral diversity similar to any other Himalayan region in the country with an estimated 4,000 species of flowering plants having great economic medicinal, aromatic and artistic value. The endemic plant wealth of Uttarakhand is worth mentioning as it ultimately forms part of the National heritage. Uttarakhand Himalayas have about 116 species as indigenous group. *Are naria ferruginea*; *Chimonobambusa jaunsarensis*, *Gentian tetrasepala*, *G. saginoides*, *Meeboldia solenoids*, *Microschoenus duthiei*, *Trachycarpus takil*, *Poa rhadina*, etc are some such species.

Besides, many plant species new to science have been added from different parts of Uttarakhand. Some such species are *Anemone raui*, *Arenaria curvifolia*, *Carex nandadviensis*, *Listera nandadeviensis*, *Saussurea sudhanshui*, *Euphorbia sharmae*, *Androsace garhwalicum*, etc. More interesting to note is the presence of one of the smallest flowering plants *Arceuthobium minutissimum*, parasitising over *Pinus gerardiana* (Chilgoza) and the tallest plant of Asia, the *Pinus roxburghii*, in Uttarkashi district. The sacred Mulberry, *Morus serrata*, said to have been planted by the Adi Shankaracharya at Joshimath, the tree fern *Cyathea spinulosa*, the gigantic *Aesculus indica* on way to Panwali, the tall Shore a Robusta (Raja Sal) near Byasi are some other curiosities of the area. The narrative of the plant wealth of Uttarakhand will not be complete unless a mentioned about the sacred plants commonly used in worship in "The Abode of Gods". Besides, the earlier mentioned "Brahmakamal", *Zanthoxylum armatum* (Timur), *Prunus puddum* (Panya), *Skimmia laureola*, *Primula denticulata*, and *Artemisia nilagirica*, Eagle marvelous etc. are offered to deities.

3.3.5 Dhanouti Eco-Park

- **Dhanouti ECO-Park.** It is the main attraction of Dhanaulti. There are two Eco-parks, "Amber" and "Dhara" about 200 m apart. It has been developed recently by the Forest Department of Uttarakhand with the help of local youth. About 60 local youth, both male and females are employed as Guides, Gardeners, Service providers, Ticket Collectors, Information Providers etc. It houses a protected patch of small forest containing Deodar Trees.

3.4 FAUNA OF UTTARAKHAND

The state Uttarakhand has variety of fauna found. The wide diversity of bird - life is distributed according to the altitude. Among the pheasants found here are the kalij, kokla, chir and monal. The monal with its resplendent plumage of metallic green, glistening purple, startling red and jet - black, is a sight to behold. It moves about in small groups and takes flight when one almost stumbles upon it. Monal is state bird of the state. Leopards are found in areas which are abundant in hills but may also venture into the lowland jungles. Smaller felines include the jungle cat, fishing cat, and leopard cat. Other mammals include four kinds of deer (barking, sambar, hog and chital), sloth and Himalayan black bears, Indian grey mongooses, otters, yellow-throated martens, bharal (goat-antelopes), Indian pangolins, and langur and rhesus monkeys. In the summer, elephants can be seen in herds of several hundred. Marsh crocodiles (*Crocodylus palustris*), gharials (*Gavialis gangeticus*) and other reptiles are also found in the region. Local crocodiles were saved from extinction by captive breeding programs and subsequently re-released into the Ramganga River. Several freshwater terrapins and turtles like the Indian sawback turtle (*Kachuga tecta*), Brahminy river turtle (*Hardella thurgii*), and Ganges softshell turtle (*Trionyx gangeticus*) are found in the rivers. Butterflies and birds of the region include red Helen (*Papilio helenus*), the great eggfly (*Hypolimnos bolina*), common tiger (*Danaus genutia*), pale wanderer (*Pareronia avatar avatar*), Jungle Babbler, Tawny-bellied Babbler, Great Slaty Woodpecker, Red-breasted Parakeet, Orange-breasted Green Pigeon and Chestnut-winged Cuckoo.

Check Your Progress - 1

4. In how many zones the state vegetation is divided?

Ans.....

3.4.1 Fauna of Garhwal

The Garhwal division of state includes the 7 district. The valleys of Garhwal are quite rich in wild life and are excellent grounds for the naturalist. Here in this section we descramble the richness of fauna world.

- **Animals:** The cat family is abundant in these mountains and would include the Tiger, Panther, Civet cat, Leopard cat and Jungle Cat. Relatives of the domesticated dog would include the Himalayan Silver Fox and the Jackal. Various species of deer including the Musk Deer and the Barking Deer roam in the forest. Sambhar and Gural as well as the Bear and the Porcupine can also be seen. The flying mammal, the Bat too is common. Among the most adorable animals in this region are the Chipmunk, the Rhesus Monkey and the Flying Squirrel. The district Tehri has been the habitat, from times immemorial, of a large variety of mammals, birds, reptiles and fish. Besides monkeys, longurs, wild-cats, goats, pigs, foxes and dogs, the district is noted for its black bears which are found in the Tehri forest division at lower altitudes and the brown and white bears which are found at higher altitudes. Panthers abound almost throughout the district, the flying squirrel, locally known as rinoola, is found largely in the Yamuna forest division. The snow leopard is a rare species and is found near the snow regions (between 3,050 m. and 5,400 m.) in rocky areas. The leopard, which is quite common in rocky forests, carries away sheep, goats, mules and sometimes bullocks and rows also. The black bear lives generally in oak forests. The brown and white bear is found mostly in the snow regions. Besides domesticated cattle, other animals generally met with here are bharal (Himalayan blue sheep), Himalayan thar, goral, kastura (musk-deer) and sambar. The Himalayan blue sheep or bharal is generally found above 4,270 m. in summer and is seldom seen at below 3,000 m. It is shy, quick and speedy and prefers undulating open ground. The Himalayan thar

prefers moist rugged mountain terrain with little cover and lives under bushes or trees. The goral, a goat-like animal with pale brown colour (which turns to almost grey in summer), haunts the rocky hills in the middle of the forests 1,200 m. and 2,500m, It usually live in herds of 2 to 6. The kastura (musk-deer) which is famous for its musk pod frequents steep hills with cover and is usually found above 2,700 m. The female deer has no musk. The musk doe begets 2 fawns at a time and, strangely enough, never keeps them together. Both sexes are devoid of horns. It is becoming extinct as it has been ruthlessly killed in the past for the valuable musk which is of high therapeutic value in Ayurveda and is also used in the production of perfumes. The sambar is found up to the height of 2,700 m. and prefers moist dense forests. The young ones are greyish brown in colour but the elder males are much darker. It is locally known as jarao. It is said that it drops its horns in May and regrows them in October. The monkey is not seen above the altitude of 2,150 m. but langurs are found up to a higher level. The wild-dog which is found between 1,800 and 2,200 m. (above sea-level). The hathi or Indian elephant may occasionally be seen in the forests between the Bhagirathi and the Yamuna on straying into the area from adjacent forests of the Dehradun district; it causes considerable damage to the cultivation on the border of the forest and destroys the young trees. Cheetal and panda are found largely in herds near Rishikesh forests on the roads to Devaprayag. Kakar-the barking deer-avoids moving about in herds and is usually found in dense forests.

- **Birds-** More than four hundred varieties of birds have been recorded in the Himalayan region. The shore a forest host, the Jewel Thrush, Black headed Oriole, Black headed yellow Bulbul, Rosy Minivet, Laughing Thrush, Golden Backed Wood pecker and the Blue fly Catcher, Wintering waterfowl include the Goosander, Brahminy Duck & Green Shank, Grey headed Fishing Eagles may also be seen by the river edge. After ascending over 5000 feet, the Woodpecker, Thrush & Warbler become more common, between 8000-11000 feet, Grosbeak, Rock Thrush, Crested black Tit & red headed Laughing Thrush are a plenty. The bird life has a zonal distribution

according to the altitude. The pheasants generally seen in the district are kaleej, koklas, cheers, and monal. The kareej, a common bird, occurs below 2,600 m. in heavy undergrowth of forests. The koklas is found in the fir zone and prefers moist woody forests. The prized monal is generally found at over 2,700 m. in the fir forests and comes down to the deodar forests during the winter. Wild fowls (locally called kukas), hariales, parrots, chatak, papiha, haldu, nilkanth, pigeons, partridges are found in varied colours and in abundance. Among partridges, the most common are kala titar, chakor and neora. The kala titar is found at up to 2,130 m. and frequents the grass and shrub patches near cultivated land, the chakor loves barren and open hill slopes dotted with bush and grasses and is found between the altitude of 1,300 m. and 3,600 m. It regularly visits the cultivated fields in search of grain or tender shoots of crop and lives in parties of 6 to 20 but is found in pairs in the summer. The neora or- hill partidge which is a dweller of evergreen forests is found at heights between 1,300 m. and 2,700 m. and prefers broad-leafed forests. The pigeons found in the district are harial or wedge-tailed green pigeon, malyo or blue rock pigeon and snow pigeon of safed malyo. The hariyal is seen mostly in banj forests and is found in flocks. It is essentially a fruitarian bird. Its colour is yellowish-green with maroon markings on the middle of the back. The sated malyo or snow pigeon is a beautiful pigeon with a white under body, black head, a white cross bar on tail and three white bars on grey wings and completely replaces the blue rock pigeon in the higher altitudes. In habits, it closely resembles the blue rock pigeon.

Among doves more numerous are the ghugti, or rufous turtle dove and the fakhta or ringed dove. The ghugti, a large dove, which is found at heights of up to 3,000 m. likes well-wooded forests and is generally seen in pairs or flocks. The fakhta is also a large dove which is found at heights up to 2,700 m. The shyam karka (woodcock) is also a game bird which dwells in moist fir forests and is nocturnal in habits. It looks like an outsized snipe and has dirty grey and brown markings.

The non-game birds generally found in the district are magpies, jays, thrushes, babblers, laughing thrushes and wood-peckers. These are common in the Yamuna division. The birds found along the water-courses are brown dipper, spotted fork-tail, white-capped redstart and various wagtails. Murgabis and teals are also found in the Bhillangana. The other birds found in the state are the paradise fly catcher, the great Himalayan barbet, the grosbeak, the parakeet, the golden oriole, the hedge sparrow, the sunbird, the flower peckers, the mor (peacock), robins and the minivet. Out of the preying birds, vultures, falcons, ookav, basa, sikra, dhanian, machmar (fish-killer) are found. Besides, a number of fly catchers, the warblers, bulbuls and the myna, various swifts, sky-larks, bush chats, swallows and the buntings are the other birds which add to the rich bird life of the district.

- **Reptiles-** Among reptiles, a wide variety of snakes are seen, many of whom are worshipped as nag devtas. Another striking specimen is the monitor lizard, a good 2ft. in length, called goh or gumla in the local dialect. A large number of rodents, such as squirrels, marmots and rats can be observed. Marmots are common in the Har - Ki - Dun area, where their presence can be detected by their high - pitched, chattering voices. They store food in their burrows and hibernate through winter. Snakes are not numerous in the district but the cobra and the Russel's viper are commonly found up to 1,800 m. The only hill- snake found above the altitude of 2,400 m. is *Ancistrodon himalayanus* which attains a length of about 65 cm. and is venomous though its bite is not fatal. Among the non-venomous snakes, the python is most notable. It grows to a length of about 9 m. though specimens over 6 m. are rare. The rat-snake, which attains a length of about 3 m., is also seen in the district. The leech is particularly active during the rains and prefers oak forests. The frog and the toad, both amphibians, are met with throughout the district. Several species of lizards are frequently to be seen on rocks basking in the sun. The blood-sucker lizard, in spite of its name, is perfectly harmless and grows to a length from 25 cm. to 40 cm.

- **Fish-** Fish is found in almost all the rivers, streams and lakes. The Jalkur, the Aglar, the Bhillangana, the Bhagirathi (the Ganga) and the Alaknanda abound in the larger fish. Some of these known as Gidhi, Gyoonri, Ghoonla weigh from 1 to 3 kg. While Bara khasra weighs about 10 kg.

3.4.2 National Parks, Sanctuaries of Garhwal

Wild life sanctuaries are the major attractions of the state Uttarakhand. The following are situated in the Garhwal region:

1. Govind (Pashu Vihar) Wild Life Sanctuary: Govind Wildlife Sanctuary is surrounded by Uttarkashi district. The sanctuary spread over an area of 953 sq. kms. This sanctuary was set up in 1955. It is believed to be one of the most beautiful towns in the Garhwal region. It has snowclad peaks and glaciers including mountains like Swarg Rohini, Black Peak and Bandarpunch. The popular destination for the trekkers is Har-ki-dun, which is famous for its emerald greenery. The wildlife populations count as snow leopard, brown and Himalayan black bears, thar, bharal, musk deer, serow, monal, trogon chir, koklas and khaleej pheasants and chukor.

2. Kedarnath Sanctuary: The Sanctuary established in the year 1972. Kedarnath Sanctuary lies broadly at 967 sq km in the land of gods Garhwal. In the wasteland of this sanctuary, animals like snow leopard, snow cock, tahr, musk deer, leopard and serow can be seen along with many species of birds. To study the details of the musk deer a project funded by WWF was undertaken between 1978 -1980. The best season to visit this Sanctuary is from April to June and again from September to November.

3. Nanda Devi Sanctuary: Nanda Devi Sanctuary is situated in Chamoli district. It lies just next to the Nanda Devi peak. It was established in 1980. The first men to have reached this Sanctuary, while yet in its perfect form, were the British mountaineers Eric Shipton and Bill Tillman. The area had largely remained peaceful until then, except for Tillman's successful attempt on Nanda Devi in 1936. The present sanctuary came into existence in 1939. There are no roads available and the area is unreachable. The only way to reach this sanctuary is to drive from Joshimath 25 km by road upto Lata and then 51

km trekking up to the sanctuary. Fauna includes Snow leopard, Himalayan Bear, Musk deer and Pheasant. The best season to visit is from April to May. Nanda Devi Sanctuary covers an area of 630 sq km.

4. Rajaji National Park: Uttarakhand: The Rajaji National Park is rich in faunal wealth because of the varied types of ecological niches existing in the reserve. The main groups occur are birds, mammals & reptiles snakes and lizards, amphibians (frogs & toads) and fishes, and chiefly the invertebrate groups are, the scorpions, centipedes, Odonata (dragon & damselflies), hymenoptera (wasps, bees, etc.) Isoptera (termites) and lepidoptera, which comprises more than 60 species. Our National bird Peacock is found here in abundance. The smaller carnivores as co-predators are leopard cat, jungle cat, civet cat and yellow-throated martin. Besides, other mammals like hyena, jackal and Bengal fox are not an uncommon sight and work as scavengers in the park. 315 birds species are reported to occur in the park. Birds like ducks, teals, cormorants, egrets, lapwing, pond herons, peafowl, jungle fowl, various species of partridges and pheasants, drongo, crows, owlets and nightjars, birds of prey, etc, are quite common. Twenty-eight species of snakes, 12 species of turtles & tortoises and 9 species of lizards among Reptilia are being recorded from the park.

5. Valley of Flowers National Park: Uttarakhand: The famous Valley of Flowers with the largest concentration of various species of wild flowers is off the Rishikesh-Badrinath road, 16 km from Govindghat. A virtual treat to the eyes, this beautiful valley in the Himalayas was established in the year 1982. This park, the smallest national park in the Himalayas was created to protect the catchment area of the Pushpavati River.

Check Your Progress - 1

- Why Uttarakhand is called the "Land of Gods".
- **Ans**.....
- Name the state bird of Uttarakhand.
- **Ans**.....
- Name the state animal of state.

- Ans.....

3.4.3 Fauna of Kumaun

The Kurmanchal or Kumaun division is also very rich in the fauna. The famous town of Kumaun is Ranikhet is equally rich in terms of fauna, as in flora. The various geographical and climatic factors of the d this area contribute make it a natural abode for majestic animals like Leopard, Langurs, Himalayan Black Bear Kakar and Goral. The high altitude zone of this area also abounds Musk Deer, Snow Leopard, Blue Ship and Thar. The other varieties of animals seen in Ranikhet are Leopard Cat, Mountain Goat, Barking Deer, Sambhar, Pine Mertin, Wild Bear, Indian Hare, Red Faced Monkey, Jackal, Red Fox, and Porcupine. The area in and around the town witnesses an exotic variety of birds, like Grey Quail, Kala Titar, Whistling Thrush, Chakor, Monal Pheasant, Cheer Pheasant and Koklas Pheasant. The District of Nainital is blessed with all types of zones responsible for the growth of diverse flora and fauna in the area. The area has different varieties of soil for different plantations. The deep valleys of Nainital having an elevation up to 1000 meters providing an ideal climate for growing plants of both hilly areas and the plains. The dense forests is a habitat for a large number of animals like the Himalayan languor, Indian porcupine, wild pig, monkey, barking deer, black capped marten, gural, and brown flying squirrel. One can also hear the humming of a large number of birds in these forests. Some of them are jungle crow, streaked laughing thrush, grey winged black bird, house sparrow, the Himalayan tree creeper, house crow, green backed tit. Nainital lakes are inhabited with a variety of fishes commonly known as carps. There are both major and minor carps. The major ones have three classes, mahaseer, hill trout (commonly known as asela or rasela), and mirror carp. The carps are bred on a large scale in Nainital. Around 65 percent area of the district Champawat is covered with fauna and flora. Rest 35 percent is used s agricultural, non-agricultural and grazing land. Besides the hills, the plains are vegetated with plenty of exotic and traditional variety of plants such as Ecliptus, Babool, Teak, Sagon, Jamun, Bans, Bail, and Madar etc. The forest of the region is

blessed with various kinds of wild life including tiger, elephant, Cheetal, Barahsingha, deer etc. Various kinds of beautiful birds particularly Sarso, a sovereign bird is found every year during winter season is the specialty of the region. The alpine and sub-alpine zones which include Milam, Ralam, Garbyang, Martoli etc, are very rich in the medicinal herbs and are considered as the most natural abode of the largest number of medicinal plants. The sub-alpine zones are a natural sanctuary for Leopard, Chital, fleet little Monkeys, Langoor, Bear, Kakar or barking deer, Ghoral etc. Whereas the high altitude zones abound in Musk deer, popularly called Kastura, Snow Leopard, Blue Sheep, Thar etc. The sub-alpine zones of Almora and outskirts are a natural sanctuary for leopard, Langur, Himalayan black bear, kakar, goral etc. Whereas the high altitude zones abound musk deer, popularly called Kastura Mrig, snow leopard, blue sheep, thar etc. The entire zone is rich in a remarkable variety of birds possessing plumage of magnificent design and colours like peacock, which include grey quail, Kala Titar, Whistling thrush, Chakor, monal pheasant cheer pheasant, koklas pheasant etc.

3.4.4 National Parks, Sanctuaries of Kumaun

At present, the following sanctuaries are being maintained and are under development in the Kumun region of Uttarakhand:

3.4.4.1 Askot Sanctuary

Askot sanctuary is situated at a distance of 54 km from Pithoragarh. Askot was the ancient kingdom of Katyur dynasty it also has a palace of the last Katyuri king. The name of Askot has been derived from the word Asi-kot, that is 80 forts. There are remains of the ancient forts all over the area. The area is rich for its sal, oak and pine forest and rich waterfalls. The important assets conserved here are `Malika Arjun temple` and the `Swami Narayan Ashram`. The Askot Sanctuary has charismatic hilly areas, and the houses surrounded by greenery, adds more amazement to its already splendid beauty. Askot is located in the lap of Kumaon Himalayas at a height of 1,650 metres, with the view of snow capped mountain peaks. The places of interest in the

sanctuary are snow leopards, Himalayan black bears, musk deers, snow cocks, tahrs, bharals, monals, chirs, koklas, pheasants and chukors.

3.4.4.2 Binsar Sanctuary

Binsar was summer capital of the Chand kings. It is located at a distance of 31 km from Amoral. Binsar is famous for its outstanding Himalayan view, Birds and wild life. Binsar is one of the most attractive spots in the Kumaon Himalayas and a well-acclaimed hill resort with plenty of Wild Life. Binsar Hills is also known, as Handy Dear. It is heighted at 2,310 meters and offers an excellent view of Almora town, Kumaon hills and the greater Himalayas. The surroundings prosper in alpine flora, ferns, hanging moss and species of wild flowers. The chief attraction of Binsar is the splendid view of the Himalayas-a 300 km stretch of famous peaks, which includes Kedarnath, Chaukhamba, Trisul, Nanda Devi, Nanda Kot and Panchchuli. The forests of Himalayan oak and rhododendron are excellent for trekking and associating with nature.

3.4.4.3 Corbett National Park

Country`s first wildlife Park established in 1936, extends in an area of 1318.54 sq km comprising (Corbett: 520.82 sq km; Sonanadi Wildlife Sanctuary: 301.18 sq km and Reserve Forest: 496.54 sq km) lies in Pauri Garhwal and Nainital districts. Jim Corbett Park is home to the thunderous tiger, trumpeting elephant and the twittering birds. The park has earned the name of "Land of Roar, Trumpet and Song". The Park is situated in the foothills of Uttarakhand gifting a sight of extraordinary beauty. It is the Patlidun, a broad flat valley, where the shining, rushing water of the river Ramganga wander through the hills and valleys.

In Jim Corbet Park wild elephants, leopards, hyenas, jackals and wild dogs are found. There are also some superb hog deer, barking deer, sambhar, chital and bears, both lazy and Himalayan. There is an occasional grief and some goral, mongooses, palm squirrel, flying squirrel, ratel, wild cat, antelopes, deer, wild boar, otter and porcupine. There are eight watchtowers in the park and to view the wonders from

November to June elephants are available in Dhikala and Bijrani. The river passes through the heart of the park and emerges into the plains at Kalagarh. Popular with anglers (a fisherman who uses a hook and line), it is stocked with the mighty Masher, Indian Trout and Goonch. The rapids make the ladle, spinner and plugs invaluable, but the big monasters in the pools can be lured by live bait.

Check Your Progress - 3

8. When did present Nanda Devi Sanctuary come in existence?

Ans.....
.....

9. What do mean by Askot?

Ans.....
.....

10. Which Park earned the name of "Land of Roar, Trumpet and Song" and Why?

Ans.....
.....

3.5 IMPORTANCE IN TOURISM

The number of tourist visited the parks, Sanctuaries and zoo of Uttarkahnd justifies the the importance of natural beauty of Uttarakhand. For your information every district of the Uttarakhand has the either park or sanctuary.They have rich variety of flora and fauna. The beautiful peaks, bugyals attracts the people of worldwide. So they are state assets.

Trekking is the latest craze with the trendy youth. The zig-zag routs of Himalaya made them crazy. But in present erathe rubbish and debris left behind by the tourists are not effectively disposed off, and consequently they pollute the river systems and eco system.

3.6 SUMMARY

The state is divided into two divisions, Garhwal and Kumaon, with a total of 13 districts. Uttarakhand has a great diversity of flora and fauna. In both the division there

are national parks or sanctuaries. Uttarakhand is home to rare species of plants and animals, many of which are protected by sanctuaries and reserves.

National parks in Uttarakhand include the Jim Corbett National Park (the oldest national park of India) at Ramnagar in Nainital District, and Valley of Flowers National Park and Nanda Devi National Park in Chamoli District, which together are a UNESCO World Heritage Site.

A number of plant species in the valley are internationally threatened. Floristically, it falls under the west Himalayan Biogeography zone and it is well-known for floral diversity similar to any other Himalayan region in the country with an estimated 4,000 species of flowering plants having great economic medicinal, aromatic and artistic value. Hence the need of time is use them eco friendly.

3.7 GLOSSARY

- **Fauna** -----Varity of animals and creatures
- **Diversity**-- Varity
- **Partridges**-----a kind of game bird
- **Amphibians** – animals living both in water and bland
- **Sanctuary**--- a place of refuge

3.8 Answer to Check your Progress

1. Jim Corbett
2. More than 225
3. Dhanouti
4. 4
5. Basically because of number of God and Goddess have their inhabitance here.
6. Monal
7. Musk Dear
8. 1936AD
9. Place of eighty forts.
10. Corbett national Park

3.9 REFERENCES

- Rana, S.V.S.. Environmental Studies.: Global Media,
- Jacobs, "Belief in 'Balance of Nature' Hard to Shake". Miller-McCune.
- International Transaction in Humanities and Social Sciences, Varsity-1,N-1,p 24-28
- Bisht.H,1994, Tourism in Garhwal Himalaya,Indus Pub. Co.,New Delhi
- Kala c.P,1999, Phenology of Alpine Plants in the Valley of Flowers National Park and Hemkund,Western Himalya
- Kandari O.P, 1982. Nanda Devi: India's Highest National Park

3.10 TERMINAL AND MODEL QUESTIONS

(A) Long Questions

1. Describe the importance of Fauna of Uttarakhand in the development of tourism.
2. Through light on variety of fauna found in Uttarakhand.

(B) Short Questions

1. Where did Rajaji national Park situate?
2. Define the term Biodiversity
3. In which zone do you find koklas in the state?
4. Why the species of fauna disappearing rapidly?

Unit-4:
Socio-Cultural And Economic Perspective

Structure:

4.1 Introduction

4.2 Objectives

4.3 Socio-Cultural Heritage of Uttarakhand

4.3.1 Art and Sculpture

4.3.2 Folk Dances

4.3.3 Fairs and Festivals

4.3.4 Cuisines

4.3.5 Religious Tradition

4.3.5.1 Chardham Yatra

4.3.5.2 Nanda Devi Rajjat yatra

4.3.5.3 Jhand Mela

4.3.5.4 Hemkund

4.3.5.5 Piryan kaliyar

4.4 Economic Heritage of Uttarakhand

4.4.1 Pilgrimages Places

4.4.2 Natural Resources

4.4.2.1 Flora and Fauna

4.4.2.2 Minerals

4.5 Summary

4.6 Glossary

4.7 Answer to Check your Progress

4.8 References

4.9 Terminal and Model Questions

4.1 INTRODUCTION

Uttarakhand has long been called "Land of the Gods" as the state has some of the holiest Hindu shrines, and for more than a thousand years, pilgrims have been visiting the region in the hopes of salvation and purification from sin. Gangotri and Yamunotri, the sources of the Ganga and Yamuna, dedicated to Ganga and Yamuna respectively, fall in the upper reaches of the state and together with Badrinath (dedicated to Vishnu) and Kedarnath (dedicated to Shiva) form the Chota Char Dham, one of Hinduism's most spiritual and auspicious pilgrimage circuits.

Haridwar, meaning "Gateway to the God", is a prime Hindu destination. Haridwar hosts the Kumbha Mela every twelve years, in which millions of pilgrims take part from all parts of India and the world. Rishikesh near Haridwar is known as the preeminent yoga centre of India. The state has an abundance of temples and shrines, many dedicated to local deities or manifestations of Shiva and Durga,

references to many of which can be found in Hindu scriptures and legends. Uttarakhand is, however, a place of pilgrimage not only for the Hindus. Piran Kaliyar Sharif near Roorkee is a pilgrimage site to Muslims, Gurdwara Hemkund Sahib, nested in the Himalayas, is a prime pilgrimage center for the Sikhs. Tibetan Buddhism has also made itself felt with the reconstruction of Mindrolling Monastery and its Buddha Stupa, described as the world's highest at Clement Town, Dehradun.

The native people of Uttarakhand are generally called Uttarakhandi and sometimes specifically either Garhwali or Kumaoni depending on their place of origin in either the Garhwal or Kumaon region. The Garhwali and Kumaoni, dialects of Central Pahari are spoken in Kumaon and Garhwal regions, respectively. Jaunsari and Bhoti languages are spoken by tribal communities in the west and north, respectively. The urban population, however, converses mostly in Hindi, which is an official language of the state. Uttarakhand is the only Indian state to give official language status to Sanskrit.

4.2 OBJECTIVES

After reading this Unit you will know about the:

- major festivals and fairs of Uttarakhand,
- chief characteristic features of various festivals and fairs of India,
- you will know about your tradition and customs,
- About socio-cultural development of Uttarakhand.

4.3 SOCIO-CULTURAL OF HERITAGE OF UTTARAKHAND

Uttarakhand has a multiethnic population spread across two geocultural regions: the Gahrwal, and the Kumaon. A large portion of the population is Rajput (various clans of landowning rulers and their descendants)—including members of the native Garhwali, Kumaoni and Gujjar communities, as well as a number of immigrants. Approximately one-fifth of the population belongs to the Scheduled Castes (an official term for the lower castes in the traditional Hindu caste

system). Scheduled Tribes (an official term for natives outside the Indian social system), such as the Raji, who live near the border with Nepal, constitute less than 3 percent of the population. More than four-fifths of Uttarakhand's residents are Hindus. Approx 85% are Hindus.

According to a 2007 study, Uttarakhand has the highest percentage of Brahmins of any state in India, with approximately 20% of the population being Brahmin. ^[35] Muslims, Sikhs, Christians, Buddhists, and Jains make up the remaining population with the Muslims being the largest minority. "In those lovely valleys there is still the romance and poetry of life: each tree has its god, each bush its spirit" - So wrote the 19th century British anthropologist and surveyor Charles A. Sherring, describing a fair part of Uttarakhand, in his great research 'Western Tibet and British Borderland'.

All the local traditions of the state are determinedly attached to nature and its bounty. No legends or myths are complete without nature, seasons or the Himalayas being integral part of them. The people spare no opportunity to celebrate this bountiful natural, social and religious diversity. Collective celebrations become the order of the day - the many fairs and festivals bear testimony to this. These fairs have now become remarkable stages for all sort of uncluttered social, cultural and economic exchange. Visitors from far and wide are drawn to these events in multitudes.

The state offers journey-options to both - the religious and the spiritual. There are a number of religious events attached to River Ganga - the holiest of all the rivers. Daily aartis performed every evening at the banks of the Mother-River in Haridwar and Rishikesh present a memorable sight to behold when the star studded sky seems to be reflecting the serene waters of the river upon the surface of which float countless diyas offered to the goddess. The Kumbh Mela that is held every twelve years witnesses some of the largest gatherings of devotees to be seen anywhere in the whole world. Overwhelming natural panoramas accompany the pilgrims taking part in the Nanda Devi Raj Jaat and Kailash Mansarovar Yatras. The shrines of Hemkund Sahib

and Nanakmatta Sahib are visited by thousands of Sikh devotees while a symbol of national integration - the Dargaah at Piran Kaliyar Sharif, holds a significant religious rank for Muslims and people from other faiths alike.

Several indigenous tribes and communities flourish in this state today maintaining their distinct cultural heritage and traditions. The several fairs and festivals celebrated by the tribes such as Bhotias (Shaukas), Tharus, Buxas and Jaunsaris are opportunities for the locals and the visitors to witness these events as opportunities to keep the traditional modes of life and art alive apart from providing them the recognition they so strongly deserve. Legends, myths and anecdotes galore in the state of Uttarakhand which has in turn been bestowed by the richest, holy rivers and the most esteemed mountains. Series of legends and tales are intricately woven around the sacred shrines, temples and rivers by simple hearted, god-fearing people that simultaneously reflect the socio- cultural diversity of the state.

4.3.1 Art and Sculpture

Uttarakhand is also hailed as the Dev Bhoomi. Spirituality, mysticism and pristine nature are the major contributors in establishing the state as one of the major pilgrimage center of Hindus. There are several temples of interest that follow the Nagara style of architecture. Char Dham makes one of the major pilgrimage centers that include four most worshiped Hindu temples viz Yamunotri, Gangotri, Kedarnath and Badrinath. The main shrine of Badrinath Temple houses the black stone image of Lord Badrinarayan, sitting under a gold canopy, under a Badri Tree. There are fifteen more murtis around the temple that are also worshipped and they are: murtis of Nara & Narayana, Narasimha (the fourth incarnation of Vishnu), Lakshmi, Narada, Lord Ganesha, Uddhava, Kubera, Garuda (the vehicle of Lord Narayan), and Navadurga. Baleshwar temple is dedicated to Lord Shiva. The two other temples in the compound of Baleshwar temple: one dedicated to Ratneshwar and other to Champawati Durga. The temple is an example of South Indian Architecture with stone carving works. The exteriors of these two temples are carved with the different posters of the local deities.

Mahasu Devta Temple is located on the Tuini-Mori road at Hanol in Uttarakhand. It is an ancient temple of Mahasu Devta built in 9th century. The temple was initially constructed in Huna architectural style initially but, over the ages, acquired a mixed style. The stone built classical sanctum sanctorum has one bronze image. Those in front row from left to right are images of Chalda Mahasu (the Mahasu who keeps on moving), Devladli Devi (mother of Mahasu Devta), Kapala Bir (one of the four birs (attendants) of Mahasu Devta), and Shedkuliya (the attendant who emits the whistling sound). Behind them are Pavasi Devta, Kailu (a bir), Natari (polyandrous wife of four Mahasu brothers). All the face images are seated in the middle of a small bronze image which is regarded as Botha Mahasu. Neelkanth Mahadev Temple is dedicated to Lord Shiva. The temple sikhara is adorned with sculptures of various Devas and Asuras depicting the Samudramanathan. The temple sculptures of Uttarakhand are simple and depict the North Indian style of stone carving. Images are either made of bronze or black stone.

Garhwal School of Painting

Garhwal was always considered a safe haven for wanderers, adventurers, political exiles, philosophical thinkers and nature lovers. About the middle of the 17th century A.D. Suleman Shikoh, a Mughal Prince, took refuge in Garhwal. The Prince brought along with him an artist and his son who were his court painters and well versed in the Mughal style of Miniature Painting. After nineteen months, the Prince left Garhwal but his court painters, enchanted by the environs, stayed behind. These painters settled in Srinagar (Garhwal), the then capital of the Pawar dynasty and introduced the Mughal style of painting in Garhwal. With the passage of time, the successors of these original masters became expert painters and also developed an original style of their own. This style later on came to be known as the Garhwal School of Painting.

About a century later, a famous painter, Mola Ram, developed a style of painting equaled in romantic charm only by few other styles of painting. He was not

only a great master of the Garhwal School but also a great poet of his time. We find beautiful poems in some of Mola Ram's paintings. There are definite influences of other Pahari Schools reflected in these paintings, but the overall originality of the Garhwal School is maintained. Special features of the Garhwal School include beautiful women with fully developed breasts, thin waist line, soft oval shaped face, delicate brow and thin nose with defined nose bridge. A poet cum artist Mola Ram was undoubtedly an exceptional personality of his age, for, he wrote poems, made notes on natural history, collected data and painted a diverse range of subjects. The matrimonial alliance of King Pradhyuman Shah (1797-1804 AD) with a Guler Princess of Kangra induced many Guler artists to come and reside in Garhwal. Their technique greatly influenced the Garhwal style of painting. With the conceptualisation of ideal beauty, its fusion of religion and romance, its blending of poetry and passion, the paintings of Garhwal are an embodiment of the Indian attitude towards love.

We know the names of various painters of that period. Shyam Das and Har Das were first in the family tree, probably being the first to come to Garhwal with Prince Suleman. Hiralal, Mangat Ram, Molaram, Jwalaram, Tejram, Brijnath were some of the great masters of this school of art. The masterpieces of the Garhwal School of Painting include the illustrations of Ramayana (1780 A D) Celebrations of Balarama's birthday (1780 A D), Series of Raginis, Shiva and Parvati, Utkat Nayika, Abhisarika Nayika, Krishna painting the feet of Radha Radha looking into a mirror, Varsha Vihar Kaliya Daman, Illustrations of Gita Govinda. Rich collections of these paintings are displayed at the *University Museum in Srinagar*, Garhwal, along with many sculptures and finds from archaeological excavations.

- **Dekara:** Special images of Gods and Goddesses were made, since idol worship played an important role in the lives of the inhabitants of Garhwal. Dekaras are the clay images of Gods and Goddesses either in relief or in three dimensional form and are meant solely for worship. They are prepared out of fine clay mixed with Colour

- **Aipan:** Aipan is one of the traditional art (painting form) of Kumaon. It has great social, cultural and religious significance. Aipans are known by different names and is in popular in many parts of India with larger variations. It is called Alpana in Bengal, Satiya in Gujrat, Rangoli in Maharashtra, Chowk pooran in UP, Kolam in south India, Madne in Rajasthan, Arichan in Bihar and Bhuggul in Andhra.

In Uttarakhand, aipan are popularly drawn at places of worship, houses, and main entry doors of house and in front courtyard. Some of these artistic creations have great religious importance and these are drawn during particular religious ceremonies or auspicious occasions such as marriages, Threading ceremony, naming ceremony etc. to perform rituals while others are for particular God / Goddess and a few for aesthetic look.

This art is carried over generation by generations and mothers pass it on to their daughters and daughter in laws. However, with the wind of modernization blowing, this art is depleting fast. Our younger generation, born and brought up in cities outside Uttarakhand might not be familiar with it. As a humble attempt to spread awareness of our cultural heritage does not get eliminated in the wind of modernization, I have collected information from various sources and posted here for the benefit of everyone. Traditional Aipan The traditional aipan of Kumaon are drawn in linear art, geometrical designs, Flowers or imprints. These are mostly drawn for decorative purpose.

4.3.2 Folk Dances and Music

The dances of the region are connected to life and human existence and exhibit myriad human emotions. Langvir Nritya is a dance form for males that resembles gymnastic movements. Barada Nati folk dance is another famous dance of Dehradun, which is practised during some religious festivals. Other well-known dances include Hurka Baul, Jhora-Chanchri, Jhumaila, Chauphula, and Chholiya. Music is an integral part of the Uttarakhandi culture. Popular types of folk songs include Mangal, Basanti, Khuded and Chhopati. These folk songs are played on instruments including Dhol,

Damau, Turri, Ransingha, Dholki, Daur, Thali, Bhankora, Mandan and Mashakbaja. Bedu Pako is a popular folk song of Uttarakhand with international fame and legendary status within the state. It serves as unofficial state song of Uttarakhand. Music is also used as a medium through which the Gods are invoked. *Jagar* is a form of ghost worship in which the singer, or *Jagariya*, sings a ballad of the Gods, with allusions to great epics, like Mahabharat and Ramayana, that describe the adventures and exploits of the God being invoked. Narendra Singh Negi and Mina Rana are popular folk singers of the region.

- **Langvir Nritya:** This is an acrobatic dance and is performed by the men folk only. In this dance, a long bamboo pole is fixed at a place. The dancer-acrobat climbs to the top of this pole and then balances himself on his stomach on the top. Under the pole, a band of musicians play the 'Dhol' and 'Damana', while the dancer rotates on the top of the pole, performing other feats with his hands and feet. This dance is popular in the Tehri Garhwal region.
- **Barada Nati:** The Barada Nati folk dance is a popular dance of the Jaunsar Bhawar area of Chakrata Tehsil in Dehradun district. The folk dance is performed on the eve of some religious festivals or on the occasion of some social functions. Both boys and girls take part in the dance dressed in colourful traditional costumes.
- **Pandav Nritya:** The Pandav Nritya, which is related to the story of the Mahabharata, has been very popular, particularly in the Garhwal region. Pandavas Nritya is nothing but a simple narration of the story of the Mahabharata in the form of dance and music. It is mostly enacted on the occasion of 'Dussehra' and Diwali. Pandavas Nritya is popular in Chamoli district and Pauri Garhwal.
- **Chhopati:** These are the folk songs popular in the Rawain - Jaunpur area of Tehri Garhwal. 'Chhopati' are the love songs sung between men and women in the form of questions and answers.
- **Chounphula and Jhumeila:** "Chounphula and Jhumeila" are among seasonal dances, that are performed from 'Basant Panchami' onwards to 'Sankranti' or Baisakhi'.

'Jhumeila' is sometimes mixed but is usually restricted to women. 'Chounphula' is performed by all sections of the community, at night, in groups, by men and women. 'Chounphula' folk songs are composed for the appreciation of nature on various occasions. Chounpala, Jhmeila and Daryola folk songs all derive their names from the folk dances of the same nomenclature.

- **Basanti:** "Basanti" folk songs are composed for the coming spring season when flowers bloom and new life springs in the valleys of the hills of Garhwal. The folk song is sung individually or in groups.
- **Mangal:** Mangal songs are sung during marriage ceremonies. These songs are basically "Puja Songs" (hymns) sung along with the Purohits (Panditjee/priests) who keep chanting "Shlokas"(verses) in Sanskrit according to the Shastras (scriptures) during the marriage ceremony.
- **Puja Folk Songs:** These songs are connected with the Puja (worship) of family deities. There are other Puja songs connected with 'Tantra' and 'Mantras ' to exorcise evil spirits from human beings.
- **Jaggar:** Jaggar falls in the category of ghost and spirit worship, in the form of a folk song or, at times, combined with dances. Sometimes, Jaggar may also be in the form of Puja folk songs and is sung in honour of the various Gods and Goddesses.
- **Bajuband:** This is a folk song of love and sacrifice among the shepherds. It is a love dialogue between a man and woman, or, between a boy and girl.
- **Khuded:** These folk songs depict the suffering of a woman caused by separation from her husband. The women curse the circumstances under which she has been separated. This is generally when the husband is away looking for a job. 'Laman', another folk song is sung on special occasions, expressing the sacrifice that a man is willing to undergo for his beloved. 'Pawada' also belongs to this category of folk songs, when sorrow is felt when the husband has gone to the battle field.

- **Chhura:** 'Chhura' folk songs are sung among shepherds, in the form of advice given by the old to the young, learnt from their experience, particularly about grazing sheep and goats.

Kumaonis are fond of music, folk dance, and songs accompanied by local musical instruments like murli, bina, and hurka. The hurka is played by the "jurkiya" and the dancer accompanying him, known as "hurkiyari," is usually his wife or daughter. They go from place to place narrating folklores, singing the praise of their gods and goddesses. During fairs and festivals and at harvest time, they often dance the Jharva, Chandhur Chhapalior, and many other forms of folk dances. The popular folk songs are Malushahi, Bair, and Hurkiya Bol.

4.3.3 Fairs and Festivals

Fairs and festivals for long have been the unique, interesting feature of the land of India and Uttarakhand is also no exception. In fact it won't be wrong to say that it's a land of fairs and festival.

Uttarakhand, a land dotted with temples and more temples, has its own fairs and festivals, which are inherent to the culture here and have been passed from one generation to another since centuries.

At such auspicious occasions, places of worship like *Uttarakhand temples* turn into venues of fairs and great celebration attracting people from far and wide. A fair held in the state is not just linked with its cultural identity but is also an important mark of its socio economic fabric. It offers glimpses of all aspects of a culture. A common trend in India and in Uttarakhand therefore is that many festivals come with their attached fairs.

- **Jauljibi And Thal Fairs:** The fair of Jauljibi (or the Kumaoni festival as it is known) is held here every year in the month of November. The place is also very significant since it is the confluence point of Rivers Kali and Gori. It is also the place of meeting of cultures, Shauka, Nepali and Kumaoni; these three cultures meet at this place. Stressing on the significance of this place in the past and even today is the fact this is the getaway

to important places like Johar, Darma, Chaudans and Byans. It was also once the centre point between Tibet and Tarai regions. While the fair is important for its commercial value yet its cultural significance is equally important. It invites visitors from as far as Nepal, who come here to sell horses, ghee and take back food grains and jaggery. A similar kind of fair is organised in Thal on the occasion of Makar Sankranti on the occasion of Vaishakh Sankranti on 14th April every year and is particularly famous with Shaukas.

- **The Uttarayani Fair:** The Uttarayani fair is a very important fair to the cultural and social fabric of Uttarakhand. It is organised at not one but many places throughout the land of Uttarakhand - Bageshwar, Rameshwar, Suit Mahadev, Chitrashila (Ranibagh) and Hansheshwar. However it's Bageshwar where maximum crowds gather, though all are important from cultural, social and economic point of view. The fair also is connected with history, in the past also this fair has played key role, during the freedom movement. Gandhiji came here in Bageshwar fair in 1929.
- **Nanda Devi Fair:** Nanda Devi is the patron goddess of people of mountains. The Nanda Devi fair is held at many important cities across Uttarakhand like in Almora, Nainital, Kot, Ranikhet, Bhowali, Kichha and on a smaller level in villages of Lohar and in valleys of Pindar.

According to the locals, the fair started in Kumaon region during the time of Kalyan Chand in 16th century. The fair is very important and sees visitors from far-flung areas. Rich with folk expression, the Nanda Devi fairs are also important from economical point of view. Famous Festivals of Uttarakhand

- **Makar Sankranti:** An important festival in northern India, it marks the beginning of season change. People give alms to the poor on this day and take dips in holy rivers. Uttarayani fair is held around this time. Another locally celebrated autumn festival of Uttarakhand around this time is Ghughutia or Kale Kauva. People make sweetmeats of flour and jaggery and make it in the shape of pomegranates, swords and knives and other such interesting shapes. A necklace is made with these then with an orange in

the centre. Little children wear these and go out to attract crows and other birds and offer them pieces from their necklaces.

- **Phool Dei:** The festival is celebrated in the beginning of month of Chaitra according to the Hindu calendar, which comes sometime in mid March. It is mainly a festival of young girls, where in they go from house to house with plates full of rice, jaggery, coconut, green leaves and flowers. These girls give their blessings and wishes for the prosperity of the house and are given presents, jaggery, sweets, and money in return.
- **Olgia:** The festival is celebrated on the first day of August or Bhado as it is called in the Hindi calendar. This is the time when the fields are full of lush green harvest and the milking animals are very productive. Earlier son in-laws to father and nephews to maternal uncles used to give presents, however now a days it has changed. People eat chapatis with ghee and urad dal (pulse) filled in it. The festival 's popularity has declined over a period of time.
- **Khatarua:** While some say that the festival is celebrated in lieu of victory of king of Kumaon. But the popular belief goes that the festival marks the beginning of autumn season. It's celebrated sometime in mid September, the first day of month of Ashwin according to the Hindu calendar. Bonfires are lighted around which children dance. People offer cucumbers to fire as it is said to destroy all the evils. Special care is taken of animals during this time.
- **Bat Savitri:** Another popular festival celebrated in entire northern India by married women for the well being of their spouses. The festival is celebrated on the last day of the dark half of the month of Jyeshtha according to Hindu calendar. Women worship Savitri who with her intense devotion brought her husband from death and observe fasts. They also worship a holy tree called Bat or Banyan tree.
- **Ganga Dusshera or Dasar:** The festival is celebrated sometime between May and June on the tenth day of the month of Jyeshtha according to Hindu calendar. This is the day of worshipping river Ganga and people take a dip in holy rivers. Many people put up stalls and offer water and food.

- **Doonagiri mela:** Doonagiri mela Doonagiri, noted for its ancient Durga Temple, is a pilgrim spot that attracts a large of pilgrims, during the fair days at Navratri in October. Kasar Devi Mela A fair is held twice a year, during winter and summer months, in the picturesque and older part of the town. The fact that the great Swami Vivekananda came to Almora and gained enlightenment in a small cave at Kasar Devi adds the trivia to give a lot more significance to the place. Shrawan Mela, Jageshwar fair in July & August, Gananath Mela in October-November and Dwarahat Mela held in April are some other important festivities of the region. Chitai Temple This sacred temple, built in the memory of Gollu Devta, is situated 6kms from Almora at a place called Chitai. Sacrifices of goats are offered to the deity which was, at one time, a sort-of law court, that decided several pleas received from the distressed people of the region. Doonagiri Doonagiri is extremely rich in historical and religious significance and has many myths attached to it. According to one, when Hanuman was carrying the Sanjiwani booty to save Lakshman, a piece fell at this place and since that day, this place is known as Doonagiri. A temple of Vaishno Devi, the famous cave Goddess, is situated here. Doonagiri is abuzz with activity in Chait and Ashwin months of Navaratri as many festivals are celebrated around that time. Pandukholi Situated 10kms. from Doonagiri, the temple is famous for the caves built here by the Pandavas. Apart from these, many other places are worth visiting around Almora like Kosi temple, Gananath and Jageshwar.

- **Kumaoni Holi:** The uniqueness of the Kumaoni Holi lies in its being a musical affair, whichever may be its form, be it the Baithki Holi, the Khari Holi or the Mahila Holi. The Baithki Holi and Khari Holi are unique in that the songs on which they are based have touch of melody, fun and spiritualism. These songs are essentially based on classical ragas. No wonder then the Baithki Holi is also known as Nirvan Ki Holi. The Baithki Holi begins from the premises of temples, where Holiyars (the professional singers of Holi songs) as also the people gather to sing songs to the accompaniment of classical music. Kumaonis are very particular about the time when

the songs based on ragas should be sung. For instance, at noon the songs based on Peelu, Bhimpalasi and Sarang ragas are sung while evening is reserved for the songs based on the ragas like Kalyan, Shyamkalyan and Yaman etc. The Khari Holi is mostly celebrated in the rural areas of Kumaon. The songs of the Khari Holi are sung by the people, who sporting traditional white churidar payajama and kurta, dance in groups to the tune of ethnic musical instruments.

- **Harela and Bhitauli:** On the first day of the navaratri (nine day holy period) of the month of Chaitra women fill baskets with soil and sow seven types of grains in them. The grains germinate symbolizing the future harvest. These yellow leaves, called Harela, are cut on the tenth day and people put them on their heads and behind their ears. During the month of Chaitra (March-April) brothers send presents to their sisters and parents to their daughters. These presents are called Bhitauli.

However, the more popular Harela is the one that is celebrated in the month of Shravan to commemorate the wedding of Lord Shiva and Parvati and to welcome the rainy season and the new harvest. On this day people make Dikaras or clay statues of Gauri, Maheshwar, Ganesh etc. and worship them. Even the overworked bullocks are given a rest on the occasion of Harela. People put the blades of freshly cut Harela on their heads and send them to their relatives and friends as well.

Check Your Progress

1. Who plays Hurka?

Ans.....
.....

2. Where do Mahsu devta temple located?

Ans.....
.....

3. Who do the Badrinath temple is devoted to?

Ans.....
.....

4.3.4 Cuisines

The Magical state of Uttarakhand is a place where one will find simply prepared yet delicious cuisines. The food there is rich in nutritious content so that it helps a traveler to cope up with the hilly and cool environment of the region. The food prepared there is filled with love and affection and charcoal and wood fire is used extensively for cooking. People of Uttarakhand are basically vegetarian, but one can find wide varieties of non veg food at various restaurants and food outlets. Rice is the staple food for the people of Uttarakhand. In the Kumaon Region one will find very less use of milk or milk products. This is the basic characteristics of the food prepared there as cows in the hilly regions do not yield good quantity of milk.

The primary food of Uttarakhand is vegetables with wheat being a staple, although non-vegetarian food is also served. A distinctive characteristic of Uttarakhand cuisine is the sparing use of tomatoes, milk, and milk based products. Coarse grain with high fibre content is very common in Uttarakhand due to the harsh terrain. Another crop which is associated with Uttarakhand is Buckwheat (locally called *Madua* or *Jhingora*), particularly in the interior regions of Kumaon and Garhwal. Generally, either Desi Ghee or Mustard oil is used for the purpose of cooking food. Simple recipes are made interesting with the use of hash seeds "Jakhiya" as spice. Bal Mithai is a popular fudge-like sweet. Other popular dishes include Dubuk, Chains, Kap, Chutkani, Sei, and Gulgula. A regional variation of Kadhi called *Jhoi* or *Jholi* is also popular.

4.3.5 Religious Tradition

One of the major Hindu pilgrimages, Kumbh Mela, takes place in Uttarakhand. Haridwar is one of the four places in India where this mela is organised. Haridwar most recently hosted the Purna Kumbh Mela from Makar Sankranti (14 January 2010) to Vaishakh Purnima Snan (28 April 2010). Hundreds of foreigners joined Indian pilgrims in the festival which is considered the largest religious gathering in the world.^[46] Kumauni Holi, in forms including Baithki Holi, Khari Holi and Mahila

Holi, all of which start from Vasant Panchami, are festivals and musical affairs that can last almost a month. Ganga Dashahara, Vasant Panchami, Makar Sankranti, Ghee Sankranti, Khatarua, Vat Savitri, and Phul Dei are other major festivals. In addition, various fairs like Kanwar Yatra, Kandali Festival, Ramman, Harela mela, Nauchandi mela, Uttarayani mela and Nanda Devi Raj Jat Mela take place.

4.3.5.1 Chardham Yatra

Char Dham (sacred Hindu shrines of Badrinath, Kedarnath, Gangotri and Yamunotri) are situated in the snow-covered reaches of the lofty Garhwal Himalayas, Uttarakhand. This part of the Himalayas is referred as the land of the gods in the ancient Hindu mythology. The Char Dham Yatra (pilgrimage) is popular among the Hindus that thousands of pilgrims visit these four holy shrines every year. Devotees visit the four Dham (shrines) all for a spiritual union with the divine. The Char Dham Yatra is popular for centuries. In fact, these places have been described in sacred scriptures as those places where devotees could earn the virtues of all the pilgrimages put together. With the passage of time these four Dhams came to have numerous temples. All the four holy shrines (Char Dham) are located at a height of more than 3,000 m above sea level. Since the shrines are covered with snow in winters, it is generally advised to go for Char Dham Yatra during summer months.

4.3.5.2 Nanda Devi Rajjat yatra

The three-week-long Nanda Devi Raj Jat is a pilgrimage and festival of Uttarakhand in India. People from the entire Garhwal division-Kumaon division as well as other parts of India and the world participate in Nanda Devi Raj Jat Yatra. The goddess Nanda Devi is worshipped at dozens of places in Kumaon and Garhwal, but the region around Mt. Nanda Devi and its sanctuary, which falls in the Pithoragarh district, Almora district and Chamoli district, is the prime area related to Nanda Devi. In Chamoli, Nanda Devi Raj Jaat is organized once in 12 years. The Jaat (meaning Yatra or pilgrimage) starts from Nauti village near Karnprayag and goes up to the heights of Roopkund and Homekund with a four horned sheep. After the havan - yagna is over,

the sheep is freed with decorated ornaments, food and clothings, and the other offerings are discarded.

4.3.5.3 Jhand Mela

Every year on the fifth day of Holi - a festival of colors, in the sacred memory of the revered Guru, a fair known as Jhanda Mela, is held near the Ram Rai Durbar in Dehradun. Guru Ram Rai is the founder of the seat of the Udasin sect in Dehradun. The main event of the Jhanda Mela is the erecting of a 87 feet long Mast (jhandaji). On the day of erecting the mast, first of all the old mast is removed; after that, one can see a large number of men wrapping covers around the mast, offered by devotees. A total of 20 shaneel (velvet) covers, one darshani cover and 40 covers made of cotton cloth cover up the mast. The wrapping up of layers of cloth by pilgrims is an act of thanksgiving and wish fulfillment. The syncretism practiced by Guru Ram Rai and Mahants, draws in Lakhs of devotees belonging to all religions to the event every year. Conforming to its antiquity, a large number of sikh devotees from India and abroad visit for pilgrimage. The credit for transforming the simple ceremony of raising the flag into an egalitarian and community show goes to Guru Ram Rai's wife Rani Punjab Kaur.

4.3.5.4 Hemkund

In the Indian Himalayas, at the headwaters of the holy river Ganges is the 'northern land' of sacred mountains and waters known as Uttarakhand. It is said that here the landscape itself is imbued with sacred qualities; certainly the beauty of nature is interwoven with the spirit of pilgrimage. Unique among the sacred places here is a small lake, high above the tree line and surrounded by rocky peaks. Gururudwara Hemkund Sahib is on its bank, at an altitude of 4,329 metres, and is the highest temples in India. For eight months of the year this 'lake of ice' is inaccessible, its water frozen beneath deep snow. When the monsoon rains begin, the ice and snow melt, and meadows of ferns and moss and wildflowers colour its banks. Then, in their thousands, Sikhs climb the steep stone path to the lake and bathe in its chill waters. They come in

remembrance and prayer to see the place where their tenth Guru meditated and realized his oneness with God.

4.3.5.5 Piryan kaliyar

Piran Kaliyar is the dargah of 13th-century Sufi saint of Chishti Order, Alauddin Ali Ahmed Sabir Kalyari also known as Sarkar Sabir Pak and Sabir Kaliyari, situated at Kaliyar village, near Haridwar on the banks of Ganga Canal, 7 km. from Roorkee, It is one of the most revered shrine for Muslims in India and is equally revered by Hindus and Muslims. The dargah shrine built by Ibrahim Lodhi, a ruler of Delhi, He was the South Asian Sufi Saint of Chishti Order in the 13th century, a successor to Baba Farid (1188-1280), and the first in the Sabiriya branch of Chishti Order.

Check Your Progress

4. Where is Piryan Kaliyer?

Ans.....

5. Where is Valley of Flower?

Ans.....

6. How many monuments of Uttarakhand are nationally protected?

Ans.....

4.4 ECONOMIC HERITAGE OF UTTARAKHAND

Here is your moment to listen to the call of the mountains. Explore, dream and discover yourself in the silence of the mountain trails in Uttarakhand. The Land of the gods awaits you for that one mystic experience of a lifetime that gives you a chance to sense the oneness with nature. **Uttarakhand** The recent events in Uttarakhand have shown, more than ever, that we need a development strategy for the Himalayas that takes into account the vulnerability of the region and the need for environment protection. There is no doubt that the region needs economic growth. But this development cannot come at the cost of the environment.

4.4.1 Pilgrimages Places

The pilgrimage places of Uttarakhand are the backbone of the state. So every government of the state always tries to make the pilgrimage better. There are uncountable numbers of pilgrimage places of Hindu, Muslim, Sikh, Buddhist and Jain. The Char Dham Yatra is popular for centuries. In fact, these places have been described in sacred scriptures as those places where devotees could earn the virtues of all the pilgrimages put together.

4.4.2 Natural Resources

In this abode of tranquility, we invite you to a momentous journey through the wildlife sanctuaries in Uttarakhand. The wildlife of Uttarakhand will guide you through the wide expanse of Jim Corbett National Park, Binsar Sanctuary and Askot sanctuary. These uncharted locales of Uttarakhand would bring to you an unparalleled get away in the unheard wilds of the Valley of Flowers and the The Rajaji National Park. The sites of the western Himalayan broadleaf forests, the subalpine coniferous array of trees at Govind Pashu Vihar Wildlife sanctuary or the Kedarnath Musk Deer sanctuary, this wildlife haven has limitless breadth of nature to offer you and for this promised wildlife retreat contact one of our wildlife travel experts and your holiday will be personalized suiting your requirements.

Nestled in the Himalayas, Uttarakhand attracts increasing numbers of visitors every year. Between 2001 and 2010, the number of visitors to the state rose nearly 200 percent to 30.3 million. With major Hindu shrines located in the state, about 70 percent of the tourists who visit the state visit religious sites. That is a worrying sign for ecologically fragile areas such as Kedarnath – a small temple town located 3,583 metres (11,755 feet) above sea level and almost entirely washed out in recent flash floods. famous peaks ie Nand devi, Banderpunch, om, Hathipravat etc are tmain the main attraction of visitors. "Forest and environment in ancient India is having emphasis in the Book on developing concept rather than merely providing information and providing up to date knowledge relevant to the ancient environment. There are four Ashrams in Vedic religion to lead the life and one of them is “Vanprasth’ in which the man has to live in the forest. In the

sixth century B.C. India witnessed an intellectual upheaval. Buddha was a leading figure of that epoch besides questioning the established norms, socio-religious practices and spiritual values prevailing at that time. Then the Buddha stood at a distance to the North-east of the Bodhi tree and gazed at it for one week motionless eyes as a mark of gratitude and appreciation for having sheltered him during his enlightenment. This is extremely significant in determining his attitude towards trees and forest.

Uttarakhand, located in Northern India, contains some of the most important and major rivers of India. The Ganga and the Yamuna have their sources in this state and comprise the most famous and major rivers of the country as a whole. They are supplied with water on a perennial basis by numerous lakes, glaciers and countless streams in the area. Uttarakhand is one of the most beautiful states in India and lakes in Uttarakhand make the place more scenic and mesmerising. These picturesque lakes of Uttarakhand, not only make it admirable but also attract lots of photographers and nature lovers. Also known as land of lakes and waterfalls.

4.4.2.1 Flora and Fauna

Uttarakhand has a great diversity of flora and fauna. It has a recorded forest area of 34651 km² which constitutes 65% of the total area of the state. Uttarakhand is home to rare species of plants and animals, many of which are protected by sanctuaries and reserves. National parks in Uttarakhand include the Jim Corbett National Park (the oldest national park of India) at Ramnagar in Nainital District, and Valley of Flowers National Park and Nanda Devi National Park in Chamoli District, which together are a UNESCO World Heritage Site. A number of plant species in the valley are internationally threatened, including several that have not been recorded from elsewhere in Uttarakhand. Rajaji National Park in Haridwar District and Govind Pashu Vihar National Park and Sanctuary and Gangotri National Park in Uttarkashi District are some other protected areas in the state. Leopards are found in areas which are abundant in hills but may also venture into the lowland jungles. Smaller felines

include the jungle cat, fishing cat, and leopard cat. Other mammals include four kinds of deer (barking, sambar, hog and chital), sloth and Himalayan black bears, Indian grey mongooses, otters, yellow-throated martens, bharal (goat-antelopes), Indian pangolins, and langur and rhesus monkeys. In the summer, elephants can be seen in herds of several hundred. Marsh crocodiles (*Crocodylus palustris*), gharials (*Gavialis gangeticus*) and other reptiles are also found in the region. Local crocodiles were saved from extinction by captive breeding programs and subsequently re-released into the Ramganga River.^[59] Several freshwater terrapins and turtles like the Indian sawback turtle (*Kachuga tecta*), Brahminy river turtle (*Hardella thurgii*), and Ganges softshell turtle (*Trionyx gangeticus*) are found in the rivers. Butterflies and birds of the region include red Helen (*Papilio helenus*), the great eggfly (*Hypolimnos bolina*), common tiger (*Danaus genutia*), pale wanderer (*Pareronia avatar avatar*), Jungle Babbler, Tawny-bellied Babbler, Great Slaty Woodpecker, Red-breasted Parakeet, Orange-breasted Green Pigeon and Chestnut-winged Cuckoo.

Evergreen oaks, rhododendrons, and conifers predominate in the hills. *Shorea robusta* (sal), silk cotton tree (*Bombax ciliata*), *Dalbergia sissoo*, *Mallotus philippensis*, *Acacia catechu*, *Bauhinia racemosa*, and *Bauhinia variegata* (camel's foot tree) are some other trees of the region. *Albizia chinensis*, the sweet sticky flowers of which are favoured by sloth bears, are also part of the region's flora. A decade long study by Prof. C.P. Kala concluded that the Valley of Flowers is endowed with 520 species of higher plants (angiosperms, gymnosperms and pteridophytes), of these 498 are flowering plants. The park has many species of medicinal plants including *Dactylorhiza hatagirea*, *Picrorhiza kurroa*, *Aconitum violaceum*, *Polygonatum multiflorum*, *Fritillaria roylei*, and *Podophyllum hexandrum*.

4.4.2.2 Minerals

Mineral Resources Important minerals that are found to occur in the State are high-grade limestone in Almora, Bageshwar, Dehradun, Nainital, Pauri-Garhwal, Pithoragarh & TehriGarhwal districts; magnesite and steatite in Almora, Bageshwar, Chamoli & Pithoragarh districts; and tungsten in Almora district. Other minerals that occur in the State are asbestos in Chamoli district; barytes and marble in Dehradun district; copper in Almora, Dehradun & Pithoragarh districts; dolomite in Dehradun, Nainital and TehriGarhwal districts; graphite in Almora district; gypsum in Dehradun, Pauri-Garhwal & Tehri-Garhwal districts; lead-zinc and silver in Dehradun & Pithoragarh districts; and rock phosphate in Dehradun & TehriGarhwal districts.

4.5 SUMMARY

Uttarakhand has many tourist spots due to its location in the Himalayas. There are many ancient temples, forest reserves, national parks, hill stations, and mountain peaks that draw large number of tourists. There are 44 nationally protected monuments in the state.^[68] Oak Grove School in the state is on the tentative list for World Heritage Sites. Two of the most holy rivers in Hinduism the Ganga and Yamuna, originate in Uttarakhand. The world famous rivers, lakes, mountains lies in the state and hence it carries the soico-cultural variety. The large number of folk traditions is followed in the state. The festivals of the state are vary colorful. All the geographical site of the state has its economic impact. Hence we can say that the state Uttarakhand is the state having the rich touristic heritage.

4.6 GLOSSARY

- **Tradition-** orally followed by the successors
- **Pilgrimage-** holy journey
- **Salvation-** Freedom
- **Delicates-** enjoyment

4.7 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. Jurkiya
2. Hanol
3. Vishnu

4. Rorkee
5. Chamoli
- 6.4 4

4.8 REFERENCES

- "Census of India – Socio-cultural aspects". Government of India, Ministry of Home Affairs. 2001 data. Retrieved 11 November 2013.
- "Demography". Government of Uttarakhand. Retrieved 17 July 2012.
- Trivedi, Anupam (19 January 2010). "Sanskrit is second official language in Uttarakhand". Hindustan Times. Retrieved 29 July 2012.
- "Folk Dances Of North India". culturalindia.net. Retrieved 29 July 2012.
- "Folk Songs of Uttarakhand". aboututtarakhand.com. Retrieved 29 July 2012.
- Subodh Upadhyay, An Essence of Himalaya, a book about Uttarakhand

4.9 TERMINAL AND MODEL QUESTIONS

Long Questions

1. Write an essay on socio-cultural heritage of Uttarakhand.
2. Describe the economic perspective of the Uttarakhand heritage.

Short Questions

1. What is Aipan?
2. Write short on the following:
 - a) Garhwal Painting
 - b) Herela and Bhitauli
 - c) Jhanda Mela
 - d) Kumauni Holi

Block-2:
**Nature Based Tourism Activities – Existing Resource - Use
Patterns and Further Prospects**

Unit-5:
**Effective and Potential Destinations for Mountaineering
and Rock Climbing**

Structure:

- 5.1 Introduction
- 5.2 Objectives
- 5.3 Mountaineering
- 5.4 Styles of Mountaineering
- 5.5 Mountaineering in Uttarakhand
- 5.6 Rock Climbing
- 5.7 Types of Climbing in mountaineering and Climbing
- 5.8 Types of Shelters in mountaineering and Climbing
- 5.9 Dangers in mountaineering and Climbing
- 5.10 NIM
- 5.11 Summary
- 5.12 Glossary
- 5.13 Answer to Check your Progress
- 5.14 References
- 5.15 Terminal and Model Questions

5.1 INTRODUCTION

Mountaineering and rock climbing is getting popularity day by day. Before starting its famous destination in Uttarkahand we must go to its history. Historically, many cultures have harbored superstitions about mountains, which they often regarded as sacred due to their proximity with heaven, such as Mount Olympus for the Ancient Greeks. In 1573 Francesco De Marchi and Francesco Di Domenico ascended Corno Grande, the highest peak in the Apennine Mountains. During the Enlightenment, as a product of the new spirit of curiosity for the natural world, many mountain summits were surmounted for the first time. Richard Pococke and William Windham made a historic visit to Chamonix in 1741. In 1760, the Swiss scientist, Horace-Bénédict de Saussure, offered a reward for the first person to ascend Mont Blanc in France, which was claimed in 1786.

By the early 19th century many of the alpine peaks were reached; the Grossglockner in 1800, the Ortler in 1804, the Jungfrau in 1811, the Finsteraarhorn in 1812, and the Breithorn in 1813. The beginning of mountaineering as a systematic sport is generally dated to the ascent of the Wetterhorn in 1854 by Sir Alfred Wills who made mountaineering fashionable, especially in Britain. This inaugurated what became known as the Golden age of alpinism, with the first mountaineering club - the Alpine Club - being founded in 1857. Prominent figures of the period include Lord Francis Douglas, Florence Crauford Grove, Charles Hudson, E. S. Kennedy, William Mathews, A. W. Moore, Leslie Stephen, Francis Fox Tuckett, John Tyndall, Horace Walker and Edward Whymper. Well-known guides of the era include Christian Almer, Jakob Anderegg, Melchior Anderegg, J. J. Bennen, Michel Croz, and Johannes Zumtaugwald.

In the early years of the "golden age", scientific pursuits were intermixed with the sport, such as by the physicist John Tyndall. In the later years of the "golden age", it shifted to a more competitive orientation as pure sportsmen came to dominate the

London-based Alpine Club and alpine mountaineering overall. One of the most dramatic events was the spectacular first ascent of the Matterhorn in 1865, by a party led by the English illustrator, Edward Whymper - four of the party members fell to their deaths. This ascent is generally regarded as marking the end of the mountaineering golden age. By this point the sport of mountaineering had largely reached its modern form, with a body of professional guides, equipment and fixed guidelines.

Focus shifted toward the exploration of other ranges such as the Pyrenees and the Caucasus Mountains; the latter owed much to the initiative of D. W. Freshfield who was the first man to conquer the summit of Mount Kazbek. Most of its great peaks were successfully conquered by the late 1880s. Mountaineering in the Americas became popular in the 1800s. In North America, Pikes Peak (14,410 ft (4,390 m)) in the Colorado Rockies, was first climbed by Edwin James and two others in 1820. Though lower than Pikes Peak, the heavily glaciated Fremont Peak (13,745 ft (4,189 m)) in Wyoming was thought to be the tallest mountain in the Rockies when it was first climbed by John C. Frémont and two others in 1842. Pico de Orizaba (18,491 ft (5,636 m)), the tallest peak in Mexico and third tallest in North America, was first summited by U.S. military personnel which included William F. Raynolds and a half dozen other climbers in 1848. Heavily glaciated and more technical climbs in North America were not achieved until the late 19th and early 20th centuries. In 1897, Mount Saint Elias (18,008 ft (5,489 m)) on the Alaska-Yukon border was summited by the Duke of the Abruzzi and party. But it was not until 1913 that Mount McKinley (20,237 ft (6,168 m)), the tallest peak in North America, was successfully climbed. Mount Logan (19,551 ft (5,959 m)), the tallest peak in Canada, was first summited by a half dozen climbers in 1925 in an expedition that took more than two months.

The last and greatest mountain range was the Himalayas in Central Asia. They had initially been surveyed by the British Empire for military and strategic

reasons. In 1892 Sir William Martin Conway explored the Karakoram Himalayas, and climbed a peak of 23,000 ft (7,000 m) In 1895 Albert F. Mummery died while attempting Nanga Parbat, while in 1899 D. W. Freshfield took an expedition to the snowy regions of Sikkim. In 1899, 1903, 1906 and 1908 Mrs Fannie Bullock Workman made ascents in the Himalayas, including one of the Nun Kun peaks (23,300 ft). A number of Gurkha sepoy were trained as expert mountaineers by Charles G. Bruce, and a good deal of exploration was accomplished by them.

5.2 OBJECTIVES

The unit aims to provide you:

- Information of mountaineering destination Uttarakhand.
- To explore rock climbing in the state.
- To enrich your historic knowledge of mountaineering and rock climbing.
- To make you aware of dangerous in the mountaineering and climbing.

5.3 MOUNTAINEERING

Mountaineering has become a popular sport throughout the world. In Europe the sport largely originated in the Alps, and is still immensely popular there. Other notable mountain ranges frequented by climbers include the Caucasus, the Pyrenees, Rila mountains, the Tatra Mountains and the rest of the Carpathian Mountains, as well the Sudetes. In North America climbers frequent the Rocky Mountains, the Sierra Nevada of California, the Cascades of the Pacific Northwest, the high peaks of The Alaska Range and Saint Elias Mountains.

There has been a long tradition of climbers going on expeditions to the Greater Ranges, a term generally used for the Andes and the high peaks of Asia including the Himalayas, Karakoram, Hindu Kush, Pamir Mountains, Tien Shan and Kunlun Mountains. In the past this was often on exploratory trips or to make first ascents. With the advent of cheaper, long-haul air travel, mountaineering holidays in the Greater Ranges are now undertaken much more frequently and

ascents of even Everest and Vinson Massif (the highest mountain in Antarctica) are offered as a "package holiday". Other mountaineering areas of interest include the Southern Alps of New Zealand, the Coast Mountains of British Columbia, the Scottish Highlands, and the mountains of Scandinavia, especially Norway.

The term mountaineering describes, the sport of mountain climbing, including Mountaineering, Hiking in the mountains can also be a simple form of mountaineering when it involves scrambling, or short stretches of the more basic grades of rock climbing, as well as crossing glaciers. While mountaineering began as attempts to reach the highest point of unclimbed big mountains it has branched into specializations that address different aspects of the mountain and consists of three areas: rock-craft, snow-craft and skiing, depending on whether the route chosen is over rock, snow or ice. All require experience, athletic ability, and technical knowledge to maintain safety.

Mountaineering is often called Alpinism, especially in European languages, which implies climbing with difficulty such high mountains as the Alps. A mountaineer with such great skill is called an Alpinist. The word alpinism was born in the 19th century to refer to climbing for the purpose of enjoying climbing itself as a sport or recreation, distinct from merely climbing while hunting or as a religious pilgrimage that had been done generally at that time.

5.4 STYLES OF MOUNTAINEERING

There are two main styles of mountaineering:

- i) Expedition style
- ii) Alpine style.

A mountaineer who adopts Alpine style is referred to as an Alpine Mountaineer. Alpine Mountaineers are typically found climbing in medium-sized glaciated mountain areas such as the Alps or Rocky Mountains. Medium-sized generally refers to altitudes in the intermediate altitude (7,000' to 12,000') and first half of high

altitude (12,000' to 18,000') ranges. However, alpine style ascents have been done throughout history on extreme altitude (18,000' to 29,000') peaks also, albeit in lower volume to expedition style ascents. Alpine style refers to a particular style of mountain climbing that involves a mixture of snow climbing, ice climbing, rock climbing, and glacier travel, where climbers generally single carry their loads between camps, in a single push for the summit. Light and fast is the mantra of the Alpine Mountaineer.

The term alpine style contrasts with expedition style (as commonly undertaken in the Himalayan region or other large ranges of the world), which could be viewed as slow and heavy, where climbers may use porters, pack animals, glacier airplanes, cooks, multiple carries between camps, usage of fixed lines etc. A mountaineer who adopts this style of climbing is referred to as an Expedition Mountaineer. Expedition mountaineers still employ the skill sets of the alpine mountaineer, except they have to deal with even higher altitudes, expanded time scale, longer routes, foreign logistics, more severe weather, and additional skills unique to expeditionary climbing. The prevalence of expedition style climbing in the Himalaya is largely a function of the nature of the mountains in the region. Because Himalayan base camps can take days or weeks to trek to, and Himalayan mountains can take weeks or perhaps even months to climb, a large number of personnel and amount of supplies are necessary. This is why expedition style climbing is frequently used on large and isolated peaks in the Himalaya. In Europe and North America there is less of a need for expedition style climbing on most medium-sized mountains. These mountains can often be easily accessed by car or air, are at a lower altitude and can be climbed in a shorter time scale. Expedition style mountaineering can be found in the larger high altitude and extreme altitude North American ranges such as the Alaska Range and Saint Elias Mountains. These remote mountaineering destinations can require up to a 2 week trek by foot, just to make it to base camp. Most expeditions in these regions choose a glacier flight to basecamp. Route length

in days from basecamp can vary in these regions, typically from 10 days to 1 month during the climbing season. Winter mountaineering on major peaks in these ranges can generally consume between 30 to 60 days depending on the route, and can generally only be tackled via expedition style mountaineering during this season. The differences between, and advantages and disadvantages of, the two kinds of climbing are as follows:

Expedition style:

- uses multiple trips between camps to carry supplies up to higher camps
- group sizes are often larger than alpine style climbs because more supplies are carried between camps
- fixed lines are often used to minimize the danger involved in continually moving between camps
- supplemental oxygen is frequently used
- higher margin of safety in relation to equipment, food, time, and ability to wait out storms at high camps
- avoidance of being trapped in storms at high altitudes and being forced to descend in treacherous avalanche conditions
- possible higher exposure to objective hazards such as avalanches or rockfall, due to slower travel times between camps
- higher capital expenditures
- longer time scale

Alpine style:

- climbers only climb the route once because they do not continually climb up and down between camps with supplies
- fewer supplies are used on the climb therefore fewer personnel are needed
- alpine style ascents do not leave the climber exposed to objective hazards as long as an expedition style climb does; however, because of the speed of the

ascent relative to an expedition style climb there is less time for acclimatization

- supplemental oxygen is not used
- danger of being trapped at high altitude due to storms, potentially being exposed to HAPE or HACE
- lower capital expenditures
- shorter time scale

5.5 MOUNTAINEERING IN UTTARAKHAND

Oscar Eckenstein, a pioneer of modern climbing techniques and mountaineering equipment. In 1902, the Eckenstein-Crowley Expedition, led by English mountaineer Oscar Eckenstein and author and occultist Aleister Crowley, was the first to attempt to scale Chogo Ri (now known as K2 in the west). They reached 22,000 feet (6,700 m) before turning back due to weather and other mishaps. Undaunted, in 1905 Aleister Crowley led the first expedition to Kangchenjunga, the third highest mountain in the world. Four members of the party were killed in an avalanche and they failed to reach the summit.

Eckenstein was also a pioneer in developing new equipment and climbing methods. He started using shorter ice axes which could be used single handed, designed the modern crampons and improved on the nail patterns used for the climbing boots. By the 1950s, all the eight-thousanders but two had been climbed starting with Annapurna in 1950 by Maurice Herzog and Louis Lachenal. The last great peak was the highest of them all, Mount Everest. The British had made several attempts in the 1920s; the 1922 expedition reached 8,320 metres (27,300 ft) before being aborted on the third summit attempt after an avalanche killed seven porters. The 1924 expedition saw another height record achieved but still failed to reach the summit with confirmation when George Mallory and Andrew Irvine disappeared

on the final attempt. The summit was finally reached on May 29, 1953 by Sir Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay from the south side in Nepal.

Just a few months later, Hermann Buhl made the first ascent of Nanga Parbat (8,125 m), a siege-style expedition culminating in a last 1,300 meters walking alone, being under the influence of drugs: pervitin (based on the stimulant methamphetamine used by soldiers during World War II), padutin and tea from coca leaves. K2 (8,611 m), the second-highest peak in the world, was first scaled in 1954 by Lino Lacedelli and Achille Compagnoni. In 1964, the final eight-thousander to be climbed was Shishapangma (8,013 m), the lowest of all the 8,000 metre peaks.

The Himalayan ranges of Uttarakhand are just the perfect ones to go for a mountaineering expedition. Since Himalayas offer several ranges for the purpose of mountaineering, the mountaineer can take their pick depending on their choice. Almost all sorts of mountaineering expeditions ranging from simpler to the difficult ones are offered by the Himalayan ranges. You can accomplish mountaineering outings ranging from an altitude of 3000 metres to 7000 metres out here in Uttarakhand.

All those who thought that the mountains are an unattainable part, come to Uttarakhand and indulge in some mountain sports. The exhilaration of mountaineering in Uttarakhand is so platonic that it is considered to be once in a lifetime experience. The snow fed regions of Garhwal and Kumaon, which are located at a very high altitude, are the hosts of this sport. The tours in Uttarakhand comprise of various routes and trails. If you are planning to begin with Garhwal, then the Panch Kedar is the main route. Here you will be greeted with glimpse of the hospitality of local people and the rich flora and fauna. Other routes in this area include Kedarnath - Vasuki and Pithoragarh. The following may be the mountaineering destination in Uttarakhand:

S. NO.	Peaks and Height in meters	Longitude	Altitude
1.	Panwali Dwar (6663)	79 57'	30 17'
2.	Nanda Devi East(7437)	79 59'	30 21'
3.	Nanda Khat (6545)	79 58'	30 18'
4.	Mrigthuni (6855)	79 49'	30 17'
5.	Maiktoli (6803)	79 52'	30 16'
6.	Trishul-I (7120)	76 46'	30 18'
7.	Trishul-II (6690)	79 46'	30 17'
8.	Trishul-III (6008)	79 48'	30 17'
9.	Tharkot (6099)	79 49'	30 13'
10.	Nanda Ghunti (6390)	79 43'	30 20'
11.	Ronti (6063)	79 43'	30 22'
12.	Bhanoti (5645)	79 50'	30 12'
13.	Baljuri (5922)	79 57'	30 15'
14.	Nanda Kot (6861)	80 04'	30 16'
15.	Lepsa Dhura(5913)	80 04'	30 14'
16.	Unnamed Peak	77 16'	32 32'
17.	Bara Sukha	78 36'	31 04'
18.	Rudugaira (5819)	78 52'	30 56'
19.	Swargtrohini-I (6252)	78 30'	31 06'
20.	Swargtrohini-II (6278)	78 30'	31 06'
21.	Banderpunchi (6320)	78 33'	31 00'
22.	Sriknath (6133)	78 48'	30 57'
23.	Gangotri-I(6672)	78 50'	30 55'

24.	Gangotri-II (6590)	78 51'	30 54'
25.	Gangotri-III (6577)	78 52'	30 48'
26.	Joanali (6632)	78 51'	30 52'
27.	Jogin-I (6465)	78 55'	30 52'
28.	Jogin-II (6342)	78 55'	30 53'
29.	Jogin-III (6166)	78 56'	30 52'
30.	Thalaysagar (6904)	78 59'	30 51'
31.	Manda (6568)	79 00'	29 55'
32.	Meru North (6450)	79 02'	29 52'
33.	Meru East (6261)	79 02'	29 52'
34.	Kirti Stambh (6270)	79 01'	30 49'
35.	Bhatekhunta (6578)	79 02'	30 48'
36.	Kedarnath (6962)	79 04'	30 47'
37.	Kedardome (6830)	79 04'	30 48'
38.	Karcha Kund (6632)	79 07'	30 46'
39.	Shivling (6543)	79 04'	30 52'
40.	Bhagirathi-I (6856)	79 09'	30 51'
41.	Bhagirathi-II (6512)	79 09	30 51'
42.	Bhagirathi-III (6454)	79 08'	30 52'
43.	Vasuki Parbat (6792)	79 10'	30 52'
44.	Satopanth(7075)	79 13'	30 50'
45.	Sudarshan Parbat (6507)	79 05'	30 58'
46.	Changabang (6866)	79 55'	30 29'
47.	Nilkantha (6597)	79 24'	30 43'

48.	Chaukhamba-I (7886)	79 15'	30 43'
49.	Chaukhamba-II (7070)	79 15'	30 43'
50.	Chaukhamba-III(6995)	79 15'	30 43'
51.	Chaukhamba-IV (6854)	79 15'	30 43'
52.	Changuch (6322)	80 02'	30 17'

The hilly terrain of Uttarakhand provides plenty of opportunities for mountaineering, trekking and rock climbing. The easternmost hill district Pithoragarh, bordering Nepal and Tibet, often dubbed as 'Miniature Kashmir', is abundant in natural beauty, making it the perfect base for many an exciting trek. Several interesting treks interlace the Gori Valley with some of the well-traversed trekking routes running along the Munsiyari - Martoli - Milam - Ralam Glacier. These treks are not just walks of adventure, but are also an interesting way to interact and understand the social and cultural life of the people in the Chaudans, Byans and Darma Valleys. The Bageshwar - Sunderdhunga - Pindari - Kafni Glacier trek is another highly preferred trekking route in the area. The Garhwal region also offers several thrilling treks, some of them being the Panch Kedar trek, Kedarnath - Vasuki Tal trek, Gangotri - Kedarnath trek and the Gangotri - Gaumukh - Nandanvan - Tapovan trek. The Panch Kedar trek passes through the five Kedars represented by Kedarnath, Madmaheshwar, Tungnath, Kalpeshwar and Rudranath. The fascinating routes are profusely intermingled with the widest range of flora and fauna. The Valley of Flowers and Hemkund trek start from Govindghat and lead to Badrinath. Other treks like the Kalindikhal trek, the Khatling - Sahasratal - Masartal trek, Har Ki Dun trek, Rishikesh - Pauri - Binsar trek and Roopkund trek are equally invigorating for both the eager amateur and the veteran mountaineer.

Check your Progress-1

1. Who made mountaineering faishnable?

Ans.....

2. Name the tallest peak in Canada.

Ans.....

3. Who explored first the Karakoram Himalaya?

Ans.....

5.6 ROCK CLIMBING

Rock climbing is an activity in which participants climb up, down or across natural rock formations or artificial rock walls. The goal is to reach the summit of a formation or the endpoint of a usually pre-defined route without falling. To successfully complete a climb, one must return to the base of the route safely. Due to the length and extended endurance required, accidents are more likely to happen on descent than ascent; especially on the larger multiple pitches (class III- IV and /or multi-day grades IV-VI climbs).

Rock climbing competitions have the objectives of either completing the route in the quickest possible time or attaining the farthest point on an increasingly difficult route. Scrambling, another activity involving the scaling of hills and similar formations, is similar to rock climbing. However, rock climbing is generally differentiated by its sustained use of hands to support the climber's weight as well as to provide balance.

Rock climbing is a physically and mentally demanding sport, one that often tests a climber's strength, endurance, agility and balance along with mental control. It can be a dangerous activity and knowledge of proper climbing techniques and usage of specialised climbing equipment is crucial for the safe completion of routes. Because of the wide range and variety of rock formations around the world, rock climbing has been separated into several different styles and sub-disciplines.

5.7 TYPES OF CLIMBING

Most of the climbing done in modern times is considered free climbing—climbing using one's own physical strength, with equipment used solely as protection and not as support—as opposed to aid climbing, the gear-dependent form of climbing that was dominant in the sport's earlier days. Free climbing is typically divided into several styles that differ from one another depending on the choice of equipment used and the configurations of their belay, rope and anchor systems.

As routes get higher off the ground, the increased risk of life-threatening injuries necessitates additional safety measures. A variety of specialized climbing techniques and climbing equipment exists to provide that safety. Climbers will usually work in pairs and utilize a system of ropes and anchors designed to catch falls. Ropes and anchors can be configured in different ways to suit many styles of climbing, and roped climbing is thus divided into further sub-types that vary based on how their belay systems are set up. Generally speaking, beginners will start with top roping and/or easy bouldering and work their way up to lead climbing and beyond.

Rock climbing is not very different from mountaineering, except that instead of snow there are rocks involved in this adventure sport. The rocky cliffs of Uttarakhand challenge all the climbers to indulge in this risky sport. The multitudinous variation in Uttarakhand topography makes this sport the fantasy of every climber. Gangotri in Uttarakhand is the main areas where tourists can indulge in this game. Enjoy this adventure during the months of February and June, which is the best Time for mountain sports. Monsoons should be avoided, as then the rocks become slippery. The Uttarakhand Tourism Board assist the tourists with this sport.

Garhwal is a destination for family adventure as well as for adventure lovers who want to go all out for fun and exhilaration. It is situated at a high altitude in Uttarakhand and is surrounded by snow-capped mountains and beautiful valleys. For mountaineers, Garhwal has everything in it. In Garhwal, enormous peaks like

Trishul, Kamet, Nanda Devi rise grandly, divided by some of the mightiest rivers of the northern India. The quaint beauty of Kumaon located in Uttarakhand attracts many tourists every year. Kumaon is a blend of cultural heritage and irresistible beauty of mountains and forests, which make it a perfect destination for Rock climbing. It is becoming popular in India now and many mountaineering clubs in the country are imparting training to the novice. Since it is a part of any expedition, the mountain climbing enthusiasts have to learn and practice this game before one can think of joining the expedition. Rock climbing is a test of strength, concentration and coordination as well as skill and technique. A climber learns from experience that the mountain must not be taken for granted. It can be rough and antagonistic to those who venture to come to grips with it. Nevertheless, as a sport, climbing continues to offer a thrill and challenge that is compulsive.

- **Rock Climbing in Garhwal, Uttarakhand:** In Uttranchal Gangotri in the Garhwal Himalayas too sees excellent high altitude rock climbing but one should always try out the rocking expedition in the summer and autumn months. Rock climbing courses in Uttarakhand are conducted at George Everest House in Mussoorie, Buranskhanda near Dhanaulti, Phoolchatti near Rishikesh. GMVN provides NIM trained instructors, complete climbing equipment with transport, TRH / camping, catering and first aid.

- **Bottom rope climbing:** Commonly known as "Top Roping": belaying a climber from the ground or the base of the route. A belay system resembling a pulley in which an anchor has been created at the top of a climb, through which the rope runs through from the belayer on the ground, to the climber on the ground (position before starting the climb). The rope is "taken-in", to clear up the slack as the climber moves upwards, so in the event of a fall the climber falls the shortest distance possible. The length of a fall is normally no more than a meter, but can vary depending on the length of the route (the longer the rope, the more stretch the rope

will undergo when weighted) and the weight of the climber compared to that of the belayer, among other things.

- **Top rope climbing:** Also known as "seconding," or belaying a climber from the top of a route, bringing them up to walk off or continue on to next pitch. A similarly safe system of climbing a route, except the belayer has set the anchors at the top of the climb (normally after leading a route) to belay the climber either indirectly (belayer is part of the system and can be vulnerable when exposed to unexpected directions of pull and loading of the rope) or directly (belayer is not part of the system and belaying is done direct from the anchors using either an Italian / Munter Hitch or adapted use of a belay device), up the route from the top. If bolts have been clipped or traditional gear placements have been made, it is the job of the climber to collect and clean the route.
- **Aid climbing:** Still the most popular method of climbing big walls, aid climbers make progress up a wall by repeatedly placing and weighting gear that is used directly to aid ascent and enhance safety.
- **Free climbing:** The most commonly used method to ascend climbs refers to climbs where the climber's own physical strength and skill are relied on to accomplish the climb. Free climbing may rely on top rope belay systems, or on lead climbing to establish protection and the belay stations. Anchors, ropes and protection are used to back up the climber and are passive as opposed to active ascending aids. Subtypes of free climbing are trad climbing and sport climbing. Free climbing is generally done as "clean lead" meaning no pitons or pins are used as protection.

- **Bouldering:** Climbing on short, low routes without the use of the safety rope that is typical of most other styles. Protection, if used at all, typically consists of a cushioned bouldering pad below the route and a spotter, a person who watches from below and directs the fall of the climber away from hazardous areas. Bouldering may be an arena for intense and relatively safe competition, resulting in exceptionally high difficulty standards.
- **Deep-water soloing:** Similar to free soloing in that the climber is unprotected and without a rope, but different in that if the climber falls, it is into deep water instead of on to the ground.
- **Free soloing:** Free soloing is single-person climbing without the use of any rope or protection system whatsoever. If a fall occurs and the climber is not over water (as in the case of deep water soloing), the climber is likely to be killed or seriously injured. Though technically similar to bouldering, free solo climbing typically refers to routes that are far taller and/or far more lethal than bouldering. The term "highball" is used to refer to climbing on the boundary between free soloing and bouldering, where what is usually climbed as a boulder problem may be high enough for a fall to cause serious injury (20 ft. and higher) and hence could also be considered to be a free solo.
- **Roped solo climbing:** Solo climbing with a rope secured at the beginning of the climb allowing a climber to self-belay as they advance. Once the pitch is completed the soloist must descend the rope to retrieve their gear, and then reascend the pitch. This form of climbing can be conducted free or as a form of aid climbing.

- **Lead climbing:** Leader belays the second on Illusion Dweller in Joshua Tree National Park, United States. Lead climbing is a climbing technique. The lead climber ascends with the rope passing through intermittent anchors that are below them, rather than through a top anchor, as in a top-roped climb. A partner belays from below the lead climber, by feeding out enough rope to allow upward progression without undue slack. As the leader progresses he or she clips the rope into, using a runner and carabineers, intermediate points of protection such as active cams, or passive protection such as nuts; this limits the length of a potential fall. The leader also may clip into pre-placed bolts. Indoor gyms might have short runners pre-attached to fixed anchor points in the wall.
- Unlike top-rope climbing where the climber is always supported by an anchor located above the climber, lead climbing often has scenarios where the climber will be attached to a point under him or her. In these cases, if the climber were to fall, the distance fallen would be much greater than that of top-rope and this is one of the main reasons lead climbing can be dangerous. The fall factor is the ratio of the height a climber falls and the length of rope available to absorb the fall. The higher the fall factor, the more force placed on the climber as the ropes decelerates them. The maximum fall factor is 2. It is often advised that climbers who are interested in lead climbing should learn from experienced climbers and participate in training sessions before actually lead climbing on their own.
- **Multi-pitch climbing:** The climbing rope is of a fixed length; the climber can only climb the length of the rope. Routes longer than the rope length are broken up into several segments called pitches; this is known as multi-pitch climbing. At the top of a pitch, the leader, the first climber to ascend, sets up an anchor and then belays the second climber up to the anchor; as the second climber follows the route taken by the leader, the second climber removes (cleans) the carabiners and anchors placed along the way in order to use them again on the next pitch. Once both climbers are at the top anchor, the leader begins climbing the next pitch and so on until the top

of the route is reached. In either case, upon completion of a route, climbers can walk back down if an alternate descent path exists, or rappel (abseil) down with the rope.

- **Sport climbing:** Unlike traditional rock climbing, sport climbing involves the use of protection (bolts) or permanent anchors which are attached to the rock walls.
- **Traditional climbing:** Traditional or trad climbing involves rock climbing routes in which protection against falls is placed by the climber while ascending. Gear is used to protect against falls but not to aid the ascent directly.
- **Ice climbing:** Multiple methods are used to travel safely over ice. If the terrain is steep but not vertical, then the lead climber can place ice screws in the ice and attach the rope for protection. Each climber on the team must clip past the anchor, and the last climber picks up the anchor itself. Occasionally, slinged icicles or bollards are also used. This allows for safety should the entire team be taken off their feet. This technique is known as Simul-climbing and is sometimes also used on steep snow and easy rock. If the terrain becomes too steep, standard ice climbing techniques are used in which each climber is belayed, moving one at a time.

5.8 TYPES OF SHELTERS IN MOUNTAINEERING AND CLIMBING

Climbers use a few different forms of shelter depending on the situation and conditions. Shelter is a very important aspect of safety for the climber as the weather in the mountains may be very unpredictable. Tall mountains may require many days of camping on the mountain.

Base Camp: The "Base Camp" of a mountain is an area used for staging an attempt at the summit. Base camps are positioned to be safe from the harsher conditions above. There are base camps on many popular or dangerous mountains. Where the summit cannot be reached from base camp in a single day, a mountain will have additional camps above base camp. For example, the southeast ridge route on Mount Everest has Base Camp plus (normally) camps I through IV.

Hut: The European alpine regions, in particular, have a network of mountain huts (called "refuges" in France, "rifugi" in Italy, "cabanes" in Switzerland, "Hütten" in Germany and Austria, "Bothies" in Scotland, "koča" in Slovenia, "chaty" in Slovakia, "refugios" in Spain, "hytte" or "koie" in Norway, and "cabane" in Romanian). Such huts exist at many different heights, including in the high mountains themselves – in extremely remote areas, more rudimentary shelters may exist. The mountain huts are of varying size and quality, but each is typically centred on a communal dining room and have dormitories equipped with mattresses, blankets or duvets, and pillows; guests are expected to bring and to use their own sleeping bag liner. The facilities are usually rudimentary but, given their locations, huts offer vital shelter, make routes more widely accessible (by allowing journeys to be broken and reducing the weight of equipment needing to be carried), and offer good value. In Europe, all huts are staffed during the summer (mid-June to mid-September) and some are staffed in the spring (mid-March to mid-May). Elsewhere, huts may also be open in the fall. Huts also may have a part that is always open, but unmanned, a so-called winter hut. When open and manned, the huts are generally run by full-time employees, but some are staffed on a voluntary basis by members of Alpine clubs (such as Swiss Alpine Club and Club alpin français) or in North America by Alpine Club of Canada. The manager of the hut, termed a guardian or warden in Europe, will usually also sell refreshments and meals; both to those visiting only for the day and to those staying overnight. The offering is surprisingly wide; given that most supplies, often including fresh water, must be flown in by helicopter, and may include glucose-based snacks (such as Mars and Snickers bars) on which climbers and walkers wish to stock up, cakes and pastries made at the hut, a variety of hot and cold drinks (including beer and wine), and high carbohydrate dinners in the evenings. Not all huts offer a catered service, though, and visitors may need to provide for themselves. Some huts offer facilities for both, enabling visitors wishing to keep costs down to bring their own food and cooking equipment and to

cater using the facilities provided. Booking for overnight stays at huts is deemed obligatory, and in many cases is essential as some popular huts; even with more than 100 bed spaces may be full during good weather and at weekends. Once made, the cancellation of a reservation is advised as a matter of courtesy – and, indeed, potentially of safety, as many huts keep a record of where climbers and walkers state they planned to walk to next. Most huts may be contacted by telephone and most take credit cards as a means of payment. In the UK the term Hut is used for any cottage or cabin used as a base for walkers or climbers and these are mostly owned by mountaineering clubs for use by members or visiting clubs and generally do not have wardens or permanent staff, but have cooking and washing facilities and heating. In the Scottish Highlands small simple unmanned shelters without cooking facilities known as Bothies are maintained to break up cross country long routes and act as base camps to certain mountains.

Bivouac: In the mountaineering context, a bivouac or "biv(v)y" is a makeshift resting or sleeping arrangement in which the climber has less than the full complement of shelter, food and equipment that would normally be present at a conventional campsite. This may involve simply getting a sleeping bag and Bivouac sack/bivvy bag and lying down to sleep. Typically bivvy bags are made from breathable waterproof membranes, which move moisture away from the climber into the outside environment while preventing outside moisture from entering the bag. Many times small partially sheltered areas such as aberschrund, cracks in rocks or a trench dug in the snow are used to provide additional shelter from wind. These techniques were originally used only in emergency; however some climbers steadfastly committed to alpine style climbing specifically plan for bivouacs in order to save the weight of a tent when suitable snow conditions or time is unavailable for construction of a snow cave. The principal hazard associated with bivouacs is the greater level of exposure to cold and other elements present in harsh conditions high on the mountain.

Tent: Tents are the most common form of shelter used on the mountain. These may vary from simple tarps to much heavier designs intended to withstand harsh mountain conditions. In exposed positions, windbreaks of snow or rock may be required to shelter the tent. One of the downsides to tenting is that high winds and snow loads can be dangerous and may ultimately lead to the tent's failure and collapse. In addition, the constant flapping of the tent fabric can hinder sleep and raise doubts about the security of the shelter. When choosing a tent, alpinists tend to rely on specialised mountaineering tents that are specifically designed for high winds and moderate to heavy snow loads. Tent stakes can be buried in the snow ("deadman") for extra security.

Snow cave: Where conditions permit snow caves are another way to shelter high on the mountain. Some climbers do not use tents at high altitudes unless the snow conditions do not allow for snow caving, since snow caves are silent and much warmer than tents. They can be built relatively easily, given sufficient time, using a snow shovel. A correctly made snow cave will hover around freezing, which relative to outside temperatures can be very warm. They can be dug anywhere where there is at least four feet of snow. The addition of a good quality bivvy bag and closed cell foam sleeping mat will also increase the warmth of the snow cave. Another shelter that works well is a quinzee, which is excavated from a pile of snow that has been work hardened or sintered (typically by stomping). Igloos are used by some climbers, but are deceptively difficult to build and require specific snow conditions.

Check your Progress - 2

4. Who made the first ascent to Nanga Parvat?

Ans.....

5. What is NIM?

Ans.....

7. Who is pioneer of modern climbing technique?

Ans.....

5.9 DANGERS IN MOUNTAINEERING AND CLIMBING

Mountaineering is considered to be one of the most dangerous activities in the world. Loss of life is not uncommon on most major extreme altitude mountaineering destinations every year. Dangers in mountaineering are sometimes divided into two categories: objective hazards that exist without regard to the climber's presence, like rockfall, avalanches and inclement weather, and subjective hazards that relate only to factors introduced by the climber. Equipment failure and falls due to inattention, fatigue or inadequate technique are examples of subjective hazards. A route continually swept by avalanches and storms is said to have a high level of objective danger, whereas a technically far more difficult route that is relatively safe from these dangers may be regarded as objectively safer. In all, mountaineers must concern themselves with dangers: falling rocks, falling ice, snow-avalanches, the climber falling, falls from ice slopes, falls down snow slopes, falls into crevasses and the dangers from altitude and weather. To select and follow a route using one's skills and experience to mitigate these dangers is to exercise the climber's craft.

- **Falling rocks:** Every rock mountain is slowly disintegrating due to erosion, the process being especially rapid above the snow-line. Rock faces are constantly swept by falling stones, which may be possible to dodge. Falling rocks tend to form furrows in a mountain face, and these furrows (couloirs) have to be ascended with caution, their sides often being safe when the middle is stoneswept. Rocks fall more frequently on some days than on others, according to the recent weather. Ice formed during the night may temporarily bind rocks to the face but warmth of the day or lubricating water from melting snow or rain may easily dislodge these rocks. Local experience is a valuable help on determining typical rock fall on such routes.

The direction of the dip of rock strata sometimes determines the degree of danger on a particular face; the character of the rock must also be considered. Where stones fall frequently debris will be found below, whilst on snow slopes falling stones cut furrows visible from a great distance. In planning an ascent of a new peak or an unfamiliar route, mountaineers must look for such traces. When falling stones get mixed in considerable quantity with slushy snow or water a mud avalanche is formed (common in the Himalayas). It is vital to avoid camping in their possible line of fall.

- **Falling ice:** The places where ice may fall can always be determined beforehand. It falls in the broken parts of glaciers (seracs) and from overhanging cornices formed on the crests of narrow ridges. Large icicles are often formed on steep rock faces, and these fall frequently in fine weather following cold and stormy days. They have to be avoided like falling stones. Seracs are slow in formation, and slow in arriving (by glacier motion) at a condition of unstable equilibrium. They generally fall in or just after the hottest part of the day. A skillful and experienced ice-man will usually devise a safe route through a most intricate ice-fall, but such places should be avoided in the afternoon of a hot day. Hanging glaciers (i.e. glaciers perched on steep slopes) often discharge themselves over steep rock-faces, the snout breaking off at

intervals. They can always be detected by their debris below. Their track should be avoided.

- **Falls from rocks:** A rock climber's skill is shown by their choice of handhold and foothold, and their adhesion to the holds once chosen. Much depends on the ability to estimate the capability of the rock to support the weight placed on it. Many loose rocks are quite firm enough to bear a person's weight, but experience is needed to know which can be trusted, and skill is required in transferring the weight to them without jerking. On rotten rocks the rope must be handled with special care, lest it should dislodge loose stones on to those below. Similar care must be given to handholds and footholds, for the same reason. When a horizontal traverse has to be made across very difficult rocks, a dangerous situation may arise unless at both ends of the traverse there are firm positions. Mutual assistance on hard rocks takes all manner of forms: two, or even three, people climbing on one another's shoulders, or using an ice axe propped up by others for a foothold. The great principle is that of co-operation, all the members of the party climbing with reference to the others, and not as independent units; each when moving must know what the climber in front and the one behind are doing. After bad weather steep rocks are often found covered with a veneer of ice (verglas), which may even render them inaccessible. Crampons are useful on such occasions.

- **Avalanches:** Every year, 120 to 150 people die in small avalanches in the Alps alone. The vast majority of Alpine victims are reasonably experienced male skiers aged 20–35 but also include ski instructors and guides. However a significant number of climbers are killed in Scottish avalanches often on descent and often triggered by the victims. There is always a lot of pressure to risk a snow crossing. Turning back takes a lot of extra time and effort, supreme leadership, and most importantly there is seldom an avalanche that proves the right decision was made. Making the decision to turn around is especially hard if others are crossing the slope, but any next person could become the trigger.

So, keep in your mind, Himalayan Exposure strongly recommends that before taking up mountaineering one has to engage in regular exercise for at least two months. It is recommended that all travelers carry a small first aid kit as well as any personal medical requirements. All climbers planning to join the trip should have a high level of fitness before undertaking the trip. You must be capable of using technical equipment like ropes, harness etc, otherwise you may not be able to take part in the tour until evidence of this has been presented to the group leader.

5.10 NIM

Nehru Institute of Mountaineering (NIM) is rated as one of the best mountaineering institutes in India and also considered as the most prestigious mountaineering institute in Asia. The proposal to have a mountaineering Institute at Uttarkashi was mooted by the Ministry of Defence, Government of India and the Government of Uttar Pradesh in 1964.

Uttarkashi was specially selected as the home of NIM, primarily because of its close proximity to the Gangotri region in western garhwal, which undoubtedly has the best climbing and training potential in India and perhaps in the world. Perched beautifully on the turtle back hill across the east bank of river Bhagirathi, the Institute overlooks the sacred town of Uttarkashi and the confluence of Indravati with the Bhagirathi. The Institute took shape in 1965 at the Provincial Armed Constabulary Campus at Gyansu on the north bank of the river Bhagirathi. The present location, about 5 Km away across the Bhagitrathi River, was selected in 1970 by a team comprising Late Shri Harish Sarin (then Secretary), Captain M.S.Kohli and the architect, Mr. Rahman and NIM moved to its new location in 1974. It is now located at 4300 AMSL in the Ladari Reserve Forest, amidst a dense pine forest, overlooking the sacred river and the valley of gods. It has a sprawling campus, spread over almost seven hectares of prime forest land. In 2001, Tekla Rocks an area of almost 3.5 hectares of Rock and boulders, area was added to the real estate of the

Institute. The campus is extremely well laid out and excellently maintained. It offers its trainees a wide number of services catering to their ideal physical and mental development. The sylvan surroundings of the Institute and the exquisite natural surrounding have made NIM the Sanctum Sanctorum of all mountain and nature lovers. In a historic development in November 2001, with the newly formed State of "Uttarakhand" (now Uttarakhand) coming into existence, the Chief Minister of Uttarakhand became the Vice President of the Institute.

The Institute was fortunate to receive patronage at the highest level at its inception from the Government of India and the government of Uttar Pradesh and now the Government of Uttarakhand. The found fathers in Shri Y. B. Chauhan, then the Hon'ble Defence Minister of India and founder President NIM and Smt Sucheta Kriplani then the Hon'ble Chief Minister of Uttar Pradesh and founder Vice President NIM, gave their unstinting support to the Institute.

Brigadier Gyan Singh the first Principal of NIM with his wide experience gave a very strong footing to the Institute and nurtured it through its formative years, Late Shri H C Sarin, who was secretary of NIM for 22 long years, ensured that the Institute had all the bureaucratic support and the where with all for a premier national Institute.

The Institute is headed by a Principal who is handpicked officer by the Ministry of Defence. It has Training and an Administrative wing. The Training Wing comprises of the Vice Principal, the Medical Officer, the intrepid NIM instructional and Kitchen staff. The Administrative Wing which deals with account, rations and equipment are looked after by the Registrar and the Equipment Officer, respectively.

For the past 40 years, with the aim to produce trained mountaineers and mountaineering enthusiasts, NIM has trained thousands of Indians and hundreds of foreigners. The proposal to set up such an institute was first declared by the Ministry of Defence in 1964.

NIM was established on November 14, 1965 at Uttarkashi to honour the desire of Jawaharlal Nehru, the first Prime Minister of India, who was passionate about mountains. Bachhendri Pal, the first Indian woman to climb Mt. Everest, was trained at this Institute. The core of the training covers a high degree of technical exposure and expertise, along with safety applications to instill the correct mountaineering ethos. Although it is one of India's youngest institutes, it has managed to get ahead of most others and has become a trusted anchor when it comes to mountaineering training.

5.11 SUMMARY

Mountaineering is becoming more and more popular amongst dare devils and extreme adventure aficionados, and this is because of what it involves. It is a blend of rock, ice and mixed climbing, and takes you to extreme places, often covered in snow and sweltering chilly temperatures. India tourism offers an imperative array of mountaineering opportunities in its mountain ranges of Ladakh that are full of stunning snow-clad summits and verdant green alpine valleys and flower-sprinkled pastures in the knolls of Himachal and Uttarakhand. Rock climbing is a physically and mentally demanding sport, one that often tests a climber's strength, endurance, agility and balance along with mental control and is a complementary sport of mountaineering. If we keep necessary precaution in both mountaineering and rock climbing, it thrills to the visitors. In our state it has great opportunities.

5.12 GLOSSARY

- **Patronage-** guardianship
- **Inception-** beginning
- **Quaint-** old fashioned
- **Amateur-** for pleasure's sake

5.13 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. Alfred Wills
2. Mt Logan
3. William Martin Conway
4. Hermann Buhl
5. Nehru Institute of Mountaineering
6. Oscar Eckenstien

5.14 REFERENCES

- "Nepal Mountaineering Association". web page. 2008. Retrieved 2 June 2011.
- The Mountaineers (September 8, 2010). Mountaineering: The Freedom of the Hills. 8th Ed. Mountaineers Books. ISBN 978-1-59485-137-7.
- britannica.com. Retrieved 2 November 2010
- Claire Eliane Engel (1950), A History of Mountaineering in the Alps, chapter VII.
- "Mountaineering". Encyclopedia Britannica.

5.15 TERMINAL AND MODEL QUESTIONS

Long Questions

1. Give the brief description of Mountaineering.
2. Through light on the famous destination of Mountaineering in Uttarakhand.
3. Write an essay on rock climbing.

Short Questions

1. Name the various styles of Mountaineering.
2. What is mountaineering?
3. What do you mean by Rock climbing?
4. Write short notes;
 - I) NIM
 - II) Alpine style
 - III) Famous rock climbing destination of Uttarakhand

Unit-6

Trekking - Trends and Opportunities

Structure:

- 6.1 Introduction
- 6.2 Objectives
- 6.3 Trekking
- 6.4 Styles of Trekking
- 6.5 Trekking in Garhwal
 - 6.5.1 Deharadun Mussorie Trek
 - 6.5.2 Dodi Tal Trek
 - 6.5.3 Gangotri Nanadavan Trek
 - 6.5.4 Tons Valley Trek
 - 6.5.5 Kauri Pass Trekking
 - 6.5.6 Nanda Devi Treks
 - 6.5.7 Har Ki Dun Trek
 - 6.5.8 about Chopta - Chandrashila Trek
 - 6.5.9 about Kedarkantha Trek
 - 6.5.10 Roopkund Trek
 - 6.5.11 Vasu Ki Tal
 - 6.5.12 Khatling Trek
 - 6.5.13 Rupin Pass
- 6.6 Trekking in Kumaun
 - 6.6.1 Pindari Glacier
 - 6.6.2 Sunderdhunga Valley
 - 6.6.3 Nanda Devi East BC and Milam Glacier Trek
 - 6.6.4 Ram Ganga-Namik Glacier
 - 6.6.5 Panchchuli base camp
 - 6.6.6 Ralam Dhura Pass
- 6.7 Summary
- 6.8 Glossary
- 6.9 Answer to Check your Progress
- 6.10 References
- 6.11 Terminal and Model Questions

6.1 INTRODUCTION

Bordered by Tibet in the north, Nepal in the east, Himachal Pradesh in the west and the Gangetic plains in the south, Uttarakhand, the land of spirituality seems to be a jewel on the crown of Indian Territory. Being the originating point of significant Indian rivers, Uttarakhand is the abode of some of the best hill stations in north India. While the winter season can offer you the best views of snow packed mountain ranges, the same ranges can be the comfort zones in the scorching summer.

From thrilling mountain climbing to relaxing leisure walk, each single activity is delightful and worthy to time spending. Hill stations are visited by honeymooners to spend romantic time together, corporate people to take a break, traveler to enjoy the beauty of nature, family to enjoy vacation and creative persons to enhance their creativity level with fresh ideas. An Uttarakhand Hill station is a compilation of several popular destinations of Uttarakhand which are popular with the masses and have frequented visitors. Don't search reasons for planning a holiday in the hill stations of Uttarakhand and simply pack your bags to take pleasure in the pristine scenery of the Himalayas.

Uttarakhand is a 'paradise' for nature lover's and adventure sports like river rafting, trekking, paragliding, Corbett jungle Jeep safari, enthusiasts. Mussoorie, the 'Queen of Hills'; Nainital, Almora, Ranikhet, Pithoragarh, Pauri and Munsiyari are just few highlights for the nature lovers. For adventure and excitement, one may choose Mountaineering (Bhagirathi, Chowkhamba, Nanda Devi Kamet, Pindari, Sahastratal, Milam, Kafni, Khatling, Gaumukh), Trekking, Skiing (Auli, Dayara Bugyal, Munsiyari, Mundali), Skating, Water Sports like rafting, boating and angling and Aero Sports like Hand Gliding, Paragliding (Pithoragarh, Jolly Grant, Pauri). Trekking adventure in the Uttarakhand's enchanting Himalayas have always been appealing the trekking lovers and adventure sports enthusiasts. Explore Valley of Flowers, Chopta and the beauty of Kumaon and Garhwal Himalayas.

6.2 OBJECTIVES

The unit aims to provide you:

- Details of trekking in Uttarakhand
- Make you aware of famous treks of state.
- To enrich your knowledge of trekking.

6.3 TREKKING

Trekking is combination of hiking and walking activity in which people take multi-days trips in rural, under developed area. In another words, Trekking is making a journey / trip on foot, especially to hike through mountainous areas often for multiple days and along lovely mountains villages and enjoying nature and/or close contact with people in remote mountain villages where lifestyle sometimes is unchanged since many generations. Trekking is also done in risky mountain areas so it will help to gain more adventurous build up capacity to the trekkers'. Trekker will get knowledge that is more adventurous with the real life scenario in mountain areas or in remote area. To be a trekker they must have to there things that are Budget, Holiday, willing to do adventure. Trekking will not done free by the Trekking company so that they most pay the expenses during their trekking trip and They must have a holiday for such trip and last one is trekker must be capable to do a trek and he/she have to willing do adventure work. If people have all these attributes, they can easily do trek with contacting in our company, we will help to you people giving quality services according to clients desire. There are two Types of Trek

1. Camping Trek
2. Tea House Trek

1. Camping Trek: Camping trek is little sophisticated trek than trek house trek because in Camping trek, Trekking organizer or we will carry the all things required for trek from Kathmandu or that places where all the necessary items are available. All things (all food items and Tent for sleep) will be always with the

trekker during trek trips. Trekking will sleep in the tents and their staff (if any). Their staff will prepare meals as per in the menu provided in advance.

2. Tea House Trek: Tea hose trek means doing trek by eating and sleeping at Tea/ guesthouse where the Teahouse are available for sleep and already setup by the villager for providing the service to the clients. Every day trekker will get the tea house to eat and sleep. In comparison to camping trek, teahouse trek is little cheep. But both trek are done in the same place only different is that camping trekker's get own prepare food by own office cook where as teahouse trekker's will get to eat food which prepared by tea house's staff.

Trekking can be done anywhere in the world. Certain areas are particularly popular with trekkers, including mountainous regions such as the Himalayas in Asia and the Andes in South America. Treks also have been organized in other less-visited areas on almost every continent. Trekking destinations high altitude will be depends on the trekking destination chosen by clients.

6.4 STYLES OF TREKKING

There are three main 'styles' of trekking, each of which has pros and cons, but your choice will depend on your destination, budget, time available and personal preferences. There is no better or worse style, in fact you might find yourself combining styles in some destinations to provide a broader experience.

1. Independent trekking without a guide: For many, the idea of finding one's own way and living off the land is what trekking is all about. To be completely free to plan your day, to have all your gear on your back, and to interact one-on-one with locals is a liberating experience.

Due to the nature of independent trekking it is normally a good idea to trek with a friend or in a small group of up to four for safety – larger groups tend to find it difficult to find accommodation.

Being an independent trekker doesn't mean to say that you cannot have a porter or a porter/guide. The introduction of the TIMS (Trekking Information Management System) has made this option a little more complicated, but it is still possible to employ a local for almost any period of time, which can make tricky navigation and strenuous sections considerably easier.

Most independent trekkers prefer to trek the main routes of the Annapurna, Everest, Langtang, Makalu, Manaslu, Mustang, Rolwaling and Tamang Heritage Trail areas as they offer teahouse accommodation and a standardised menu.

- Trails in these areas are well marked and some of the local people speak enough of a range of languages that the individual trekker can get along with the most basic Nepali. Even though you may walk on your own, or with a local porter, it is in fact very rare that you will find yourself without company, especially in the evenings when you sit in the teahouse communal dining room.
- The main trails are normally busy with local traffic so if you carry a pocket guide and map it is unlikely that you'll take a serious wrong turn, although getting a little lost is almost inevitable. Independent trekking is also the cheapest way to explore the mountains so it is popular with budget-conscious travellers.
- There are a few drawbacks to independent trekking: coping with altitude and health problems on your own, logistical challenges, communication issues and safety concerns. None of these is insurmountable but they do need to be taken seriously both before and during your trek.
- Altitude and health problems are best monitored and dealt with as part of a 'buddy system' – that is, you and your trekking companion look after each other (for more details, see *Altitude Sickness*, pp67-8).
- There are also some potential logistical issues in high season: the most common is that many teahouses are booked in advance by organised trekking groups and

you may find getting a room, or even floor space to sleep on, difficult and/or expensive.

- If this is going to be your first visit to the Himalaya the independent option probably isn't the best style to kick off your adventures, unless you are the ultimate intrepid traveller and you stay on the main trails.
- Independent trekking in remote wilderness areas is only suited to trekkers who have already learnt how their body deals with altitude, developed some familiarity with Nepali and the various customs of mountain communities, and have a good knowledge of Himalayan terrain and navigation.

2. Teahouse trekking with a guide: Recent years have seen a dramatic increase in both the number and the standard of facilities in villages on the main trails. For example, Namche in the Everest Region now boasts 24-hour electricity, a laundrette, multiple internet cafés, bakeries, and all the trappings of Thamel (the tourist district in Kathmandu) but at 3500m. It is no surprise therefore that teahouse trekking with a guide has become incredibly popular.

The convenience of teahouse trekking in the Everest, Annapurna and Langtang areas is a major drawcard for tens of thousands of trekkers every year. The subsequent level of investment by local communities in these regions is extraordinary compared to the level of poverty elsewhere in the Himalaya.

Large teahouses with comfortable communal dining rooms, private bedrooms (some with en suite bathrooms) with mattresses and bedding, extensive menus or specialty restaurants and bakeries can make your trek a very comfortable experience. Commercial trekking companies from all over the world sell organised walking holidays using these teahouses and a local guide agency, and they're flexible enough to suit almost any fitness and experience level.

The role of a guide can encompass a great many activities. Apart from being the person who escorts you along the trail, they can often explain customs, culture, history, flora and fauna.

A guide may also manage any porters (should you only want to carry a small pack), ensure your accommodation is booked, transport is confirmed, and that the food is well prepared; in fact your guide will probably become your personal assistant, man-Friday, guardian, and best friend.

For this reason most good guides are normally snapped up by the bigger agencies and accompany groups booked by overseas trekking companies.

There are no major drawbacks to this style of trekking. However, there are a few issues that people regularly complain about. One is that teahouses that accept larger groups can be very noisy at night; for most people it's tougher to sleep at altitude, so anything that disrupts sleep is irritating.

Another involves the decisions that your guide makes without consultation, like where to stay, or route options. Make sure you have a clear understanding of who makes which decisions. Small groups trekking with a guide may find it difficult to secure rooms or even meals in some teahouses that devote themselves to larger, more profitable parties.

If you are a woman trekking alone with a guide be aware that even simple acts can be misconstrued as a proposition. Booking a trek through an overseas operator means you don't get to have any choice of guide, but you do have the reassurance that they are probably going to be excellent and if not, you have recourse to complain.

- The size of group you will be trekking with becomes important when you choose a 'packaged trek'. Some companies are still in the habit of sending over twenty trekkers into the hills with a single guide and a few porters, which is irresponsible and doesn't make for a good holiday.
- The safety and security of local knowledge should not be underestimated, nor should the ability to communicate to your heart's content through your guide's interpreting. Finally, the chance to build a friendship with someone is perhaps the most remembered feature of any trekking holiday.

- A group size of twelve to fourteen is normally considered a manageable maximum and you'll still get the opportunity to chat with your guide and spend time with any crew that they might hire.
- One main advantage of hiring your own guide and teahouse trekking is that you can control your costs and stay within a budget that would be considerably less than booking with a big travel company.
- The logistical convenience of having someone with local knowledge handling routine details such as where to stay, negotiating prices, and giving route directions is a great peace of mind.

3. Trekking with a camping crew: The most flexible, comfortable and hygienic way to explore the Himalaya is on a camping trek. To have unrestricted access to trails, viewpoints, and passes you need to be self-sufficient, with the support of a team of experienced staff. For many trekkers their first trip to Nepal will be teahouse based, but the lure of what lies beyond the main trails is so strong they return for a camping trek, often to the more remote areas. Trekking in Nepal was initially exclusively camping based so there is a substantial experience pool that means even the first-time camper will be comfortable and well looked after.

Each morning you will be woken with a mug of tea delivered by a smiling sherpa (as opposed to Sherpas, the famous ethnic group from the Everest Region, see box p135), followed by a bowl of water to wash your face. Breakfast is preferably served al fresco in the morning sun as your crew packs up the camp.

At some point along the day's trail your cook will have prepared a lunch for you at a scenic spot before you complete your journey to the next campsite and an extensive dinner menu. Shower, toilet and dining tents with tables and chairs complete your campsite and comfort comes courtesy of a foam mattress and pillow (usually an optional extra. Nearly all remote or exploratory treks will be camping based as a group needs to have Sherpa and crew available to help cross passes and break trail. The roles of various crew members is normally well defined: the guide

(or sirdar) is in charge; the sherpas look after clients on the trail, serve meals and make/break camp; the cook and kitchen staff prepare meals and wash dishes for the group, while the porters carry everything.

Normally, a guide discourages trekkers from becoming too friendly with the crew as companies are paranoid they might lose your future business to prospecting staff. With the increasing popularity of teahouse trekking, companies that specialise in camping treks are becoming more competitive so it is important to check the details of your trek before you depart.

The two most common ways companies cut costs are: firstly, increasing the amount of load the porters carry and not providing them with necessary clothing and equipment (see the International Porter Protection Group, www.ippg.net for how you should care for your porters and your obligations towards them); secondly, either the agency or the cook reduces the money dedicated to your food and fuel allowance. It is important that the group leader should keep an eye on the quantity and quality of stocks. The obvious drawbacks to camping-style treks are perceived inconvenience and potentially having to share a tent with someone you would rather not sleep next to. To resolve both issues research is necessary.

- Camping really is more convenient than teahouses on the condition that you have a slightly flexible itinerary, so you can ensure washing and relaxing time for all, especially when the weather is good. Almost all camping groups offer single occupancy tents but you normally have to specify when you book, and you should always check the terms and conditions.
- For many, these drawbacks are easily mitigated and, in fact, are overwhelmed by the advantages of camping-style treks. Choosing your own path and rest spots offers a level of itinerary customisation that not even teahouses in the most popular regions can compete with.
- The main benefit, however, is being able to explore remoter regions away from the main trails and meet some of the inhabitants of the wild Himalaya. It is hard

to believe that there are still many villagers who have never seen a tourist, where communities greet you as an honoured guest and not as an opportunity to make another buck.

- For many trekkers and trek leaders, camping-style treks are their favourite method of exploring Nepal; they often say that their experience feels more genuine. Camping brings you closer to nature, and the camaraderie built around a campfire often outlasts that of a teahouse trek.
- Away from the main routes is where you'll most likely see many of the species for which the Himalaya is famous: red panda, black bear, musk deer, snow leopard and a multitude of birds.

Check your Progress - 1

1. Name the types of trek.

Ans.....

2. How many trekking styles are found?

Ans.....

3. Name the main rivers of Uttarakhand.

Ans.....

4. Name the word from which Mussoorie's name is derived.

Ans.....

6.5 TREKKING IN GARHWAL

The Garhwal is one of the frequently visited areas in the Himalayas. The two river outlets of Ganga and Yamuna provide the main entrance to Garhwal Himalaya, through the towns of Haridwar, Rishikesh, Dehradun and Mussoorie. The Gangotri area near the source of the Bhagirathi River is the most popular destination for trekkers and mountaineers. It is the gateway to many famous glaciers and spectacular peaks, apart from being one of the most sacred places in Garhwal. Two other important areas are Valley of Flowers and Badrinath, near the source of the

Alaknanda River source are also much frequented. The whole of Garhwal Himalaya is pilgrimage country, visited by thousands of travelers men and women, young and old, rich and poor, coming from every corner of India. It lies between the Punjab to the West and the Nepal Himalayas to the East. This is one area in the Himalayas, which has something to offer to all the mountaineers, the trekkers, the naturalist and the photographer. As Garhwal houses some of the holiest of Hindu shrines, it attracts millions of pilgrims every year from all over the Indian sub-continent.

The Garhwal Himalayas have attracted mountaineers from all over the world, to attempt and scale the mighty peaks in this region. A Garhwal trekking tour in this area, combined with visits to the holy temples of Gangotri, Kedarnath, Badrinath and Yamunotri, will add spiritual experience of the Himalayas as you watch the stream of people bathing and lining up in front of the temples to have a view of holy shrine, and to wash away, the sins of a lifetime.

6.5.1 Deharadun Mussoorie Trek

Dehradun Mussoorie in Indian States of Uttarakhand, like other hill resorts in India, came into existence in the 1820s or thereabouts, when the families of British colonials began making for the hills in order to escape the scorching heat of the plains. Small settlements grew into large stations and were soon vying with each other for the title of "queen of the hills." Mussoorie's name derives from the Mansur shrub (*Cororiana nepalensis*), common in the Himalayan foothills; but many of the house names derive from the native places of those who first built and lived in them.

6.5.2 Dodi Tal Trek

High up in the mountains is the Dodi tal lake- mysterious, alluring, and simply beautiful! The serene, tranquil surroundings, gurgling streams, crystal clear water, and dense alpine forests make for an ideal retreat. The trek from Dodital to Yamnotri takes you through high altitude grasslands and dense virgin forests. The scenery en-route is really astounding! The trek for Dodi Tal commences from

Uttarkashi or Kalyani, which can be approached by motor. Kalyani to Agoda is a gradual climb through woods, fields and villages along a mule track. The trek from Agoda to Dodi Tal is steep and through thick forests.

6.5.3 Gangotri Nanadavan Trek

Celebrated in Hindu mythology and religion, the Garhwal Himalayas are said to be the "Abode of the Gods". The river Ganges takes its source in this remote massif, at the sacred shrine of Gangotri, and rushes down to the plains in a torrential fury. Very few trekkers follow this itinerary which will lead to one of the most important spots of Hindu spirituality, where you will experience a strange atmosphere of religious fervour.

From Kedarnath, where hundreds of pilgrims arrive from all regions of India, the path proceeds at first along the sacred Bhagirathi river, then through dense forests and grassy areas as far as Lata. From there it is a 5-hour drive to Gangotri, where the second part of the trek starts.

Near Gaumukh, close to the Source of the Ganges, you will experience the strange view of half-naked siddhus in the lotus position, meditating on the bank of the bubbling stream pouring out the glacier. Further up, Tapovan is a grassy area with numerous brooks, surrounded by snowy peaks. It is a round-trip itinerary starting in Kedarnath, along the sacred Baghirathi river, then heading west, through dense forests and grassy areas. The northern part of the itinerary will offer magnificent views of several high altitude lakes.

6.5.4 Tons Valley Trek

A trek in around Tons Valley is most westerly inlet of Garhwal Himalaya. The Dhauladhar Range separates it from the Baspa Valley of Kinnaur in Himachal Pradesh. Passes over this range are comparatively new trekking experiences for visitors because the whole of Kinnaur has been a restricted area until the 1990s. Har Ki Dun has long been a popular destination, at the upper NE end of

the Tons, near the junction of three small glaciated valleys. Below this point other side valleys offer attractive hiking. Access is by bus from Mussorie or Dehradun to Netwar (1380m) and Sankri. You will also find here representatives of the Himalaya Trekking Association, which is supposed to be an authorized government agency.

6.5.5 Kauri Pass Trekking

A straightforward trip offering glorious view of some of the highest mountains of Garhwal Himalaya. The Kauri pass trek is amongst the best in the Garhwal Mountains. The trail takes you through lush green fields, remote villages and virgin forests. Lord Curzon, once the viceroy of India, traveled this route, hence it is also known as Curzon's Trail. Ghat, 19km SE of Nand Prayag, is the starting point. This small town on the main Rishikesh-Joshimath road at the junction of the Mandakini and Alaknanda rivers has tourist and forest rest houses, PWD bungalow and rest house. Best Period: June and September-October.

6.5.6 Nanda Devi Treks

This classic trek takes us across the picturesque meadows and valleys that border the western edge of the Nanda Devi Sanctuary. Situated in the upper watershed of the Alaknanda River in the Garhwal Himalaya, Nanda Devi Sanctuary is a vast glacial basin segmented by a series of parallel ridges emanating from the encircling mountain ramparts. The sanctuary is a vast amphitheatre some 132 km in circumference encompassing some of the most formidable gorges and covering about 625 sq. km of snow and ice. The most important ridge is the Rishikot-Devistan ridge which separates the inner sanctuary from the basin. The sanctuary is encircled by high mountain ranges and is accessible only from NW for a short period. The mountain ranges and is accessible only from NW for a short period. The mountain rim has such high peaks as Dunagiri 7066m, Changabang 6864m, Kalanka 6931m, Rishi Pahar 6992m, Nanda Devi East 7434m, Nanda Khat 6611m, Trisul 7120m. Nanda Devi main 7816m is situated on a short ridge projecting from eastern

rim at Nanda Devi East. This amazing feat of endurance and determination was capped when Tilman later returned to conquer the peak itself.

Sadly, the mystic of the area led to an excess of expeditions and ecological damage and the Sanctuary was closed in the 1980's. Investigations are currently underway to assess the recovery. Understandably, the country that surrounds the Sanctuary now has its own attractions for walkers and pilgrims alike. The immediate landscape has been beautifully tamed by centuries of low-key habitation and cultivation but the constant backdrop of the mighty Himalayan peaks makes for a magnificence unrivalled elsewhere in the region.

6.5.7 Har Ki Dun Trek

The Har Ki Dun Trek or Har Ki Doon Trek is an ideal trek for first time and experienced trekkers. The journey is scenic, is not too hard while being in no way "easy" and the pay-off of the scenery at Har Ki Dun Valley is a great payoff for the effort. The trek to Har Ki Dun is one of the most scenic treks a person with no prior trekking experience could ask for. The Har Ki Dun Valley is known for its wild flower meadows and the birdlife as it falls in the boundaries of the Govind National Park. Har Ki Dun has great views of the Hata and Swargarohini peaks along with Har Ki Dun peak of course. On the way you can see Bandarpuchh and Black Peak in the distance. Har Ki Dun's alpine flowers and its rich green landscapes with enough steep climbs and level walks - are sure to interest any trekking enthusiast or nature lover.

6.5.8 About Chopta - Chandrashila Trek

The **Chopta Chandrashila trek** is a blessing for first time trekkers particularly in the winters as the trails are covered in snow. This is an easily accessible trek and the last 60 km to the top of **Chandrashila** stands out with the feels it gives of climbing in the Himalayas. The trek begins with a drive to Sari village (from Haridwar). This is an **all-season trek** with **easy to moderate** trekking trails

making it a good bet for any beginner. The **Chandrashila trek** is known for its scenic beauty. It passes through some **beautiful forests** and affords excellent **views of the snow peaks**. The trek even gives you the opportunity to visit the **1000-year-old Tungnath temple**, which is the **highest shrine of Lord Shiva**. It is one of the panch-kedars and is believed to have been built by Arjuna himself. **Chandrashila Peak** is famous for its breathtaking 360-degree view of the Himalayan ranges. It is one of the few peaks that can also be climbed in the winter.

6.5.9 About Kedarkantha Trek

Whether it's your 1st trek or your 33rd - *Kedarkantha* appeases all. In winter, the trek is a delight with snow sheathing the grounds - the challenges also increase. With a trail that takes you through pine forests, oak trees and alpine meadows, and graces you with 360 degree views across the Garhwal and Kinnaur Himalayan regions - *Kedarkantha* is magic at a magician's peak. *Kedarkantha*, situated in the mountains of the tons river valley is a beautiful ridge peak; easily accessible anytime of the year. In the winters it snows in this valley and hence views from the summit are very rewarding. The trek goes through the Govind national park and gives you ample time to soak in the flora and fauna of this protected area. The summit lies at an altitude of 3850 m and reaching the top is very satisfying as you are rewarded with views of peaks like the Swargarohini, Banderpooch, Black and Ranglana.

Check your Progress - 2

5. Where from the the Ganga Originate?

Ans.....

6. Which pass is also called Curzon' trail?

Ans.....

7. Tungnath temple lies on which trek?

Ans.....

8. Name the tributary of Gouri Ganga.

Ans.....

6.5.10 Roopkund Trek

Roopkund is a magnificent tourist spot located in the Himalayas. Roopkund Lake is well-known as Mystery Lake; this lake was jam-packed with skeletons and bones of human being due to a disaster that happened here around 14th century. Set in Himalayas at an altitude of about 16,499 feet, it is totally uninhabited. The glacial lake is situated on a significant pilgrimage route to Nanda Devi Cult where the famous Nanda Devi Raj festival is held once in every 12 years. Trekking through, one comes across virgin forests, bubbling streams, temples, snow and Himalayan peaks Bedni Bugyal and Trisul. Trekkers start from Lohajung, *climb to a hillock at Wan to reach Ran ki Dhar, then to Bhaguwagasa to finally arrive at Roopkund.*

6.5.11 Vasu-Ki-Tal

Vasu ki Tal (Vasuki Lake) is a popular pilgrim and trekking destination situated at an altitude of 14, 200 ft, in the beautiful hill of kedarnath dham. The adjoining environment is wonderfully decked with high mountains and striking view of several peak of Himalayas. There blooms varied types of lively, colourful miniature flowers around the Vasuki Tal Lake. Brahma Kamal is well-known flower of this region. June to October is the best time to visit this enchanting spot is because when the weather is mild and pleasant. The self-evident lake offers an appealing view to the nature lover and provokes the poet hidden, even the most unromantic person falls in the trap. It is confined in by steep and rolling banks combined with lush green vegetation.

6.5.12 Khatling Trek

The trek through Khatling Glacier is a very scenic one, and travels along the Bhilangana river valley with its foundation at the Khatling Glacier – the point of occurrence of river Bhilangna. A journey to Khatling Trek offers one outstanding and mighty views of some of the famous Himalayan giant peaks like Thalay Sagar,

Jaonli, Kirtistambh & Bharte Khunta. One who goes camping on the green pastures of Chowki experiences fabulous natural beauty all around. Spectacular Khatling glacier, Rafting trip on the holy river, Ganges and the visit to the holy ghats (bathing area) & ashrams at Rishikesh are what travellers look for. And on the return voyage one can visit the Trijuginarayan temple believed to be the sacred spot where Lord Shiva and Goddess Parvati tied the knot!

6.5.13 Rupin Pass

Starting from Dhauladhars in Uttarakhand and ending in Sangla in Himachal Pradesh, Rupin Pass is good hill-walking route. Rupin Pass is still untouched by the human population. It is located at an altitude of 15250 ft above sea level in the Dhauladhars ranges. The Pass consists of streams dug out of rock faces; wooden bridges cut through deep dark folds in the mountain, glaciers, icy slopes, and overextended snow fields. Traveling and climbing the Rupin Pass is rated as moderate to difficult level. The trails follow the Rupin River all the way to the top guided by evergreen Deodar forests. While traveling through this path one can witness the change in culture from core Hinduism of Garhwal to mix of Hindu-Buddhism in the Sangla Valley.

6.6 TREKKING IN KUMAON

Most of the trails in Kumaon are relatively easy, with gradual ascents and descents over rolling hills and through meadows (Bugials or Kharag). These trails offer breathtaking views of the high peaks such as Nanda Devi, Nanda Kot, Trisuli and Hardeol. Eastern Kumaon has recently been opened to foreign trekkers and the trails dominated by the Panchchuli group of peaks.

6.6.1 Pindari Glacier

The Pindari Glacier path provides for a 90 km round-trip trek that most goers find comfortable to complete in six days. Trekking tours in India is incomplete if one has not trekked Pindari Glacier. It is often called the trekker's paradise. Certainly

the most easily reachable glacier in the Kumaon region, the Pindari Glacier is picturesque. Pindari is a huge and steep glacier situated between the snow-capped Nanda Devi and Nanda Kot Mountains. The Pindari Glacier is a never-ending and a breadth taking experience. The valley is drained by the Pindar River that arises from the Pindari Glacier. The river, in its initial course, runs through sedimentary rocks and finally meets the Alakananda River. As one moves downhill from Phurkia up to Khati, one comes across numerous waterfalls, hanging valleys and tremendous rock faces. The entire trekking route is packed with natural beauty.

6.6.2 Sunderdhunga Valley

Sunderdhunga valley trek, a neighbor of the more famous Pindari and Kafni glacier treks is considered to be most beautiful trek. The name Sunderdhunga, literally suggests the valley of beautiful stones. The eminent glaciers of this valley are Maiktoli and Sukhram. Sunderdhunga trek follows river Sunderdhunga upstream from Khati until its origin, making way through thick forests home to many animals; remote, almost bordering on exotic, villages; glaciers and pristine alpine meadows.

6.6.3 Nanda Devi East BC and Milam Glacier Trek

The longest (27km) glacier in Garhwal / Kumaon and Uttar Pradesh Himalaya, fed by a number of ice tributaries from a backdrop dominated by Rishi Pahar (6992m), Hardeol (7161m), Trishul (7074m) and Nanda Gond (6315m). Normally approached from the Munsiri roadhead 2133m, This is a wonderful trek in Kumaon Himalayas explores the fascinating Nanda Devi East Base Camp and astounding Milam Glacier. Kumaon Himalaya is an eye-catching area of the Indian Himalayas, bordering to the western end of Nepal and consists of the famous mountain of Nanda Devi (7,816m). This part of the Himalaya fascinated many of the eminent explorers and mountaineers with the majority of them trying to open the clandestine of approaching Nanda Devi. This trek trails the Gori Ganga ravine to the village of

Milam and then goes to the East Base Camp of elating Nanda Devi. The trail enters one of the most impressive mountain areas of the Himalayas nearby Nanda Devi and the adjoining peaks, this landscape combined with the mesmerizing historical background of the area make it one of the best treks in India.

6.6.4 Ram Ganga-Namik Glacier

Ram Ganga-Namik Glacier (Recently opened area with rough and tough walks) - Situated at the head of Ram Ganga Valley, between Gauri Ganga and Pindar valleys. This has been a restricted area; hence it has remained comparatively unknown to the trekking community. The approach to this glacier is a delightful excursion. Leti is the road head which can be reached from Bageshwar via Bharari and Samadhura. Leti (2050m) is a big village where porters can be hired.

6.6.5 Panchchuli base camp

Panchchuli base camp (passes through a region of outstanding beauty bordering Nepal and Tibet). - Goes up to Darma Valley near the borders of Nepal and Tibet, an area of outstanding beauty and importance for anthropologists. The people are migratory by nature, and though living in a remote Himalayan Valley, are quite literate and far from being primitive. The coache from Delhi to Pithoragarh Journeys 503km via Tanakpur. Via Almora is more picturesque, through Bageshwar, Chaukori and Berinag; the same distance.

To proceed beyond Pithoragarh get an inner line permit from the District Magistrate there. Now take a bus for Dharchula (4h 30 journey), and, after changing, to Sobala is a roadhead and take off-point for this trek, though you can travel a few km further by jeep. Sobala to Panchchuli base camp is a pleasant walk of 28km. As the local people keep going up and down the valley, eating shops and accommodation are available at most of the villages.

6.6.6 Ralam Dhura Pass

Ralam Dhura Pass (strenuous) - 5580 - A passage in the Panchchuli Range between Chaudhara (6510m) and Sui Tilla (6373m), from the Lassar Yankti Valley to Gauri Ganga Valley. From Pokhang (see above) in the Lassar Yankti, the route crosses two passes and negotiates three glaciers to reach Ralam village on the Ralam Gad, a tributary of the Gauri Ganga. At pokhang (3430m) ascend alongside the Ralam Yangti stream steeply through thorny shrubs and scree, past Ramta Dangsus to Gunda Dangsus (4200m), 4.5km from Pokhang and on the left side of Nipchikang Glacier.

6.7 SUMMARY

Trekking is a popular adventure activity among the tourists. Trips to the mountains in India signify not only the natural beauty, but a source of spiritual guidance as well. The height and beauty of Indian Himalayas provide enthralling opportunities for trekking. Trekking through different regions of the country gives an opportunity to the adventurers to gain a deep insight into the immaculate beauty of the regions and the bewitching flora and fauna as well. The mighty range of Himalayas present in India provides one of the amazing trekking experiences to visitors. Uttarakhand is a 'paradise' for nature lover's and adventure sports like river rafting, trekking, paragliding, Corbett jungle Jeep safari, enthusiasts. The Gangotri area near the source of the Bhagirathi River is the most popular destination for trekkers and mountaineers. Hence the state has lot of potential for the trekking. If we go through the best ten trekking destination of the India, you will find the out of these ten 4 or 5 of Uttarakhand.

6.8 GLOSSARY

- **Enthusiast** - a person of urgent zeal, highly excited
- **Gad** - small tributaries of rivers
- **Frequent** - occurring often
- **Mystery** - hidden matter
- **Afford** - to be able to sell

- **Tame** - not wild, domesticated

6.9 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. Tea house and Camping
2. 3
3. Ganga and Yamuna
4. Mansu Shrub
5. Gomukh
6. Kouri pass
7. Chopta shandrasila trek
8. Ralam Gad

6.10 REFERENCES

- Omacanda Hāṇḍā (2002). History of Uttarakhand. Indus Publishing. pp. 72-. ISBN 978-81-7387-134-4. Retrieved 22 July 2012.
- "Uttarakhand". Encyclopædia Britannica, Inc. Retrieved 17 July 2012.
- Pande, B. D. (1993). History of Kumaun: English version of "Kumaun ka itihās". Almora, U.P., India: Shyam Prakashan: Shree Almora Book Depot.
- Brief History of the Kumaon Regiment from official site of the Indian Army
- Kandari, O. P., & Gusain, O. P. (Eds.). (2001). Garhwal Himalaya: Nature, Culture & Society. Srinagar, Garhwal: Transmedia.
- Negi, B. (2001). "Round One to the Lobbyists, Politicians and Bureaucrats." The Indian Express, 2 January.
- "Uttarakhand becomes Uttarakhand". UNI. The Tribune (India). 13 October 2006. Retrieved 22 January 2013.
- Chopra, Jasi Kiran (2 January 2007). "Uttarakhand is Uttarakhand, BJP cries foul". TNN. The Time of India. Retrieved 22 January 2013.

- Pande, B. D. (1993). History of Kumaun: English version of "Kumaun Ka Itihas". Almora, U.P., India: Shyam Prakashan: Shree Almora Book Depot.
- Rawat, A. S. (1989). History of Garhwal, 1358–1947: an erstwhile kingdom in the Himalayas. New Delhi: Indus Pub. Co.
- Saklani, A. (1987). The history of a Himalayan princely state: change, conflicts and awakening: an interpretative history of princely state of Tehri Garhwal, U.P., A.D. 1815 to 1949 A.D. (1st ed.). Delhi: Durga Publications.

6.11 TERMINAL AND MODEL QUESTIONS

Long Questions:

1. What is trekking? Describe the various styles of trekking.
2. Write an essay on the best trekking destination of Garhwal.
3. Describe in details the various style of trekking.

Short Questions:

1. Name the main trekking styles.
2. Name the Chardham of Uttarakhand.
3. Name the chardham of India.
4. What is camping trek?
5. Write short notes:
 - i) Vasukital trek
 - ii) Roopkund trekking
 - iii) Milam Glacier trekking

Unit-7

Auli ski resort and other prospective skiing sites

Structure:

- 7.1 Introduction
- 7.2 Objectives
- 7.3 Skiing
- 7.4 Types of Skiing
- 7.5 Best Skiing Destinations in India
- 7.6 About Garhwal
 - 7.6.3 Skiing in Munsiyari, Kumaon
 - 7.6.4 Other Areas
- 7.7 Auli and Approaches to Auli
- 7.8 Best season and Places to stay in Auli
- 7.9 Other Prospective Skiing Sites
 - 7.5.1 Dayara Bugyal
 - 7.5.2 Mundali
- 7.10 Summary
- 7.11 Glossary
- 7.12 Answer to Check your Progress
- 7.13 References

7.14 Terminal and Model Questions

7.1 INTRODUCTION

Uttarakhand has long been called "Land of the Gods" as the state has some of the holiest Hindu shrines, and for more than a thousand years, pilgrims have been visiting the region in the hopes of salvation and purification from sin. Gangotri and Yamunotri, the sources of the Ganga and Yamuna, dedicated to Ganga and Yamuna respectively, fall in the upper reaches of the state and together with Badrinath (dedicated to Vishnu) and Kedarnath (dedicated to Shiva) form the Chota Char Dham, one of Hinduism's most spiritual and auspicious pilgrimage circuits.

Haridwar, meaning "Gateway to the God", is a prime Hindu destination. Haridwar hosts the Kumbha Mela every twelve years, in which millions of pilgrims take part from all parts of India and the world. Rishikesh near Haridwar is known as the preeminent yoga centre of India. The state has an abundance of temples and shrines, many dedicated to local deities or manifestations of Shiva and Durga, references to many of which can be found in Hindu scriptures and legends. Uttarakhand is, however, a place of pilgrimage not only for the Hindus. Piran Kaliyar Sharif near Roorkee is a pilgrimage site to Muslims, Gurdwara Hemkund

Sahib, nestled in the Himalayas, is a prime pilgrimage center for the Sikhs. Tibetan Buddhism has also made itself felt with the reconstruction of Mindrolling Monastery and its Buddha Stupa, described as the world's highest at Clement Town, Dehradun.

Some of the most famous hill stations like Mussoorie, Dhanaulti, Lansdowne, Sattal, Almora, Kausani, Bhimtal, and Ranikhet of India are located in Uttarakhand. The state has 12 National Parks and Wildlife Sanctuaries which cover 13.8 percent of the total area of the state. They are located at different altitudes varying from 800 to 5400 meters.

The oldest national park on the Indian sub-continent, Jim Corbett National Park, is a major tourist attraction. The park is famous for its varied wildlife and Project Tiger run by the Government of India. Rajaji National Park is famous for its Elephants. In addition, the state boasts Valley and Nanda Devi National Park in Chamoli District, which together are a UNESCO World Heritage Site. Vasudhara Falls, near Badrinath is a waterfall with a height of 122 meters set in a backdrop of snow-clad mountains. The state has always been a destination for mountaineering, hiking, and rock climbing in India. A recent development in adventure tourism in the region has been whitewater rafting in Rishikesh.

Due to its proximity to the Himalaya ranges, the place is full of hills and mountains and is suitable for trekking, climbing, skiing, camping, rock climbing, and paragliding.^[75]Roopkund is a popular trekking site, famous for the mysterious skeletons found in a lake, which was covered by National Geographic Channel in a documentary. The trek to Roopkund passes through the beautiful meadows of Bugyal.

7.2 OBJECTIVES

In this unit we tried to describe the details of Auli, a famous place of state for winter games. It aims:

- To enhances the beauty of state to all of us
- To encourage the winter sports.
- To enrich your knowledge Auli Skiing.
- To acknowledge the Skiing opportunities in the State.
- To enrich your knowledge of places around Auli.

7.3 SKIING

Skiing is a recreational activity and competitive winter sport in which the participant uses skis to glide on snow. Many types of competitive skiing events are recognized by the International Olympic Committee (IOC), and the International Ski Federation.

- Skiing has a history of almost five millennia. Although modern skiing has evolved from beginnings in Scandinavia, it may have been practiced as early as 600 BC in what is now China. The word "ski" is one of a handful of words Norway has exported to the international community. It comes from the Old Norse word "skíð" which means "split piece of wood or firewood".
- Asymmetrical skis were used at least in northern Finland and Sweden up until the late 1800s. On one leg the skier wore a long straight non-arching ski for sliding, and on the other a shorter ski for kicking. The bottom of the short ski was either plain or covered with animal skin to aid this use, while the long ski supporting the weight of the skier was treated with animal fat in similar manner to modern ski waxing.
- Early skiers used one long pole or spear. The first depiction of a skier with two ski poles dates to 1741. Until the mid-1800s skiing was primarily used for transport, and since then has become a recreation and sport. Military ski races were held in Norway during the 18th century, and ski warfare was studied in the late 18th century. As equipment evolved and ski lifts were developed skiing evolved into two main genres in the 1930s, Alpine and Nordic.

- Skiing is one of them sports that have gained vast popularity around the world and in the past few years have turn into a quiet attention grabbing sport because of the high Himalayas. The immense open spaces over the snowline have flung open to the skiing enthusiast. A surplus of ski locales in Jammu and Kashmir, the hills of Kumaon, Himachal Pradesh and the North eastern states of India have become the favorite ski hideouts of adventure lovers.
- The overwhelming height and stretch of the snow clad mountains, with the additional advantage of powdered snow are attractive enough to draw the adventurous spirits of the keen skier, providing all the adventure and enthusiasm attached to the game. Realizing the massive prospect for tourism, India has developed some of the most modern and also the reasonable ski resorts in the whole world.

7.4 TYPES OF SKIING

The skiing is categories as follows:

1. **Alpine Downhill:** Non-competitive recreational skiing that takes place in ski resort with specified ski runs is termed as Alpine Downhill. Also called downhill skiing, alpine skiing typically takes place on a piste at a ski resort. It is characterized by fixed-heel bindings that attach at both the toe and the heel of the skier's boot. Because it is difficult to walk in alpine equipment, ski lifts including chairlifts bring skiers up the slope. Backcountry skiing can be accessed by helicopter or snow cat. Facilities at resorts can include night skiing, après-ski, and glade skiing under the supervision of the ski patrol and the ski school. Alpine skiing branched off from the older Nordic skiing around the 1920s, when the advent of ski lifts meant that it was not necessary to walk any longer. Alpine equipment specialized to where it can only be used with the help of lifts.

2. **Alpine Freestyle:** Skiing in which you must use aerial acrobatics and balance is termed as Alpine Freestyle.
3. **Nordic:** Competitive skiing with no special ski area, Nordic is the oldest form of skiing. Professional skiers compete in Nordic Jumping where they need to slide down a ramp and go further before landing. Another name for Nordic is cross-country. The Nordic disciplines include cross-country skiing and ski jumping, which share in common the use of binding that attach at the toes of the skier's boots but not at the heels. Cross-country skiing may be practiced on groomed trails or in undeveloped backcountry areas.
4. **Military:** Skiing used by military as the means of transportation is termed as Military Skiing.
5. **Kite:** In Kite Skiing, the skier is pulled by a hang glider or kite.
6. **Para:** Para skiing is term for skiing done by jumping from a plane or high altitude mountain.
7. **Telemark skiing:** Telemark skiing is a ski turning technique and FIS-sanctioned discipline. It is named after the Telemark region of Norway. Using equipment similar to Nordic skiing, the ski bindings having the ski boot attached only at the toe.

7.5 BEST SKIING DESTINATIONS IN INDIA

India is an appropriate stomping ground for the adventure junkies from all around the globe. If we see; the diversity has an important role to play in it. The rugged Indian Himalaya has become an arena for many adventure activities like trekking, motor biking, cycling and skiing; similarly, the coastal regions are the pioneers of water sports while the deserts have become the ground for exhilarating activities like polo and sand dune bashing. One of the striking sports that have emerged to be a winner in the league of adventure is skiing. The Indian Himalaya being a wonderful host offers skiers a distinct skiing experience. Remember,

Gulmarg and Manali are not the only skiing destinations in India; in fact there are at least 11 of them! Here is the list of best skiing places where you can thoroughly enjoy this bracing activity.

1. Manali, Himachal Pradesh
2. Kufri, Himachal Pradesh
3. Narkanda, Himachal Pradesh
4. Auli, Uttarakhand
5. Dayara Bugyal, Uttarakhand
6. Mundali in Uttarakhand
7. Munsiyari in Uttarakhand
8. Gulmarg, Jammu & Kashmir
9. Pahalgam, Jammu & Kashmir
10. Phuni Valley in Lachung-Sikkim
11. Yumthang Valley, Sikkim

7.6 ABOUT GARHWAL

Indian Himalayas provide an excellent skiing experience owing to their great height which makes for long descents. The vast open spaces, snow clad mountains and the height of skiing slopes in India are enough to pump up the adrenaline in any ski enthusiast. India's ski resorts are largely confined to the western half of the **Himalayas - in Uttarakhand** - high enough to get a good cover of snow during the winter months, yet low enough to be easily accessible. For the avid skier, cross-country runs of 10-20 km are now available, with the added advantage of fresh powder snow, away from criss-crossing streams of skiers that overtake the slopes of the European Alps. Because of their height and spread, Garhwal, like other sectors of the Himalayas, offers the thrills of exploratory long distance skiing.

Garhwal, or Gadhwal, is a region and administrative division of Uttarakhand, lying in the Himalayas. It is bounded on the north by Tibet, on the east

by Kumaon region, on the south by Uttar Pradesh, and on the west by Himachal Pradesh. It includes the districts of Chamoli, Dehradun, Haridwar, Pauri (Pauri Garhwal), Rudraprayag, Tehri (Tehri Garhwal), and Uttarkashi. The administrative center for Garhwal division is the town of Pauri.

Garhwal originally consisted of 52 petty chieftainships, each chief with his own independent fortress (garh). Nearly 500 years ago, one of these chiefs, Ajai Pal, reduced all the minor principalities under his own sway, and founded the Garhwal kingdom. He and his ancestors ruled over Garhwal and the adjacent state of Tehri, in an uninterrupted line till 1803, when the Gurkhas invaded Kumaon and Garhwal, driving the Garhwal chief into the plains. For twelve years the Gurkhas ruled the country with a rod of iron, until a series of encroachments by them on British territory led to the war with Nepal in 1814. At the termination of the campaign, Garhwal and Kumaon were converted into British districts, while the Tehri principality was restored to a son of the former chief. The British district of Garhwal was in the Kumaon division of the United Provinces, and had an area of 5629 sq. mi. After annexation, Garhwal rapidly advanced in material prosperity. Pop. (1901) 429,900. Two battalions of the Indian army (the 39th Garhwal Rifles) were recruited in the district, which also contained the military cantonment of Lansdowne. Grain and coarse cloth were exported, and salt, borax, livestock and wool were imported, and the trade with Tibet was considerable. The administrative headquarters was at the village of Pauri, but Srinagar is the largest place. It was an important mart, as was Kotdwara, the terminus of a branch of the Oudh and Rohilkhand railway from Najibabad.

7.7 AULI

Skiing, a word that reminds of thrill and speed, that too without any motor or wheels. The thrill of skiing can only be felt and not heard or written. The world famous Ice-sport has arrived in India with a bang. Skiing is relatively new sport in

India. It was earlier restricted to some parts of Jammu and Kashmir, and was not considered a safe sport. But since last few years, efforts have been made to familiarise people with this game. GHA, Great Himalayan Adventure, has established skiing resorts and clubs across the state. The panoramic hills of Garhwal are a combination of mountain peaks and valleys. The large slopes when covered with seasonal snow become ideal for skiing during winters (November to February).

Skiing is one sport that has gained immense popularity all over the world and in the past decade have become quiet attention grabbing sport because of the Himalayas.. The vast open spaces above the snowline have flung open to the skiing enthusiasts. A plethora of ski locales in Jammu and Kashmir, the hills of Kumaon, Himachal Pradesh and the North eastern states of India have become the favourite ski hideouts of adventure lovers. The awesome height and spread of the snow clad mountains, with the added advantage of powdered snow are tempting enough to magnetize the adventurous spirits of the avid skier, providing all the thrill and excitement attached to the game. Realizing the immense prospect for tourism, India has developed some of the most modern and also the reasonable ski resorts in the whole world.

Auli, in the Garhwal Himalayas, is a favourite skiing destination for many not just because of its beautiful glittering slopes but for the nice, clean environment as well. Located around 250 kms away from **Rishikesh in Uttarakhand**, Auli is a must visit destination if skiing is your passion. The slopes are located at an altitude of almost 2500 to 3000 metres, offering exciting skiing opportunities to both beginners as well as professional skiers.

The potential of snow dressed slopes of Auli, once the training grounds for the Paramilitary forces was adjudged by the French and Austrian experts who compared it with the best skiing grounds of the world, and rated it as one of the best. The sheer height and spread of the snow clad mountains, with the added advantage of powdered snow are tempting enough to magnetize the adventurous spirits of the

avid skier, providing all the thrill and excitement attached to the game. From January to April, the Auli slopes are usually covered with a thick carpet of snow, about 3 metres deep. The stretch of 3-kms with a drop in elevation of 500m is considered to be a very good skiing ground by international standard.

The region provides immense opportunities for adventure sports like skiing and thrilling water sports which make Auli an ideal venue for adventure seekers. It is a ski touring and cultural paradise, and whatever the weather, you can always get out skiing and riding. Being on this tour lets you enjoy skiing on the slopes of Auli which provide enough thrills to professional skier and novice as well. In summers you will find numerous marked walks and there are also mountain bike trails. At the backdrop lies the famous high altitude Gorson Reserve forest richly habituated by rare Himalayan wildlife including snow leopard, musk deer, wild boar, wild cat, wild rabbit, jackal, fox, hyena and bear. The climate in summers is extremely pleasant. The deodar and oak trees contribute to natural health spa strongly recommended by for everyone. It is connected to Joshimath by a 3.5 km long cable car provides an excellent panoramic view of the mountain peaks like Nanda Devi, Kamet and Dronagiri. Auli is an important ski destination in the Himalayan mountains of Uttarakhand, India. Auli, also known as a 'bugyal' or Auli Bugyal, in the regional language, which means meadow, is located at an elevation of 2500 to 3050 meters above sea level. Auli is less known ski destination than Shimla, Gulmarg or Manali. It was only in the recent time, after the creation of new state Uttarakhand (formerly Uttar Pradesh) carved out from Uttar Pradesh, Auli was marketed as a tourist destination. The state is called "Dev Bhoomi" which means "Land of Gods" as there are important pilgrimage destination in this state mainly the 'Char Dham' (Gangotri-Yamunotri-Kedarnath-Badrinath). Auli lies on the way to Badrinath. Auli is surrounded by coniferous and oak forests, with a panoramic view of the lofty peaks of the greatest mountain range in the world, the Himalayas. The slopes here provide enough thrills to professional skier and novice as well.

The Garhwal Mandal Vikas Nigam Limited (GMVNL) a govt agency which takes care of this resort and Uttarakhand Tourism Department conduct winter sports competitions at this place to encourage skiing in India.^[2] Have imported snow beater to maintain slopes. Auli also boasts the Asia's longest - 4 km - cable car (Gondola). It also has a Chair Lift and a Ski-Lift. Apart from Skiing there is an interesting trek route also. There is a training facility of Indo-Tibetan Border Police. A small temple having connection to great epic Ramayana is also present.

Check your Progress - 1

1. What is meaning of Haridwar?

Ans.....

2. Nmae the administrative centre of Garhwal division.

Ans.....

3. Name the ideal vanue for adventure in the state.

Ans.....

4. Write full name of GMVN.

Ans.....

Auli Skiing Destination

Auli is starting to get popular among the ski-lovers. Though the long,tiring travel and unpredictable weather can be the mood killer. You cannot be sure till you reach what to expect. Few lucky can get to enjoy snow fall and skiing. If luck is not on your side, snow storm can lock your room for days. For some its hard solid snow which take away the skiing pleasure. Though the GMVNL has imported snow beater it cannot give the experience of fresh snow. There is a long Ski-Lift connecting lower slopes to the Top. The gondola is not an aid to skiing and simply transports visitors to the accommodation centre from the local village and the one serious ski lift, as well as being short only operates when there are four people to fill the available seats. This does lead to long delays between runs. The ski village suffers from a

shortage of electricity and to be restricted to one hour of power per day is not unusual in winter.

GHA, has tried its level best to make it a world class Skiing Resort. Among the best skiing destinations of India, it is situated in Chamoli district of Garhwal region covering an elevation from 2,519mts to 3,050 mts above sea level. Auli is a "Bugyal" which means meadow in the regional language, these green Bugyals turn into a sheet of white during winters. Auli lies 16 Km from Joshimath and is one of the prime tourist destinations in Uttarakhand. The natural advantages of Auli's slopes, coupled with state-of-the-art facilities provided by GHA have made it comparable to the best in the world. The snow capped slopes of Auli are flanked by stately coniferous and oak forests which cut wind velocity to the minimum. Auli offers a panoramic view of Himalayan peaks like the Nanda Devi (7817 M), Kamet (7756 M) and Dunagiri. Auli is often compared with best ski resorts of the world by the foreigners and has also hosted the first SAF Winter Games in the year 2011. Being blessed with invigorating views of the splendid mountain range of Himalayas, the slopes of Auli provide enough thrills to professional skiers and novices alike. Auli has one of the most fascinating slopes in the world for winter skiing, especially from January to March. Slopes are covered with Deodar and Oak forests helping the skiers by reducing the velocity of the chilling winds. It is a perfect place for all adventure skiers and people who have enthusiasm for sports in winters. The skiing centre has a foot chair lift and a ski lift for hauling you to the top of the peak.

The wonderful dawn as seen from behind Nanda Devi, the open night sky filled with innumerable stars and the gentle snowfall, all these things makes Auli the top winter destination of India. Thus Auli is a must visit for all the nature lovers and of course for all those who are passionate for skiing.

Skiing is a major pastime in Auli. Facilities for skiing are available from GMVNL. There are certificate and non certificate course provided ranging from 4 days to 14 days. The courses include stay, food, ski gear charges and guide. There

are local people who provide Ski Equipment for the casual tourist and also help them to ski. If you have a week's time, then it is possible to enroll in Ski courses and learn from experts. Auli along with Dehradun hosted the First South Asian Winter Games in 2011.

GMVN conducts a 7 day and a 14 days skiing course at Auli and special provisions for day tourists are also available. The conditions for skiing are perfect at Auli. A 500mts long ski-lift and an 800 m long chair-lift links the upper and lower slopes. The Garhwal Mandal Vikas Nigam Limited takes care of this resort and they have imported snow beater to maintain slopes. Walking through the misty slope provides one with the imposing spectacles of some of the lofty mountain ranges like Nanda Devi, Mana Paravat and Kamat.

Slopes of Auli:

The slopes of Auli are considered amongst the best skiing place in Asia by the skiers of different countries. There are four Ski slopes in Auli:

- 10 No. Slope (White) is 900mts long
- 8 No. Track (Blue) is 800mts long
- Temple Track (Red) is for beginners and is 400mts in length
- Composite Slopes is 3.1kms long

There are two international standard ski lifts for skiers which take them back to high slopes.

Auli Ropeway: Auli also boasts of Asia's longest and one of the worlds highest cable car Gondola covering a distance of 4km. It also has a Chair Lift and a Ski-Lift. The ropeway of Auli connects Auli with Joshimath and it takes 25 minutes to reach Auli from Joshimath. Auli ropeway has ten towers of self-supporting steel structures. The return cable car ticket from Joshimath to Auli and Auli to Joshimath will cost you around Rs.500. The enchanting Himalayas are distinctly visible when you are travelling in Gondola. Auli also offers the luxury of an 800mts long chair lift linking

the lower ski slopes with the upper region. This Chair Lift has remote-controlled hydraulic and pneumatic braking system, making it safe to travel. A storm warning device is also attached with it. The ropeway of Auli helps tourists to explore the region with unique and unsurpassed experience.

Auli is a popular hill station in India. Listed below are the tourist spots in and around Auli.

Artificial lake: The world's highest man-made lake is at Auli, right next to the private hotel, Clifftop Club. The government has developed this in view of creating artificial snow on the new ski slopes in the event of low snow fall. The water from this lake will be used to feed the snow guns stationed along the ski slopes and thus provide a good skiing surface and extend the ski season.

Views: Auli is surrounded by high peaks like Mana, Kamet and tallest of all Nanda Devi. The 270 degree view will be enough to make you forget the long and tiring ride to reach Auli. Once the Skiing is over the best thing one can do in evening is to take chair out and get treated to great view of snow clad mountains as they keep changing colors every minute the sun goes down. Here you will understand why the Sadhus (sage) came to Himalayas for meditation. The feeling of solitude and oneness with god will do wonders to you mind and have a positive effect on you body. You will get which no money can buy "Peace of Mind"

Trekking: Apart from skiing there are some trek options available and below list is some of the trail normally completed in single day Auli - Gorson around 7 km Gorson - Tali around 6 km Tali - Kuari Pass around 11 km Kuari Pass - Khulara around 12 km Khulara - Tapovan around 9 km

Spiritual: The place Auli is surrounded by the mighty peaks of Himalayas. Most of them have some name of goddess or some mythological connection. The one that stand out is beautiful Mt Nanda Devi which stands 7,817 Mts (25,643 ft) in height. Even the Mt Neelkant visible, Auli lies in the way of the Badrinath route. So in winter there is a heavy snow fall in Badrinath and the temple is closed for 5-6 months.

During this period the deity of Lord Badri Vishal is brought and kept in temple at Joshimath. This is golden chance for Hindus and not to be missed. In Auli there is a small Hanuman temple having some connection to Ramayana. The belief of people is when Laxman, younger brother of Lord Rama got injured fighting the Rakshas in Lanka (Sri Lanka). A medic ordered that only the herb name 'Sanjivani' found on Sanjivani Mountain in Himalayas can save Laxman. Lord Rama ordered Hanuman the task. Hanuman flew from Lanka and during his way to Sanjivani Mountain he took some rest in Auli before continuing his journey.

Others: There is a training facility of Indo Tibetan Border Police. This force is responsible for guarding Indian borders at high altitude. They are subjected to hard training and its amazing to see their stamina and skiing skills. This center is equipped with best medical team for any emergency and tourist can use their help. If tourist gets trapped then the chopper service can be requested for rescue or transfer to city medical facilities.

A Hydro Power project can be seen from Auli. A private company has trapped the flowing river Alaknanda and diverted its waters through a big tunnel that runs under the mountain and the force acquired is used to generate electricity. To see this you will have to travel some 5 km towards Badrinath.

7.8 BEST SEASON AND PLACES TO STAY IN AULI

The best time to visit Auli is throughout the year except monsoons. But if you want to enjoy the eternal bliss of snow then visit Auli from December end to March. If you are planning a visit to Auli in winters then tourists are advised to bring heavy woolens, caps, socks, gloves, mufflers, pullovers, trousers, wind proof jackets, sunglasses, snow boots, torch and a whistle for personal use.

Summers (March to June) are very pleasant with moderate climate; with average around 15°C and ideal for sight seeing. Monsoons (July to October) are rainy - temperature are around 12°C. Winters (November to February) are freezing with

minimum temperatures below 0°C. Snowfall is very common and this time is ideal for skiing. May to November offers cool and pleasant climate and the right period to spend relaxing moments in the outdoors. Best time to visit is last week of Jan to first week of March for skiing. Though weather is highly unpredictable.

- Auli is located at 30.32°N 79.36°E in the Chamoli District of Uttarakhand, India
- *Feb end & March starting* is a best month to visit Auli if you like adventure. Moderately Cold Weather: Moderately Cold Temperature varies from 7 to 17°C. April is cold but perfect for all tourist activities. Day times are bit warm, but nights are cool.
- Month wise Weather Condition Details
- January: Very Cold with Snowfall. Temperature varies from -4 to 7°C. January has a freezing climate with snowfall. The snow clad nature is imposing and ideal for winter sports.
- February: Very Cold with Snowfall. Temperature varies from 0 to 10°C. February is snow bound with nature appears with eye catching white cover. Good for winter travels.
- March: Cold Temperature varies from 4 to 14°C. March offers reprieve for the freezing cold. The atmosphere starts to become warm.
- April: Moderately Cold Temperature varies from 7 to 17°C. April is cold but perfect for all tourist activities. Day times are bit warm, but nights are cool.
- May: Moderately Cold Temperature varies from 7 to 18°C. May is moderately hot with sun appears over the sky most of the days. Good for outdoor travels.
- Jun: Pleasant Temperature varies from 10 to 20°C. June is the hottest month of the year. The atmosphere is temperate. The nature looks attractive and suitable for tourist activities.
- July: Pleasant Temperature varies from 7 to 18°C. July has beautiful showers in its kitty. The nature dresses in new lush green new leaves. Good for enjoying the picturesque nature.

- August: Moderately Cold Temperature varies from 7 to 15°C. August is pretty good with picturesque nature and flowering plants and trees. August offers moderately warm climate.
- September: Moderately Cold Temperature varies from 7 to 15°C. September is humid with post monsoon showers. The nature appears fresh.
- October: Cold Temperature varies from 5 to 14°C. October welcomes winters with all its majesty. The climate is moderately cold.
- November: Cold Temperature varies from 4 to 14°C. November offers a very cold ambiance. This month is ideal for honeymoon travels.
- December: Very Cold Temperature varies from 2 to 10°C. December is very cold. Outdoor activities require winter dresses and often snowfall is seen.

Clifftop Club Resort: CliffTop Club Resort, Club Group of Hotels, Auli, Chamoli District, Uttarakhand, India. Welcome to "**Cliff Top Club**", a high altitude adventure resort, located in the Garhwal Himalayas of the northern Indian state of Uttarakhand. Clifftop Club at Auli is located at an altitude of over 10,000 feet in India's most scenic location amid the snow clad Himalayas. The resort provides a 270 degree clear view of the snow covered Nanda Devi range (the highest in India and third highest in the world). Other ranges in sight include Dronagiri, Kamet, Trishul, Neelkanth, Mana, and Mukut. They belong to the snow-line ranges which are covered with snow all round the year.

Clifftop Club has been built on inhospitable terrain over years of painstaking labour incorporating traditional and innovative techniques. Those who brave the drive to the resort are rewarded with a magnificent sight as the resort rises into view from the steep path that leads up to it from Joshimath. For those who prefer to zip up in the cable car, the resort seems like a tiny speck in the vast snow or grass covered expanse of the Himalayas, as the season may be. The warm hospitality however belies the tough weather conditions under which the CTC staff battle the forces of nature to provide comfort to the guests.

The resort is paradise in winters for skiing and sledding enthusiasts and for anyone who wishes to venture out in the snow and enjoy snow sports. In summers, when the snow gives way to carpets of grass and flowers, hikers and trekkers will find numerous marked walks and mountain bike trails. Trekkers to Kuari Pass and the Valley of Flowers prefer to stay on at Clifftop Club at the end of the trek to avail the luxury of hot baths and lavish cuisine. The famous high altitude Gorson Reserve forest (part of the Nanda Devi National Park) provides a splendid backdrop to the resort. The forest is richly inhabited by rare Himalayan wildlife including the snow leopard, musk deer, wild boar, wild cats, rabbits, jackals, foxes, hyena and black bear. Summers are extremely pleasant and the deodar and oak trees add to the fragrant air to promote natural health, which is strongly recommended by Physicians/ Naturopaths/ Therapists.

Other places to stay in AULI:

- Himalayan Abode
- Joshimath Char Dham Camp
- Nanda Inn Cottage
- Nature Inn
- Prayag Heritage Cottages
- XRA Cottage

Approaches to Auli:

The nearest airport is Jolly Grant Airport in Dehradun, which is about 281 km from Auli. Jolly Grant Airport in Dehradun is a domestic airport located at about 20 km away from city center of Dehradun. Taxi cabs are available from Dehradun airport to Auli, which cost about Rs 4,000. The airport operates daily flights to Delhi. Nearest International airport is Delhi, which is about 500 km away. By train you have connectivity of almost of all the main cities to the capital of state, Dehradun. Here onwards you will have to move ahead by road. Every kind of road transport is available from Dehradun or Haridawar or Rishikesh.

7.9 OTHER PROSPECTIVE SKIING SITES

Uttarakhand a perfect location for adventure seekers, The large slopes of Uttarakhand covered with seasonal snow become an ideal place for skiing in the winter months. As the elements are defeated, excitement swells up. In skiing, the use of only the simplest forms of implements adds to the adventure. With there wide-open spaces above the snow line, offer yet another exciting possibility Ski touring amongst the glaciers. For the avid skier, cross-country runs of 10 to 20 kilometers are available, with the added advantage of fresh powder snow, away from crises-crossing streams of skiers that overtake the slopes of the European Alps. Because of their height and spread, Uttarakhand, like other sectors of the Himalayas, are in a position to offer the thrills of examining long distance skiing round the year.

Adventure lovers around India hoose Auli, Mundali, Munsyari and Dayara Bugyal as their Skiing destinations specially from November to March but these snow capped Himalayas seem to entertain tourists and skiers throughout the year. The wide-open spaces over the snow line among the glaciers in Uttarakhand Himalayas increase possibility of attracting more Skiers to these places. Skiing is an adventure sport where skis attached to boots with a binding are used to travel over snow

Check your Progress - 2

5. How far Auli is from Joshimath?

Ans.....
.....

6. How many international standard ski lifts are in Auli?

Ans.....
.....

7. Name the best season for Auli.

Ans.....
.....

8. In which district Auli situates?

Ans.....
.....

7.9.1 Dayara Bugyal

Uttarakhand has some good skiing destinations in its pocket. Dayara Bugyal or Dyara Bugyal is situated in Uttarkashi district of Uttarakhand. Known for proffering excellent skiing opportunity, Dayara has been a popular haunt of both domestic and international skiers. The high amount of snowfall in the winter season sets the stage for an exhilarating experience. There are slopes that vary from easy to difficult and for beginners there is even a ski training institute. Other places that you can try skiing in Uttarakhand are Bdeni Bugyal, Chiplakot, Kedar Kantha, Kush Kalyani and Natya.

Dayara Bugyal in Uttarkashi is another beautiful skiing resort. The place is accessible by trekking 8 Km, so be prepared for a long trek before taking up the Skiing course. Skiing at dayara Bugyal can be a lifetime experience for those who want a break from the crowd at other hillstations. Throughout winter Dayara Bugyal provides superb ski slopes over an area of 28 sq. kms. Dayara bugyal afford a

panoramic vision of the beautiful Himalayas. There is a small lake in the area that provides an tremendous camping site.

Bugyal in the local language means "high altitude meadow". The road to Dayara Bugyal branches off near Bhatwari a place on Uttarkashi-Gangotri road about 28 km from Uttarkashi. Vehicles can go up to the village of Barsu from where one has to trek a distance of about 8 km to reach Dayara and other route is via village Raithal, 10 km from Bhatwari, from where one has to trek about 6 km to Dayara Bugyal. Situated at an elevation of about 3048 m, this vast meadow is second to none in natural beauty. During winter it provides excellent ski slopes over an area of 28 sq km. The panoramic view of the Himalayas from here is breathtaking. Presently accommodation is available at Bhatwari and some villager's huts may also be used by professional skiers.

Dayara Bugyal

7.9.2 Mundali

Mundali is situated in district Dehradun, 129 km from Dehradun via Chakrata. Mandali offers an unforgettable view of the snow capped Himalayas. The place has vast ski slopes on which professionals can enjoy skiing. As accommodation facility is only available at Forest Rest House, therefore one has to ensure accommodation through the Forest Department. There are facilities for stay and equipments with the rest house here. There is a ski school that provides all the necessary ski gears (alpine skis, Nordic skis, gloves and goggles) and training. Offering scenic background and the fine powdery snow, this place is a skiers' paradise!The region provides immense opportunities for adventure sports like skiing and thrilling water sports which make Uttarakhand an ideal venue for adventure seekers.

7.9.3 Skiing in Munsiyari, Kumaon

Munsiyari is located at a distance of 66 kms. from Jauljibi and 127 kms. from Pithoragarh via Thal. Munsiyari is the middle as well as the gateway of the Johar

region. Munsyari is the base of treks to Milam, Namik and Ralam glaciers. Khalia Top and Betulidhar are two high altitude places that offer outstanding conditions for skiing. Munsiyari in Uttarakhand is also the skiing hub in India. Known for its resplendent natural beauty, this small town has made itself an important adventure centre in the country. Munsiyari or Munsyari as it is often called, like many of its counterparts proffers steep descents for an over the edge skiing experience. Other than skiing, Munsiyari is famed as an important trekking destination. An unforgettable place that opens the door to some extraordinary fun; Munsiyari is definitely the right place to explore the adventurer in you!

7.9.4 Other Areas

Besides Auli, numerous places in Garhwal and Kumaon are full of potential for skiing where an individual or a group can enjoy this winter sport on their own. In Garhwal, Kush Kalyan and Kedar Kantha in Distt. Uttarkashi; Panwali and Matya in Distt. Tehri Garhwal and Bedni Bugyal in Chamoli and Munsyari, Chiplakot Valley in Distt. Pithoragarh in Kumaon are well known potential skiing resorts where professionals can do skiing.

7.10 SUMMARY

Our state Uttarakhand is situated in the lap of Himalya and hence we found natural beauty here. The beautiful mountain, rivers, lakes bugyals etc attracts the visitor. The main source of State economy is tourism and so the attraction of tourist brings prosperity to the state. The nature sports like mountaineering, rock climbing, river rafting, kayaking, trekking etc are getting popular day by day. The Skiing is one of them. The state has great opportunities to the Skiing. One of them, Auli got international fame now. Because the peaks of Himalaya are snow covered for almost 3-4 month. But still there is lot to do for skiing in the state.

7.11 GLOSSARY

- **Plethora** - excess of blood
- **Thrill** - sensation
- **Immense** - very huge
- **Ski** - runners of wood fastened under the feet for travelling over snow
- **Destination** - end or purpose

7.12 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. Gateway of God
2. Pauri
3. Auli
4. Garhwal mandal Vikas nigram
5. 16KM
6. 2
7. December to march
8. Chamoli

7.13 REFERENCES

- "Tourist places in Uttarakhand". Maps of India. India's No.1 map site. Retrieved 8 June 2013.
- "Destination Auli". The Times of India. Retrieved 8 June 2013.
- 3.The cradle of skiing (Norway – the official site in the United States)
- Skiing and the Creation of a Norwegian Identity (Norway – the official site in the United States)
- Subhash, Kak. "The Mahabharata as an encyclopaedia". Louisiana State University. Retrieved 5 August 2012.
- Saklani, D. P. (1998). Ancient communities of the Himalaya. New Delhi: Indus Pub. Co.
- Aggarwal, J. C., Agrawal, S. P., & Gupta, S. S. (Eds.). (1995). Uttarakhand: past, present, and future. New Delhi: Concept Pub. Co.

7.14 TERMINAL AND MODEL QUESTIONS

Long Questions:

1. What do you mean by Skiing? Describe the s types of Skiing.
2. Through light on the prospective of skiing in the Uttaarakhand.
3. Write an easy on the Auli Ski Resort.

Short Questions:

1. What is Bugyal?
2. What is Skiing?
3. Name the world famous skiing destination of Uttarakhand.
4. Name the styles of Skiing.

**Unit-8:
River Running - Status and Scope**

Structure:

- 8.1 Introduction
- 8.2 Objectives
- 8.3 River Running
- 8.4 Running Rivers of Himalaya
- 8.5 Kayaking and Canoeing
- 8.6 Rafting
- 8.7 Famous places of rafting in India
- 8.8 River rafting in Uttarakhand
- 8.9 Summary
- 8.10 Glossary
- 8.11 Answer to Check your Progress
- 8.12 References
- 8.13 Terminal and Model Questions

8.1 INTRODUCTION

Uttarakhand is both the new and traditional name of the state that was formed from the hill districts of Uttar Pradesh, India. Literally North Country or Section in Sanskrit, the name of Uttarakhand finds mention in the early Hindu scriptures as the combined region of Kedarkhand and Manaskhand. Uttarakhand was also the ancient Puranic term for the central stretch of the Indian Himalayas. Its peaks and valleys were well known in ancient times as the abode of gods and goddesses and source of the Ganges River. Today, it is often called "the Land of the Gods" (Dev Bhoomi) because of the presence of a multitude of Hindu pilgrimage spots.

The ancient history of Garhwal says that it had once been a part of the Mauryan Empire. The history of Garhwal began as a unified whole in the 15th century, when King Ajai Pal merged the 52 principalities of the Garhwal region. Garhwal remained a consolidated kingdom for about 300 years, with Srinagar as its capital. But during the British Period, the territories of Pauri and Dehradun went under the British. The two regions were given to the Britishers in return of their help during the Gurkha invasion in the 19th century. The history of Kumaon can be traced back to the Stone Age. Moreover, the early medieval history of Kumaon

started with the Katyuri dynasty that ruled from 7th to the 11th century. Under the Katyuri dynasty, as the ancient history of Uttarakhand suggests, art and architecture flourished tremendously. Many new architectural buildings and designs flourished during this period. However, like all kingdoms that fall after a period of time, Katyuris also lost to the Chands of Pithoragarh. The history of Uttarakhand bears witness to the many temples that were built under the Chands of Pithoragarh.

Geographically, Uttarakhand reveals that it is surrounded by Himachal Pradesh in the north-west and Uttar Pradesh in the south and shares its international borders with Nepal and China. The state is quite rich in natural resources. The well known Himalayan peaks of Nanda Devi, Kedarnath, Trishul, Bandarpunch and Mt Kamet and the important glaciers like Gangotri, Pindari, Milam and Khatling are situated in Uttarakhand. The Ganga, the Yamuna, Ramganga and Sharda are rivers contributing to the geography of this region. The state of Uttarakhand covers twelve prominent ecological zones of the country. The topography of Uttarakhand offers a wide range of landforms from hills and peak to cliffs and ridges. The topography of Uttarakhand boasts of many rich forests, glaciers, mountains peaks, and beautiful network of the mighty rivers.

Biodiversity of Uttarakhand is rich because of the close relationship between the religious, socio-cultural beliefs and conventions. The biodiversity of Uttarakhand includes the sacred groves that exhibit a rich wealth of flora and fauna. Biodiversity of Uttarakhand comprises of rare and threatened species of plants and animals. In the Garhwal region of Uttarakhand, we come across alpine meadows where different kinds of flower bloom in the spring time. This valley of flowers contains a multitude of flowers which is a wonderful sight to look at! And much more you will have in the state. Uttarakhand contains some of the most important and major rivers of India. The Ganga and the Yamuna have their sources in this state and comprise the most famous and major rivers of the country as a whole. They are supplied with water on a perennial basis by numerous lakes, glaciers and countless

streams in the area. Here in this unit we have look on the river running in the state and scope of the river sports.

8.2 OBJECTIVES

This unit mainly aims to provide you;

- Running River sports destination of State and country.
- About the rafting facilities in the state.
- About the precautions to keep while going for river running sports.

8.3 RIVER RUNNING

River running (practitioners use one word) is the essential - and some would say most artful - form of kayaking. Whereas its derivative forms (described below under the headings of Creeking, Slalom, Play boating and Squirt boating) have evolved in response to the challenges posed by river running, such as pushing the levels of difficulty or competing within its environs, river running, of its own right, is more about combining one's paddling abilities and navigational skills with the movements and environments of rivers themselves. Important to a river runner is the experience and expression of the river in its continuity rather than, say, a penchant for its punctuated "vertical" features (e.g. standing waves, play-holes and waterfalls). As for kayak design, a "pure" river running boat can be said to have "driving ability" - a blend of qualities that enables the paddler to make the most of the differential forces in the river's currents.

For example, instead of spinning or pivoting the boat to change its direction, a river runner will drive the boat in such a way as to make use of the river's surface features (e.g. waves, holes and eddy lines) thus conserving the boat's speed and momentum (this in particular contrast to slalom racing, where, in the attempt to negotiate certain kinds of slalom gates, the boater will pivot the boat to change its direction, and by so doing, diminish the boat's speed and momentum.) A principal design characteristic of river running kayaks (as well as for their closest cousin the

slalom boat) is their comparatively longer length and narrower breadth (generally not less than 285 cm in length or more than 63 cm in breadth). The longer length at the waterline not only helps to carry speed but the longer arcs thus created between stem and stern allow the boater to more efficiently and gracefully carve into, through and out of eddies and other currents. In other words we can say that river running means the sports carried on in the running water of the river.

Paddling with regard to watercraft is the act of manually propelling a boat using a paddle. The paddle, which consists of one or two blades joined to a shaft, is also used to steer the vessel. The paddle is not connected to the boat (unlike in rowing where the oar is connected to the boat). For study point of view we can divide it as follows:

a) Creeking: Creeking is perhaps best thought of as a subcategory of river running, involving very technical and difficult rapids, typically in the Grade / Class IV to VI range. While people will differ on the definition, creeking generally involves higher gradient (approaching or in excess of 100 ft per mi (19 m per km)), and is likely to include running ledges, slides, and waterfalls on relatively small and tight rivers, though some will allow for very large and big volume rivers in their definition.

Kayaks used for creeking usually have higher volume (more gallons or litres of displacement) and more rounded bow and stern, as these features provide an extra margin of safety' against the likelihood of pinning (getting a kayak wedged in such a way that it cannot be removed without a mechanical advantage system, such as between rocks and/or underwater), and will resurface more quickly and controllably when coming off larger drops. Creek boats usually have increased "rocker," or rise, fore and aft of the cockpit for manoeuvrability. Extreme racing is a competitive form of this aspect of whitewater kayaking, in which kayaker's race down steep sections and or generally dangerous sections of whitewater.

b) Slalom: Slalom is a technical competitive form of kayaking, and the only whitewater event to appear in the Olympic Games. Racers attempt to make their way from the top to the bottom of a designated section of river as fast as possible, while correctly negotiating gates (a series of double-poles suspended vertically over the river). There are usually 18-25 gates in a race which must be navigated in sequential order. Green gates must be negotiated in downstream direction, red gates in an upstream direction. The events are typically conducted on Grade / Class II to Grade / Class IV water, but the placement of the gates, and precision necessary to paddle them fast and "clean" (without touching a pole and adding 2 seconds to the total time), makes the moves much harder than the water's difficulty suggests. (Slalom has been described as performing class V moves with class III consequences.) Pro level slalom competitions have specific length (350 cm (140 in) for kayaks - new rules), width, and weight requirements for the boats, which will be made out of kevlar/fiberglass/carbon fibercomposites to be lightweight and have faster hull speed. Plastic whitewater kayaks can be used in citizen-level races.

c) Play boating: Playboating, also known as Freestyle or Rodeo, is a more gymnastic and artistic kind of kayaking. While the other varieties of kayaking generally involve going from Point A to Point B, playboaters often stay in one spot in the river (usually in a hole, pourover or on a wave) where they work with and against the dynamic forces of the river to perform a variety of maneuvers. These can include surfing, spinning, and various vertical moves (cartwheels, loops, blunts, pistol and donkey flips, and many others), spinning the boat on all possible axes of rotation. More recently, aerial moves have become accessible, where paddlers perform tricks having gained air from using the speed and bounce of the wave. Kayaks used for playboating generally have relatively low volume in the bow and stern, allowing the paddler to submerge the ends of the kayak with relative ease. Competitions for playboating or freestyle are sometimes called whitewater rodeo in the US, but more frequently just referred to as freestyle events in UK and Europe.

Some famous Playboaters are Eric Jackson, Stephen Wright, Peter Czonka, and James Bebbington.

d) Squirt boating: Squirt boating incorporates the use of low-volume boats to perform special moves in whitewater features. Squirt boating predates, and was critical to the foundation of, playboating. Squirt boats are often fairly long and flat, with low volume throughout the design. Because squirt boats are custom built to the paddlers' weight, inseam, and personal preference, they are constructed with composite materials instead of plastic. Many squirt moves are intended to submerge all or part of the craft and paddler, such as the "mystery move," in which both the boat and the paddler submerge completely into the river's flow for several seconds and up to half a minute.

8.4 RUNNING RIVERS OF HIMALAYA

The Himalaya is origin of Evergreen River like the Ganga and Yamuna and many other tributaries of these rivers. Our state Uttarakhand is very rich in this aspect. The main rivers of Himalayan region are as follows:

i) River Ganges or Ganga: Ganges river is a major river of the Indian subcontinent, associated in myth and reality with the land and people of India as well as neighboring countries like Bangladesh. Sources & Tributaries - The Gangotri Glacier, a vast expanse of ice five miles by fifteen, at the foothills of the Himalayas (14000 ft) in North Uttar Pradesh, is the source of Bhagirathi, which joins with Alaknanda (origins nearby) to form Ganga at the craggy canyon-carved town of Devprayag. Interestingly, the sources of Indus and the Brahmaputra are also geographically fairly close; the former goes through Himachal Pradesh and fans out through Punjab and Sind (Pakistan) into the Arabian Sea. The latter courses for most of its tremendous length under various names through Tibet/China, never far from the Nepal or Indian borders, and then takes a sharp turn near the northeastern tip of India, gathers momentum through Assam before joining the major stream of the

Ganga near Dacca in Bangladesh to become the mighty Padma, river of joy and sorrow for much of Bangladesh.

From Devprayag to the Bay of Bengal and the vast Sunder bans delta, the Ganga flows some 1550 miles, passing (and giving life to) some of the most populous cities of India, including Kanpur (2 million), Allah bad, Varanasi, Patna, and Calcutta (14 million). Dacca, the capital of Bangladesh is on a tributary of the Brahmaputra, just before it joins the Ganga to form Padma. A large number of tributaries join and flow from the Ganges to drain the Northern part of India and Bangladesh.

ii) River Yamuna: The Yamuna, which originates less than a hundred miles east of the Bhagirathi, flows parallel to the Ganga and a little to the south for most of its course before merging with the Ganga at the holy city of Allah bad, also known as Triveni Sangam, literally, Three-way Junction, the third river being the mythical Saraswati which is also supposed to be an underground river. New Delhi, capital of India, and Agra, site of the Taj Mahal, are two of the major cities on the Yamuna.

iii) River Brahmaputra: One of the great rivers of Asia, the Brahmaputra commences its 3,000-km journey to the Bay of Bengal from the slopes of Kailash in western Tibet. As Tibet's great river, the Tsangpo, transverses east across the high-altitude Tibetan plateau north of the Great Himalayan Range, carving out myriad channels and sandbanks on its way. As it tumbles from the Himalayan heights towards the plains of the subcontinent it twists back on itself, cutting a deep and still navigated gorge, until finally turning south it emerges in Arunachal Pradesh as the Dihong. Just beyond Pasighat, it meets the Dibang and Lohit where it finally becomes the Brahmaputra.

iv) River Teesta: Teesta River is a trans-Himalayan river flowing through Sikkim and is one of the most churning rivers in the Himalayas. It originates from the Cholamu Lake and flows south. It passes through West Bengal and joins the Brahmaputra River in Bangladesh. The total length of the river is about 315 km.

Teesta River is famous for river rafting. River Teesta of Sikkim extends the most challenging invitation to the rafters in the eastern Himalayan region.

v) River Beas: The Beas forms the valleys of Kullu and Kangra, famed for their beauty. But ironically, its source is an insignificant looking igloo like structure near Rohtang Pass in Pir Panjal range to the north of Kullu. The main thrust of this river is southward to Larji and then to the west. Where it enters Mandi district and further still into Kangra. On account of its snow-fed, perennial tributaries, its inflow increases greatly during the monsoons, sometimes resulting in floods. At the Pandoh, in Mandi district, the waters of the Beas have been diverted to the Sutlej through 53-km of tunnel, with the Pong Dam constructed on the Beas, for the purpose of increasing the hydroelectric power supply.

8.5 KAYAKING AND CANOEING

Whether it is the challenge of taming the white waters or the pleasure of gliding over calm waters on a lake, canoeing or kayaking can be thrilling and exciting adventure to any sports enthusiast..

Kayaking is just like backpacking on an off beaten path, except that this time your adventure is on the sea. This sport provides the best opportunity for sports lovers to come close to nature. Kayaking is the use of a kayak for moving across water.

Kayaking is differentiated from canoeing by the fact that a kayak has a closed cockpit and kayakers use a double bladed paddle and sit in a seat on the bottom of the boat with their legs extended out in front of them. Canoeists will either sit on an elevated bench seat or kneel directly on the bottom of the boat with two knees or one knee in the "high kneel" posture.

Rafting or whitewater rafting uses a raft to navigate a river or other bodies of water. This is usually done on whitewater or different degrees of rough water, in order to thrill and excite the raft passengers. The development of this activity as a

leisure sport has become popular since the mid-1970s. Rafting and white water rafting are recreational outdoor activities which use an inflatable raft to navigate a river or other body of water. This is often done on whitewater or different degrees of rough water, and generally represents a new and challenging environment for participants. Dealing with risk and the need for teamwork is often a part of the experience. The development of this activity as a leisure sport has become popular since the mid-1970s, evolving from individuals paddling 10 feet (3.0 m) rafts with double-bladed paddles to multi-person rafts propelled by single-bladed paddles and steered by a tour guide at the stern. It is considered an extreme sport, and can be fatal.

The International Rafting Federation (IRF) is the worldwide body which oversees all aspects of the sport. Whitewater kayaking is the sport of paddling a kayak on a moving body of water, typically a whitewater river. Whitewater kayaking can range from active, moving water, to demanding, extreme whitewater.

While canoeing presents quiet a unique combination of exploration. Besides keep a person fit, canoeing and kayaking are eco-friendly water sports. Canoes and kayaks are boats tapered at their ends so that they may cut through water easily. This unique feature makes them highly efficient on trying on most kind of water bodies. Canoes can accommodate atleast two people with their gear and is usually practiced on lakes and rivers, which have flat and still water.

On the other hand, Kayaks look like small fishing boat and are not a new thing in the Indian coastal sites, but they are fastly picking up as a favourite water sport in India. A Kayak can accommodate more than two people and can be done of both flat and white water. Of course, the beach is one of the best option to try out these kind of sports, but second best in the lines are the lakes and rivers of India. Gliding through the untamed waters of rivers such as teesta, is something that you would not experience any where else in this world.

Style of Kayaking: Canoes, kayaks, and rafts come in a variety of shapes and sizes. Buyers should select watercraft based on their experience, their budgets, and how they want to use them. Some are made specifically for one person, whereas others are designed to hold a group of people. Understanding the differences between canoes, kayaks, and rafts can help shoppers determine which one would best suit their needs.

i. Canoes: These popular boats are small, light, and usually very narrow. Canoes are propelled using single-bladed paddles. The pilot sits on supports or kneels in the hull of the boat. Canoes are usually open at the top, but slalom canoes are closed like kayaks.

Canoes are famous for their instability (which can be fun), and good communication is needed if two people are piloting a canoe together. Round-bottom canoes are more likely to tip, but they are more resistant to capsizing. Flat-bottom canoes are generally more stable, until the riders pass a tilt threshold, in which case they capsize fairly easily. Popular canoes include Grumman canoes, Wenonah canoes, and Coleman canoes.

ii. Kayaks: Kayaks are somewhat smaller than canoes and are covered with a deck. The paddler sits in a hole in the center of the kayak and pilots it with a double-bladed paddle. A spray skirt prevents the inside of the kayak from getting wet. Skilled paddlers can even completely capsize and then right the kayak. Kayaks are fairly stable because the paddler is positioned at a lower center of gravity than in the case of a canoe. Most recreational kayaks are between 9 and 14 feet long. Popular kayaks include Perception kayaks, Necky kayaks, and Old Town kayaks.

iii. Rafts: Rafts differ from canoes and kayaks because they do not have a hull. Rafts float due to their buoyancy, not by the displacement of water as is the case with canoes and kayaks. Rafts are mainly used for recreation and

navigating whitewater rapids. Most rafts are paddled with a single-bladed paddle.

Check Your Progress - 1

1. Where is Origin of The Ganga?

Ans.....

2. Where do the Katyuri dynasties ruled?

Ans.....

3. Where do Alknanda and Bhagirathi River meet?

Ans.....

8.6 RAFTING

Rafting, the high-adrenaline sport of navigating a river in an inflatable raft, involves several levels of difficulty, depending on how choppy the river is. These 'grades' of difficulty are arrived at according to the presence of rapids, which evolve due to sudden plunges in the river's height, and also because of rocks – small or large – that may be lurking in the waters. Rafting is a challenging but tremendously fun activity – just remember to keep the instructor's safety tips in mind! White-water (rapids) does invoke fear but river-running done properly – under professional guidance, with the right training, using the appropriate equipment, taking all safety precautions, and by following a set of international safety and ecological norms – can be an extremely safe, enjoyable and exciting soft-adventure sport. The sport's popularity is probably due to the fact that almost anyone, including non-swimmers and those with no prior experience can, go rafting. All it takes is 15 minutes of instructions and you can have the time of your life – riding the waves, getting splashed and enjoying the peace and tranquillity of the river. Boasting world-class rafting potential, cultural and geographical diversity, easy access to most rivers, a host of international-standard river-running outfitters (with state-of-the-art equipment), an ethos steeped in hospitality, and – conveniently – no permit

requirements for river running (except in the 'inner line', close to the border areas), India is emerging as 'the river-running destination' of the world. Rafting is certainly well on its way to becoming the most popular adventure sport in the country, and India a Shangri La for river-runners. With myriad rivers gushing through its heart, the riverine flora and fauna and the region's rich and ancient culture, the Indian Himalayas make up an exciting destination for hard-core rafters.

It was the "Ocean to Sky" expedition of 1977 - led by Sir Edmund Hillary and organized by Capt. M.S. Kohli - which evoked tremendous interest nationally, and quite a flutter abroad, about the potential of river sports in India. The jet-boat expedition started in the Bay of Bengal, going up the River Ganges and on towards Nandprayag on the River Alaknanda. In 1984, the Uttar Ganga rafting expedition led by Ken Warren and organized by A.C. Kohli, rafted over 300km on the Alaknanda, Bhagirathi and Ganga rivers. This marked the first time that Indians had actively participated in a river-rafting expedition - Shaukat Sikand, Yousuf Zaheer, Akshay Kumar, Pawan Sher Singh and Ajeet Bajaj were part of the first pool of Indian river-runners. Glen Upperman, an American rafter, stayed back after the expedition and trained the first batch of Indian rafters in oar-rafting techniques. The following year, two Canadian rafters, Mark Daniel and Ben Webster, trained Indian rafters in paddle-rafting techniques and kayaking. The age of river exploration in India took off when local river-runners logged enough experience to join rafting expeditions, including the first descent of the Sutlej from Rampur to Tattapani below Shimla (1985); the first descent of the Teesta in Sikkim and West Bengal (1986); and the first descent of the Sarda in Kumaon, Uttarakhand (1987).

The Indian Armed Forces have also played a pivotal role in the development of river- running in India, organizing training courses and leading expeditions. Although many rivers in India have been explored, with some being rafted commercially, this is only the tip of the proverbial iceberg. To quote Peter Knowles (chairman, British Canoe Union Expeditions committee), "There is still probably

more scope in India for 'first descents' and exploratory river-running than in any other Himalayan country." Along the entire expanse of the culturally diverse Indian Himalayas – more than 3000km long and between 150km and 300km wide – there are rivers still awaiting descent. Furthermore, there's tremendous scope for river exploration in the states of the northeast and in South India.

Points to remember while rafting

1. Always wear your life jacket while on the river. The life jacket should fit snugly. Do always check with your guide before you remove your life jacket even on a calm section.
2. Helmets are more to protect you from the paddles of your enthusiastic rafting companions, and the oars/frame on a raft (in case of a flip on an oar rig), and very rarely as protection against the rocks on a river.
3. Even if you go only to look at a rapid, keep your life jacket and helmet on. It is all too easy to slip into the rapid. Even if you fall while scrambling on the rocks above the rapid, your safety gear will protect you.
4. Do not tie/wrap any rope around your wrists, arms, legs or neck! This can be dangerous in case of a flip, or if you fall out.
5. Do not place your feet in the safety line outside the raft while paddling. You are likely to get hurt in case you hit a boulder.
6. In case the raft is about to hit a boulder, do not try and stop the two-ton momentum of the raft with your lightweight paddle, foot or hands – you are likely to get hurt. Let the raft bounce off the rocks – it is a lot easier (and cheaper too!) to repair rafts!
7. Do stop water fights and other fun activities above rapids and let your guide concentrate on his line above the bigger rapids. Do ensure that your personal safety gear – lifejackets and helmets – fit snugly and that your feet are well braced-in under the tubes or in foot cups, above a big rapid.
8. Body-surfing is trying to negotiate a rapid without a raft. You are allowed to do

this only on easy rapids and on sections with not too many rocks. Once you get comfortable doing it, body-surfing is a whole lot of fun.

Once in the water, lie down on your back with your feet pointed downstream, your toes just sticking out of the water. A few tips to remember:

- a. Do not jump out till you have permission from your river guide.
- b. Not all rapids are safe for body-surfing and if you do jump out without permission remember you may well be walking 'funny' for a few days!
- c. Never dive into the river from the raft. Always go in feet first since there can be rocks below the surface that are not visible.
- d. Breathe as you go down a wave and stop breathing as you are going up and under the wave.
- e. You can gently push up with your hands as you go up the crest of the wave – this allows you to gasp for breath a fraction longer!f. Body-surfing rapids is not recommended for non-swimmers.

9. If you do fall off a raft and are forced to body-surf, do remember the following:

- a. Do not panic – relax.
- b. As soon as you fall off the raft, your life jacket will immediately bring you to the surface.
- c. There is a ninety per cent possibility that you will surface right next to the raft. Grab hold of the raft. Remember the raft is your biggest life jacket on the river.
- d. If you are close to the raft (a metre or two away) and a swimmer, swim to the raft.
- e. If you are away from the raft, adopt the white-water position (also referred to as the white-water missionary position!): lie on your back with your feet pointed downstream.
- f. Do not try and stand up in a rapid since this can lead to a foot entrapment in a rock or other obstacles underwater.

g. Hold on to your paddle. You will be fairly useless without your paddle in the raft and your team is likely to throw you back into the river if you come back in without your paddle! You can use your paddle to extend your reach and get help. Always give the grip end of the paddle to someone trying to help you, or someone you are trying to help.

h. Listen to your guide, even though it may be contrary to your instinct. If your guide points in any direction, swim in that direction. Your guides always point towards safety.

i. Watch out for the rescue throw bag your guide is likely to throw at you. Grab hold of the rope sticking out of the bag and not the bag itself. Do not wrap the rope around your wrist or neck.

Put it over your shoulder with your face pointing away from the direction you are being pulled since this creates an air pocket (this will be explained to you before you go rafting during the safety briefing), and get pulled back into the raft.

j. If any of your fellow rafters have fallen off the raft, pull them back into the raft from the top of their life jackets (shoulder section) only.

k. Smile. The most important thing to do on a river – enjoy yourself!

Points to remember after rafting

There have been a number of fatal accidents in India involving swimmers camping after a rafting trip. A few dos and don'ts for swimming in the river:

1. Never go out swimming alone in the river – always take a companion along.
2. Inform your guide and swim in sight of your camp.
3. Even if you are a swimming champion and a budding Mark Spitz, DO NOT swim in the river without a trained lifeguard watching over you.
4. If you're swimming in the river, always keep a life jacket on. There can be cross currents, and since most rafting rivers in India are cold glacial melt rivers, you

can easily get tired or even get cramp.

5. Do not swim in the river immediately after a meal.
6. Never go out for a swim after drinking alcohol.
7. Do not go for a swim after dark.
8. Be especially careful in large/mixed groups since high testosterone levels in some males can instantly make them strong swimmers – even if they are weak swimmers.

8.7 FAMOUS PLACES OF RAFTING IN INDIA

There are only a few things that appeal to adventure enthusiasts more than the thrill of riding on the wild waters of untamed rivers, or white water rafting as it is called. The mighty rivers flowing down from the heights of the Himalayas make India one of the world's best places for adventure. While the best of rafting options lie north, in the Himalayan waters, South, West and East has also seen recently the development of the sport. Here in this unit we bring you list of few famous places to go for rafting in India.

1. Rishikesh, Uttarakhand: The Ganga at Rishikesh is one of the world's best rivers to raft. A 16 km stretch from Shivpuri to Lakshman Jhula in Rishikesh, rapids range from grade 1 to grade 4. This stretch, rich with whirlpools and rapids, has seen the likes of Brad Pitt come for a rafting adventure. There are as many as 13 rapids with curious names like *Return To Sender*, *Roller Coaster*, *Three Blind Mice*, *Double Trouble*, *Tee Off* and *Golf Course*. An excellent combination of chilled and beautiful white sand river beaches against the scenic Kumaon Mountains, the best season to go there is from September to June. Other runs here are – Chandrapuri-Rudraprayag (26 km, higher grades) on the Mandakini; Matli-Dunda (12 km, mixture of grades), Jangla-Jhala (20 km, a mixture of grades), Harsil-Uttarkashi, Dharasu-Chham (12 km, a mixture of grades) on the Bhagirathi.

2. Zanskar: Rafting is held between Padum and Zimo regions in the Zanskar river gorge at the height of 12000 feet of the sea level. Walls of mountains rise to hundreds of feet on both sides. The rafting route ends as the river merges with the Indus. The route passes through some very rough terrains and remote places in Ladakh. The river is rated as grade IV. Best time to go is July to August as the river freezes during winters.

3. River Indus on Ladakh, Jammu & Kashmir: Amidst deep gorges, towering snow-capped peaks, hilltop monasteries, hillside villages, Ladakh offers a range of rafting options on the Indus and its major tributaries. The rafting season begins in the months of June upto late August on the river Indus when the water levels are high. Tamer in comparison to the more rugged water flow of the river in Nepal, rafting is more commonly done from (Phey to Sasphol) Spitok to the Indus-Zanskar confluence at Nimmu, and from Nimmu to the ancient temple complex at Alchi, graded an average of 2-3. The more challenging route lies between Alchi and Khalsi, which takes in the kilometre long series of rapids at Nurla.

4. Bhagirathi river, Uttarakhand: Through gorges, charming villages and white sandy beaches, the Bhagirathi offers 150 kms of pure white water rafting thrill. The raft run is down the lower Bhagirathi gorge and is graded between levels 3 and 4. Rapids like "Elephant rock", "The Chute", "Sharp S", "Confluence rapids" are encountered till Bhagirathi's confluence with the Alaknanda at Devprayag to form the Ganga. Further ahead are the best rapids of the Ganga, 'Daniel Dip' and 'The Wall'. The best season for a rafting adventure falls between October and mid-May.

5. Teesta river, Sikkim and Darjeeling: The rugged Teesta River, the main river of Sikkim, Darjeeling, and Kalimpong Hill Region, with a series of rapids with varying intensity, has been rated at Grade 4. The turbulent Rangit, a tributary of the Teesta, with its multi-dimensional rapids, it offers a challenge to more experienced rafters. In Teesta rafting is confined to the winter months, between October and

April. Spring or early summer is ideal for river rafting. Paddle rafting and oar rafting can be done in the Teesta River.

6. Brahmaputra River Rafting Expedition, Arunachal Pradesh: The Brahmaputra River, both mystifying and ferocious, finds its way down the Tibet region by cutting Greater Himalayas and then enters Arunachal Pradesh from where the expedition initiates. A week long run in the river of Brahmaputra takes the rafters through remote hill sides with a few tribal settlements in thick rainforests. The expedition starts from Tuting in Arunachal Pradesh on the Subansari River, the primary tributary of the Brahmaputra, and ends after 180 kms of rafting at Pasighat. The trip also gives an excellent exposure to remarkable sceneries and unparalleled locations making this river's white water rafting amongst premier expedition in India. The rafting is rated at Level IV. What makes it doubly interesting is the area has virgin beauty, Arunachal Pradesh being closed for tourism until recent days. The best rafting season for Brahmaputra is November to March.

7. Kali/Sharda River Rafting Expedition, Uttarakhand: Kali (also known as Sharda) in India while Mahakali in Nepal, originates in the Pithorgarh district of Uttarakhand and forms a natural eastern boundary between India and Nepal. Passing through verdant jungles the trip offers a view of various wild animals, and birds, while rafting through the pristine, and deserted environment. Put-in point for rafting varies according to the season, starting at Jauljibi / Jhulaghat for pre-snowmelt season (March / April) and Pancheswar for post-snowmelt season (May / June or Mid-Sept / Oct / Nov).

Pancheswar is also a famous fishing site for the mighty Mahseer and a rafting expedition could be combined with an angling trip.

8. Tons in Garhwal, Uttarakhand: The Tons River flows through Garhwal, the western part of the Himalayan state of Uttarakhand. The biggest tributary of the Yamuna, the Tons River is said to have more water and wrath than the Yamuna itself. The average rating being between grade III, IV and it also has

some grade V rapids. It is considered as one of the most challenging white water river rafting expeditions in the country today.

9. Kolad, Maharashtra: Kundalika, the fastest river of the South, at Kolad, is an excellent rafting destination South of the Himalayas. Situated amidst the magnificent Sahyadris, the almost 15-kilometre stretch of rapids along this river provides ample opportunities for an exciting experience. Rapids range between Class III & IV. The best months for rafting are in the months of monsoon when the water levels are high.

10. Barapole in Coorg, Karnataka: River Barapole in Coorg, Dakshina Kannada, specially the upper river, provides excellent rafting opportunities. Situated in the Western Ghats edging along the Deccan Plateau, the grades range between 2 and 4. There are approximately 4 to 5 rapids in the regular upper section & about 6 to 7 rapids in the lower section, these rapids depending on water levels are between grade 2 to 3 or 4. The best season to raft is in the monsoon and post-monsoon months of June to September. Dandeli is yet another popular white water rafting spot in Karnataka that offers both long and short runs along the river.

Check Your Progress - 2

4. What is IRF?

Ans.....

5. Who led the 'Ocean to sky' expedition of 1977?

Ans.....

6. Who organized the 'Ocean to sky' expedition of 1977?

Ans.....

8.8 RIVER RAFTING IN UTTARAKHAND

The Indian sub-continent perhaps had the largest network of rivers in the world. Of all the rivers, Ganga is the most beautiful river. It is the most suitable river for white water rafting. The Himalaya River Rafting Tour is a very short river rafting tour.

Rafting on its waters will be a certainly an unusual experience for us. In this tour we will have river rafting in Deoprayag where the two major rivers - Alakananda and Bhagirathi merge to form the holy river Ganges and also in Kaudiyala and Shivpuri. The most popular rafting sites include Ladakh in Jammu & Kashmir, the Garhwal Himalayas in Uttarakhand, the Beas River of Himachal Pradesh and Teesta River in Sikkim. The main river is include Ganges, Brahmaputra, Teesta, Beas, Zanskar.

Today Rishikesh ,apart from known world wide as Yoga city capital of India where beatles have visited once and fallen in love with this place rishikesh is also the entrance town to mighty himalayas and now it has come up as an week end destination offering wide range of adventure activities, This place has every adventure activity to offer to everyone be it River rafting in the Ganges, Kayaking, Short treks, Hiking, Biking Trails, Rock climbing, Rapelling, Bunjee Jumping, Paint ball activities, jungle camping, beach camping...or just a visit to the town to Ram Jhoola, Laxman jhoola (suspension bridges linking the town over river Ganges) Swarg ashram, Parmarth Niketan, Neer gaddu water fall, Neel kanth Temple Triveni ghat and many ashrams & Temples. There are numerous home restaurants and roof top cafe's which serve every cuisine you can think of. Israeli, Italian, Continental, you name and you will get it. This is perfect destination for a little break from summers or to take your Heavy dose of long lasting energy without caffeine. Rishikesh have couple of Rafting Campsites by the river/ beach camps as we move upstream on highway 58. The regions famous for beach camps are Bhramपुरi , Shivpuri, Byasi ,Marine Drive and Kaudiyala. Bhramपुरi is 12 kms from rishikesh town; Shivpuri is 16 Kms. Bayasi and Marine Drive beaches are 24 Kms from Rishikesh.

River Rafting is offered from all these places and most preferred rafting section is from shivpuri downwords We offer you specialized rafting and carefully picked Camping options in all the regions with exclusive and private beach camps

with thorough trained and well mannered staff, which you won't find everywhere. All our camps offer rafting with professional gear and equipment under trained and licensed rafting guides.

Besides rafting one could kayak on a placid stretch near the camp or opt for hike to a beautiful water fall for one hour. Or even go for longer hikes (5-6hrs) in the surrounding hills to view the snow covered Greater Himalayan Range. Facilities are available for Beach games like volley ball, Frisbee, cricket with soft ball.

A day in camp is rounded off with a evening campfire and a leisurely evening with fellow rafters. In the state we have latest rafts and accessories used by professionals globally. With the country's most experienced guiding team, most of our river guides and camp staff is working with us since the beginning of the company. All of our river guides & camp staff have done rescue courses and do refresher courses every year.

So we can say that our state not only has the best opportunities to rafting but also the state government is trying their best to facilitate the visitors. There are more places in Uttarakhand still to explore which are also useful for rafting. No doubt in near future the river rafting will play vital role in the economy of the state.

8.9 SUMMARY

Uttarakhand is paradise for different types of adventure activities. River Rafting, Trekking, Skiing, etc. make Uttarakhand one of the most demanded destination for adventure.

The state of Uttarakhand where whitewater canoeing can be combined with moderate hiking and a naturalist holiday in the forest. For whitewater kayaking, the

suitable areas are Rishikesh, Dakpathar and the Ramganga in Corbett National Park.

For the ones who seek a little more adventure, kayaking can be a good option.

If you are looking to kayak between glaciers, ride the rapids, or spend a lazy afternoon drifting down a river, boating is a great outdoor activity. The state Uttarakhand is best destination for you.

8.10 GLOSSARY

- **White water:** Turbulent or frothy water, as in rapids or surf.
Rapids: An extremely fast-moving part of a river, caused by a steep descent or a rock in the riverbed. Often used in the plural.
Put in: The point where the rafts are put into the river for starting the rafting trip.
- **Take out:** The point where rafts are taken out after rafting.
- **Eddies:** Small whirlpools.
- **Body-surfing:** Riding a river rapid with just a life jacket on.
- **Wet suits:** A protective garment used for water-sports. These suits help preserve body heat by trapping a layer of water against the skin; this water is consequently warmed by body heat and acts as an insulator.
- **Oar rafting:** In an oar raft, a metal frame is strapped on to the raft and the guide sits on a seat in the middle. An oar/paddle combination works well on some rivers where the guide still has control and maneuverability and is assisted by paddle power.
- **Paddle rafting:** Paddle rafting is more active and participative than oar rafting. In a paddle raft, all rafters paddle to the command of the guide while in an oar raft, the guide does all the work – the crew helps out by bailing water (in a non-self-bailing raft) and by high siding (a technique for weighing down the high side of a raft in big waves)
- **Punter:** An inexperienced rafter

8.11 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. Gomukh
- 2, Kumaun
3. Devprayag
4. International Rafting federation
5. Edmund Hillary
6. Capt. M.S.Kohli

8.12 REFERENCES

1. Kandari, O. P., & Gusain, O. P. (Eds.). (2001). Garhwal Himalaya : Nature, Culture & Society. Srinagar, Garhwal: Transmedia.
2. Pande, B. D. (1993). History of Kumaun: English version of "Kumaun ka itihash". Almora, U.P., India: Shyam Prakashan: Shree Almora Book Depot.
3. Mason, Maggie (1998-08-23). "Whitewater rafting Booms in West Virginia". Associated Press (Thurmond, WV).
4. Wittmann, Laura (2006-02-05). "Whitewater Is Safer Than You Think". American Whitewater.
5. Heggie, Travis W.; Dennis John Caine (2012). Epidemiology of Injury in Adventure and Extreme Sports. Karger Medical and Scientific Publishers. ISBN 9783318021646.
6. Whisman, S A; S J Hollenhorst (1999-01). "Injuries in commercial whitewater rafting". Clinical journal of sport medicine: official journal of the Canadian Academy of Sport Medicine 9 (1): 18-23. ISSN 1050-642X. PMID 10336047

8.13 TERMINAL AND MODEL QUESTIONS

Long Questions

1. Write an essay on ten best places of Rafting in India.
2. Throw light on the famous destination of River Rafting in Uttarakhand.
3. What is River Running? Write types of river sports.

Short Questions

1. What is Kayaking?
2. What is padding?
3. What do you mean by Rafting?
4. Write short notes;
 - a. River Running
 - b. Squirt Boating
 - c. The Ganga
 - d. Canoeing

Unit-9

Parks, Sanctuaries and Wildlife Tourism

Structure:

- 9.1 Introduction
- 9.2 Objectives
- 9.3 Wildlife of Himalayas
- 9.4 Wildlife in Uttarakhand
- 9.5 National Parks, Sanctuaries of Garhwal
- 9.6 National Parks, Sanctuaries of Kumaun
 - 9.6.1 Askot Sanctuary

9.6.2 Binsar Sanctuary

9.6.3 Corbett National Park

9.7 Wildlife Tourism

9.8 Wildlife Ecotourism in Uttarakhand

9.9 Summary

9.10 Glossary

9.11 Answer to Check your Progress

9.12 References

9.13 Terminal and Model Questions

9.1 INTRODUCTION

Formerly Uttarakhand is a state in the northern part of India. It is often referred to as the "Land of the Gods" due to the many holy Hindu temples and pilgrimage centers found throughout the state. Uttarakhand is known for its natural beauty of the Himalayas, the Bhabhar and the Terai. On 9 November 2000, this 27th state of the Republic of India was carved out of the Himalayan and adjoining northwestern districts of Uttar Pradesh.^[4] It borders the Tibet Autonomous Region on the north; the Mahakali Zone of the Far-Western Region, Nepal on the

east; and the Indian states of Uttar Pradesh to the south and Himachal Pradesh to the northwest. The state is divided into two divisions, Garhwal and Kumaon, with a total of 13 districts. Uttarakhand has a great diversity of flora and fauna. It has a recorded forest area of 34651 km² which constitutes 65% of the total area of the state.

Uttarakhand is home to rare species of plants and animals, many of which are protected by sanctuaries and reserves. National parks in Uttarakhand include the Jim Corbett National Park (the oldest national park of India) at Ramnagar in Nainital District, and Valley of Flowers National Park and Nanda Devi National Park in Chamoli District, which together are a UNESCO World Heritage Site. A number of plant species in the valley are internationally threatened, including several that have not been recorded from elsewhere in Uttarakhand. Rajaji National Park in Haridwar District and Govind Pashu Vihar National Park and Sanctuary and Gangotri National Park in Uttarkashi District are some other protected areas in the state.

9.2 OBJECTIVES

Uttarakhand the state having more than 65% of total area under the forest and hence very rich in flora and fauna. This unit aims:

- To enrich your knowledge of rich natural diversity of your state.
- To make you aware about parks and sanctuaries of state.
- To establish your relation with the wildlife tourism
- Economic benefits of wildlife tourism.

9.3 WILDLIFE OF HIMALAYAS

The Himalayas are the world's longest, highest mountains. One third of all mountain animals live here. The range is home to many endangered species. The Himalayan mountain range is over 1,500 miles long and 250 miles wide and includes most of Nepal and Bhutan, south Tibet, and the extreme north of India. It is divided into three zones: the Greater, Lesser, and outer Himalayas. Since the range is so long

with so many varied climates, the wildlife of the Himalayas is remarkably diverse. The Himalayan region displays great variety in flora and fauna. It is also where rare medicinal herbs are said to grow. In the Terai - the Himalayan foothills, there are luxuriant tropical forests of Sal, Teak and Shisham. As one climbs, one encounters a variety of Chir (Pine), Oak, Deodar, Fir, Rhododendron, Birch and Juniper. At higher altitudes the Juniper becomes a bush. The Himalayas were created about 70 million years ago when two continental plates collided, pushing up the massive mountain range where they met. In this way India and Eurasia were joined together, which accounts for the wide variety of wildlife found here. Species from Asia, Africa, and the Mediterranean all converged here. Even today, various species of the eastern Himalayas have a west Chinese influence, while the western range has Europe Mediterranean elements. Fossil records show that animals such as the giraffe and the hippo once lived here.

A) Himalayan Vegetation: Four different types of vegetation live in the Himalayas: tropical, subtropical, temperate, and alpine. The foothills of the Outer Himalayas are blanketed in dense tropical rain forests of bamboo, oak, and chestnut. Further west, as the altitude increases, the forest thins, and evergreen, cedars, pines, and firs become the dominant species. In the alpine zone, which begins at about 12,000 feet, grows great amounts of moist vegetation, including juniper and rhododendron. The domestic yak supplies rural nomads in Tibet with meat and hides. Its also serves as a pack animal. The male monal or Impeyon pheasant has iridescent, multicolored plumage that he displays when courting his mate. This national bird of Nepal is widely hunted for sport. It is difficult to imagine today that these Himalayan slopes were densely wooded less than a century ago. While Himalayan forests are not as lush as the rain-fed South Indian forests, they do attain an impressive magnificence in the unspoilt upper regions.

B) Insects of Himalayas: The forests of the Himalayan foothills are an ideal home for insects, including bumblebees and crane flies. Higher up the slopes, where the

nights are colder, many insect species have dark bodies to absorb as much heat as possible. Many butterflies live at surprisingly high altitudes: Apollo's, blues, Vanessas, and papilios are common up to 14,000 feet. Even higher than this are other tiny insects. No one is sure how they survive at such altitudes; they likely feed on pollen, seeds, and other organic debris swept upward by drafts.

C) Himalayan Mammals: More sheep species live in the Himalayas than in any other mountain range in the world. They include the Marco Polo sheep, which, because of the market for its long, spiraling horns, has been hunted almost to extinction. The largest wild sheep in the world, the great Tibetan sheep, also live here. They can withstand extreme temperatures ranging from scorching summers to freezing winters.

Three species of mountain goat live in the Himalayas: the Ibex, the markhor, and the wild goat. Three species of goat antelope live here too. Taken is the national animal of Bhutan. The massive yak is the largest animal of the mountains, and one of the highest dwellings animals in the world. Its long shaggy coat enables it to inhabit the coldest areas of the Himalayas.

The brown bear and the Himalayan black bear scavenge mammal carcasses, although they also eat fruit. One of the rarest bears in the world, the Tibetan blue bear, also lives here. Cats and dogs live in the Himalayas: the wolf, the wild dog, and the hill fox are common. Among the cats are: the tiger and leopard, as well as the jungle cat, lynx, and Pallas cat. The beautiful snow leopard rangers throughout the Himalayas' its prey consists of wild sheep and goats.

D) Endangered Himalayas: The Himalayan mountain range is one of the most endangered environments in the world. Mankind is gradually encroaching on the wilderness, building, polluting, and destroying.

Although steps are now being taken to preserve this important habitat, it is a case of too little, too late. the elusive snow leopard has a beautiful, thick coat that is soft gray on top, paling to a pure white underside. This has made it a target for

hunters, and poachers; despite the species being protected, several are killed each year.

The musk deer used to be common in the Himalayas. Musk from the males scent gland is in demand from perfume manufacturers. Consequently, the species is in danger of Extinction, despite protection with preserves. Other endangered Himalayan species include the brown bear, Tibetan blue bear, red panda, and black necked crane. The Marco Polo sheep, a rare subspecies of the argali, a sheep of the Himalayan plateaus, is widely hunted despite protection. Secluded valleys still preserve an unspoiled way of life for villagers and wildlife. The Chinese were the first to use the musk deer's scent in perfume. This deer is now very rare in the wild.

Check Your Progress - 1

1. What percentage of Uttarakhand is under the forest?

Ans.....

2. Name the state bird of Uttarakhand.

Ans.....

3. Name the state animal of state.

Ans.....

4. The flying squirrels largely found in Yamuna Forest Division is locally called?

Ans.....

5. The musk deer is mainly found above the height of

Ans.....

6. Name the only snake found above the height of 2400meter.

Ans.....

9.4 WILD LIFE IN UTTARAKHAND

Watching animals in the cage at an anonymous zoo is an entirely different and unrealistic experience in comparison with that of wildlife sanctuary or national park. Stop cheering yourself by looking at the helpless animals in a zoo and observe the

real life struggle of animals in a wildlife sanctuary. Do you know Uttarakhand hosts India's oldest National park? There are 6 national parks and 4 wildlife sanctuaries in Uttarakhand where you can capture the indisputable expressions of various animals and birds. Wake up with chirping of birds in Uttarakhand rather than the maddening crowds of the city. If you are an avid nature lover, photographer, traveler, adventurer or wildlife lover then Uttarakhand is the place where you will meet all your needs. arhwal and Kumaun Himalayas has some famous national parks and sanctuaries. All of them have been bestowed by nature with its bounty.

9.5 NATIONAL PARKS, SANCTUARIES OF GARHWAL

Wild life sanctuaries are the major attractions for tourists and pilgrims visiting Uttarakhand. At present, the following sanctuaries are being maintained and are under development. The following are situated in the Garhwal region:

1. Govind (Pashu Vihar) Wild Life Sanctuary: The Govind Wildlife Sanctuary is located between 35°55' and 31°17' 30" latitude and 77°47' 30" and 78°37' 30" longitudes at Purola tehsil, Uttarkashi district of Garhwal in the state of Uttarakhand. It was established on 1st of March 1955. It spreads over an area of 953 sq km. The sanctuary forms the upper catchments of the Tons River in the upper reaches of its area. Thus the area has a significant value as a major watershed for river Yamuna.

The sanctuary has a rich forest cover and the neighboring forest divisions help in maintaining genetic diversity in the forest. The area is very rich source of some of the medicinal plants, many of which are the important life saving drugs. The area provides a natural habitat to a lot of endangered animals. It has snowclad peaks and glaciers including mountains like Swarg Rohini, Black Peak and Bandarpunch. The popular destination for the trekkers is Har-ki-dun, which is famous for its emerald greenery.

The Snow Leopard inhabits the inner Himalayas above the altitude of 3500 m. The Government of India launched the Snow Leopard Project in its Eighth Plan. The

Govind Wildlife Sanctuary was identified as one of sites of the Snow Leopard in the Himalayas. The upper reaches of the sanctuary are the natural habitat of the Snow Leopard and were intentionally notified as a National Park. The park is home to more than 15 species of mammals and 150 species of birds. The important mammals are Bharal, Black Bear, Brown Bear, Common Leopard, Himalayan Thar, Musk Deer, Serow and Snow Leopard. The endangered birds found in the area are Bearded Vulture, Black Eagle, Himalayan Snow Cock, Golden Eagle, Monal Pheasant, Koklas Pheasant, Steppe Eagle and Western Tragopan. Other important bird found here are Buntings, Bulbuls, Cuckoos, Finches, Minivets, Owls, Pigeons, Parakeets, Thrushes, Tits and Warblers.

2. Kedarnath Sanctuary: The Sanctuary established in the year 1972. Kedarnath Sanctuary lies broadly at 967 sq km in the land of gods Garhwal. In the wasteland of this sanctuary, animals like snow leopard, snow cock, tahr, musk deer, leopard and serow can be seen along with many species of birds. To study the details of the musk deer a project funded by WWF was undertaken between 1978 -1980. The best season to visit this Sanctuary is from April to June and again from September to November.

3. Nanda Devi Sanctuary: Nanda Devi Sanctuary is situated in Chamoli district. It lies just next to the Nanda Devi peak. It was established in 1980. The first men to have reached this Sanctuary, while yet in its perfect form, were the British mountaineers Eric Shipton and Bill Tillman. The area had largely remained peaceful until then, except for Tillman's successful attempt on Nanda Devi in 1936. The present sanctuary came into existence in 1939. There are no roads available and the area is unreachable. The only way to reach this sanctuary is to drive from Joshimath 25 km by road upto Lata and then 51 km trekking up to the sanctuary. Fauna includes Snow leopard, Himalayan Bear, Musk deer and Pheasant. The best season to visit is from April to May. Nanda Devi Sanctuary covers an area of 630 sq km.

The park has been declared a World Heritage Site by UNESCO and in its vicinity are the Valley of Flowers, Badrinath Temple, and Hemkund Sahib. Though the park was notified only in 1982, it has a long history. W.W. Garden was the first person to reach this region in 1883, but his expedition to the Nanda Devi Peak failed to create any impact. In 1936, Tilman and N.E. Odell scaled the Nanda Devi and opened its vista for others to follow.

4. Rajaji National Park: Uttarakhand: Rajaji National Park in the year 1983 after the famous freedom fighter Late Sri C. Rajgopalachari, popularly known as Rajaji. Uttarakhand Forest Development Corporation takes you on a tour to Rajaji National Park and acquaints you with the wildlife of the region. Surrounded by mountains, Dehradun endures as a perfect retreat with beautiful spots for picnics and excursions. Its pleasant climate adds further to its charm and makes it an attractive tourist destination. Established in 1966 on the edge of the Dehradun valley is Rajaji National Park, covering an area of approx 820 sq. kms.

The Rajaji National Park is rich in faunal wealth because of the varied types of ecological niches existing in the reserve. The main groups occur are birds, mammals & reptiles snakes and lizards, amphibians (frogs & toads) and fishes, and chiefly the invertebrate groups are, the scorpions, centipedes, Odonata (dragon & damselflies), hymenoptera (wasps, bees, etc.) Isoptera (termites) and lepidoptera, which comprises more than 60 species. Our National bird Peacock is found here in abundance. The smaller carnivores as co-predators are leopard cat, jungle cat, civet cat and yellow-throated martin. Besides, other mammals like hyena, jackal and Bengal fox are not an uncommon sight and work as scavengers in the park. 315 birds species are reported to occur in the park. Birds like ducks, teals, cormorants, egrets, lapwing, pond herons, peafowl, jungle fowl, various species of partridges and pheasants, drongo, crows, owlets and nightjars, birds of prey, etc, are quite common. Twenty-eight species of snakes, 12 species of turtles & tortoises and 9 species of lizards among Reptilia are being recorded from the park.

The wildlife here includes elephant, tiger, panther, bear, chital, sambar, wild bear, kakar, python, i monitor lizard and a large variety of avian fauna. You find many opportunities of viewing these animals in their natural habitat here. Inhabiting these dense green jungles are an impressive array of creatures- furred and feathered, docile and dangerous. Besides that, the rivers which flow through the park harbor fish such as trout and mahseer.

5. Valley of Flowers National Park: Uttarakhand: The famous Valley of Flowers with the largest concentration of various species of wild flowers is off the Rishikesh-Badrinath road, 16 km from Govindghat. A virtual treat to the eyes, this beautiful valley in the Himalayas was established in the year 1982. This park, the smallest national park in the Himalayas was created to protect the catchment area of the Pushpavati River.

The Valley of Flowers National Park is the second core zone of the Nanda Devi Biosphere Reserve. The credit for the discovery of the Valley of Flowers goes to the British mountaineers Franks S. Smythe and R.L. Holdsworth who incidentally reached this valley after a successful expedition of Mount Kamet in 1931. Fascinated by its beauty and grandeur Frank S. Smythe revisited this area in 1937 and published a book named "Valley of Flowers" (1938). However, there is no doubt that Frank s. Smythe's writing made this valley world famous. The valley of flowers lies in the main valley of Alaknanda and Laxman Ganga in the Garhwal Himalayas in Chamoli district of Uttarakhand. Pushpawati River flows through this valley which has its source in the Tipra Glacier which extends upto Ghor Parbat Peak. It is a flat valley 5km. long and 2km. wide. Its altitudinal range varies from 3200 to 6675m. The Park is surrounded by Gauri Parbat (6590m) and Rataban (6126m) in the east, Kunthal (4430m) in the west, in the west, Saptsring (5030m) in the south and Nilgiri Parvat (6479m) in the north. Valley of flowers is a trek of about 16km from Govindghat which is 25km from Joshimath. From Govindghat one has to trek of 13km to reach Ghangaria. After crossing the Alaknanda river at Govindghat, an ascending bridle

path along Bhyundar Ganga leads to Ghangharia. From here the valley is situated at a distance of 3km. Almost 300 species of wild flowers bloom here in natural way. Wherein some of the species are Anemone, Geranium, March marigold. Primula, Potentilla, Geum. Asters Liliium, Himalayam Blue poppy, Aconitum, Delphinium, Ranunculus, Rhododendrons and numerous other. Most of the flowers have medicinal values too. The abundance of Asmanda fern in this valley is a rare sight than in other Himalayan valleys. Apart from the flowers some species of Butterfly, Musk deer. Blue sheep (Bharal), Himalayan birds & Snow leopard are also found in the park. One fully equipped interpretation centre at Ghangaria is available. At this interpretation centre regular slide shows on Valley of Flowers and wildlife is held in the evening hours through out the season. The Valley of Flowers National park remains open for visitors

6. Assan Barrage Bird Sanctuary: The Assan Barrage, popularly known as Dhalipur lake, was created in the year 1967 as a result of the construction of Assan barrage at the confluence of the river Yamuna & Assan through Dhalipur power house. Assan Barrage is famous for bird watching. Located just 40km from Dehradun, the Assan Barrage wetland has become popular as a bird sanctuary. Though not very large in size (just 4 sq km) the sheer abundance of birds that visit it, ensures that among both serious bird watchers and beginner enthusiasts frequently visit Assan Barrage.

Assan Barrage Bird Sanctuary, Uttarakhand Assan Barrage Bird Sanctuary was established in the year 1967 as a small man-made wetland at the convergence point of Rivers Yamuna and Assan in Dehradun. Since it is near to Dhalipur power house, it is also known as Dhalipur Lake. The area is full of lush green trees and a calm 287.5 m long water body which attracts a humungous population of local as well as migratory birds. The area covered by this avian haven is just four sq kms but the profusion of foliage ensures that birds are not disturbed by bird-watching enthusiasts.

7. Gangotri National Park: The Park is situated in Uttarkashi District over a vast area of 2390.02sq.km. . Gangotri, after which the park is named, is one of the four dharmas (pilgrim sites) of Uttarakhand. The park located within the upper catchment area of the Bhagirathi River offers a panoramic view of several waterfalls. It also forms a vital link in the green corridor that extends between the Govind National Park and Kedarnath Wildlife Sanctuary. It provides majestic beauty of coniferous forests and grandeur of glacial world combined with lush green meadows. The forests are Himalayan moist temperate type. Vegetation consists of chirpine deodar, fir, spruce, oak and rhododendrons. The fauna includes snow leopard, brown bear, black bear, Himalayan thar, serow, musk deer, cheer pheasants, partridges, monal, Himalayan snow cock etc.

8. Binog Wildlife Sanctuary: The Binog Wildlife Sanctuary lies on the outer most ridge of the Himalayas, 2150m to 2800m above sea level in Mussoorie. Set up in 1993, Known as much for the Kempty falls as for its wildlife, the sanctuary lies within the catchments of the Aglar River, a tributary of the Yamuna. The sanctuary was set up primarily with the objective of protecting the area's dwindling bird population and diversity, especially the Himalayan pheasant and the Monal (the state bird of Uttarakhand) which are becoming rare. The white crested Kaleej Pheasant, Snow partridge, Bush quail, Blue rock pigeon, Fire tailed sun bird, and the Whistling thrush are some of the other birds found here, and the now extinct Mountain Quail was last sighted in the Binog forests back in 1986. The sanctuary also has a vast floral diversity, consisting of mosses, ferns, flowers, and orchids. The mountainsides are covered with a dense forest of Banj and Oak interspersed with Deodar and Kail patches. Under the Banj, a light undergrowth of shrubs and grasses cover the forest floor. Leopards, lagurs, Ghoral, Kakar, Lepoard cat, Flying Squirrel etc. are found here. A trek to find the source of the Kempty falls takes you through the dense forests of the area, and is well worth the effort. Several cliffs and the undulating terrain make the area ideal for trekking, though the slippery surfaces makes winter

trekking hazardous. For the culturally curious adventurous, there is an observatory set up by George Everest on the periphery, as well as an old temple of Jwala Mata which hosts an annual fair in the month of November.

Check Your Progress - 2

7. Where is Govind Wild Life Sanctuary situated?

Ans.....

8. How many species of birds reported to occur in Rajaji national Park?

Ans.....

9.6 NATIONAL PARKS, SANCTUARIES OF KUMAUN

Wild life sanctuaries are the major attractions for tourists and pilgrims visiting Uttarakhand. At present, the following sanctuaries are being maintained and are under development. The following are situated in the kumaun region:

9.6.1 Askot Sanctuary

Askot sanctuary is situated at a distance of 54 km from Pithoragarh. Askot was the ancient kingdom of Katyur dynasty it also has a palace of the last Katyuri king. The name of Askot has been derived from the word Asi-kot, that is 80 forts. There are remains of the ancient forts all over the area. The area is rich for its sal, oak and pine forest and rich waterfalls. The important assets conserved here are `Malika Arjun temple` and the `Swami Narayan Ashram`. The Askot Sanctuary has charismatic hilly areas, and the houses surrounded by greenery, adds more amazement to its already splendid beauty. Askot is located in the lap of Kumaon Himalayas at a height of 1,650 metres, with the view of snow capped mountain peaks. The places of interest in the sanctuary are snow leopards, Himalayan black bears, musk deers, snow cocks, tahrs, bharals, monals, chirs, koklas, pheasants and chukors.

Askot Wildlife Sanctuary is a majestic destination located in the middle of a snow covered peak in the Kumaon Himalayan at an elevation of 5412 feet in the

Indian state of Uttarakhand. It is a majestic destination for the nature enthusiast. The Sanctuary is rightly known as the green paradise of India. The wildlife sanctuary is positioned 54 km from Pithoragarh near Ascot in Uttarakhand. The sanctuary covers an area of 284 square kilometers. The Askot Wildlife Sanctuary was established in 1986 with the object of conserving the musk deer and its habitat. Though the musk deer are present in significant numbers in the sanctuary, they required further protection as they are an endangered species.

9.6.2 Binsar Sanctuary

Binsar was summer capital of the Chand kings. It is located at a distance of 31 km from Amoral. Binsar is famous for its outstanding Himalayan view, Birds and wild life. Binsar is one of the most attractive spots in the Kumaon Himalayas and a well-acclaimed hill resort with plenty of Wild Life. Binsar Hills is also known, as Handy Dear. It is heighted at 2,310 meters and offers an excellent view of Almora town, Kumaon hills and the greater Himalayas. The surroundings prosper in alpine flora, ferns, hanging moss and species of wild flowers. The chief attraction of Binsar is the splendid view of the Himalayas-a 300 km stretch of famous peaks, which includes Kedarnath, Chaukhamba, Trisul, Nanda Devi, Nanda Kot and Panchchuli. The forests of Himalayan oak and rhododendron are excellent for trekking and associating with nature.

Binsar is a comparatively small wildlife sanctuary, covering only an area of 47.04 sq. kms. A small protected area, Binsar was designated as a wildlife sanctuary in 1988, following a long local movement for its establishment. Today, Binsar supports a wide variety of floral species, faunal species as well as avi-fauna including some of the unique species found in the Himalayan range. Set deep in the foothills of the Great Indian Himalayas, Binsar is a comparatively small wildlife

sanctuary, covering only an area of 47.04 sq. kms. A small protected area, Binsar was designated as a wildlife sanctuary in 1988, following a long local movement for its establishment. Today, Binsar supports a wide variety of floral species, faunal species as well as avi-fauna including some of the unique species found in the Himalayan range. Within Binsar's boundary, there are nine villages populated by around 600 people. Binsar Wildlife Sanctuary has only one entry gate for tourists at Ayarpani and only one road, climbing in a north-west direction to terminate at the Forest Rest House. The sanctuary is criss-crossed by many trails, some relatively wide and well-trodden while some barely discernible. A walk through this sanctuary is a truly fascinating as well as refreshing as most of the park area is shaded with a thick forests.

9.6.3. Corbett National Park

Country's first wildlife Park established in 1936, extends in an area of 1318.54 sq km comprising (Corbett: 520.82 sq km; Sonanadi Wildlife Sanctuary: 301.18 sq km and Reserve Forest: 496.54 sq km) lies in Pauri Garhwal and Nainital districts. Jim Corbett Park is home to the thunderous tiger, trumpeting elephant and the twittering birds. The park has earned the name of "Land of Roar, Trumpet and Song". The Park is situated in the foothills of Uttarakhand gifting a sight of extraordinary beauty. It is the Patlidun, a broad flat valley, where the shining, rushing water of the river Ramganga wander through the hills and valleys.

In Jim Corbet Park wild elephants, leopards, hyenas, jackals and wild dogs are found. There are also some superb hog deer, barking deer, sambhar, chital and bears, both lazy and Himalayan. There is an occasional gaur and some goral, mongooses, palm squirrel, flying squirrel, ratel, wild cat, antelopes, deer, wild boar, otter and porcupine. There are eight watchtowers in the park and to view the wonders from November to June elephants are available in Dhikala and Bijrani. The river passes through the heart of the park and emerges into the plains at Kalagarh.

Popular with anglers (a fisherman who uses a hook and line), it is stocked with the mighty Masher, Indian Trout and Goonch. The rapids make the ladle, spinner and plugs invaluable, but the big monasters in the pools can be lured by live bait.

Check Your Progress - 3

9. What do mean by Askot?

Ans.....

10. Which Park earned the name of "Land or Roar, Trumpet and Song' and Why?

Ans.....

11. Which river is passing through the middle of Jim Corbett national Park?

Ans.....

9.7 WILDLIFE TOURISM

Wildlife tourism can be an eco and animal friendly tourism, usually showing animals in their natural habitat. Wildlife tourism, in its simplest sense, is watching wild animals in their natural habitat. Wildlife tourism is an important part of the tourism industries in many countries including many African and South American countries, Australia, India, Canada, Indonesia, Bangladesh, Malaysia and Maldives among many. It has experienced a dramatic and rapid growth in recent year's world wide and is closely aligned to eco-tourism and sustainable-tourism. Wildlife tourism is also a multi-million dollar industry offering customized tour packages and safaris. Wildlife tourism encompasses non-consumptive interactions with wildlife, such as observing and photographing animals in their natural habitats. It has the recreational aspects of adventure travel, and supports the values of ecotourism and nature conservation programs.

The biodiversity plays vital role in tourism especially like the state Uttarakhand where the economy depends on the development of the tourism industry. The famous places of fauna are the main attraction of the tourists. The

number of tourist visited the parks, Sanctuaries and zoo of Uttarkahnd justifies the statement. For your information every district of the Uttarakhand has the either park or sanctuary. But Uncontrolled and unplanned tourism disturbs and destroys the ecological balance of the mountains and create environmental pollution. Tourism has also introduced new life styles which have a disruptive influence on local traditions and social cultures. Mushroom growth of poor quality restaurants and hotels has been increased due to tourism. The rubbish and debris left behind by the tourists are not effectively disposed off, and consequently they pollute the river systems. Trekking is the latest craze with the trendy youth but, unfortunately, it is only superficial trekking, therefore means just climbing up and down over treacherous mountains, not following the rules that go with this sport. The impacts of increasing trend of wildlife tourism are described under following heading:

Negative impacts of wildlife:

- Wildlife tourism can cause significant disturbances to animals in their natural habitats. The growing interest in traveling to developing countries has created a boom in resort and hotel construction, particularly on rain forest and mangrove forest lands. Wildlife viewing can scare away animals, disrupt their feeding and nesting sites, or acclimate them to the presence of people. In Kenya, for example, wildlife-observer disruption drives cheetahs off their reserves, increasing the risk of inbreeding and further endangering the species.
- The effect that wildlife tourism will have on wildlife depends on the scale of tourist development and the behavior and resilience of wildlife to the presence of humans. When tourists activities occur during sensitive times of the life cycle (for example, during nesting season), and when they involve close approaches to wildlife for the purpose of identification or photography, the potential for disturbance is high. Not all species appear to be disturbed by tourists even within heavily visited areas.

- The pressures of tourists searching out wildlife to photograph or hunt can adversely affect hunting and feeding patterns, and the breeding success of some species. Some may even have long-term implications for behavioral and ecological relationships.
- Artificial feeding of wildlife by tourists can have severe consequences for social behavior patterns. Artificial feeding by tourists caused a breakdown of the territorial breeding system of land iguanas on the South Plaza in the Galápagos Islands. Territories were abandoned in favor of sites where food could be begged from tourists, and this has had a negative effect on the breeding success of iguanas. Artificial feeding can also result in a complete loss of normal feeding behaviors
- Wildlife tourism also causes disruption to intra-specific relationships. There is also a risk of the young not being recognized, and being more exposed to predator attacks.
- The viewing of certain species by wildlife tourists makes the species more vulnerable to predators. Evidence of this phenomenon has been recorded in birds, reptiles and mammals. Problems have occurred in breeding colonies of pelicans.

Positive impacts of wildlife:

- Many owners of eco-accommodation or wildlife attractions preserve and restore native habitats on their properties. In a large way the tourists and travellers visiting the wildlife destinations contribute to the conservation and improvement of the conditions for the animals. The flow of the people keeps the poachers at bay from killing the valuable animals.
- The local tribes have a decent living as the tourism flourishes as it provides opportunities of improved livelihood.

- Many wildlife parks and zoos breed rare and endangered species as a major part of their activities, and release the progeny when possible into suitable habitat.
- Some wildlife tourism contributes monetary donations to conservation efforts e.g. Dreamworld, Gold Coast, has a display of Sumatran tigers, and money from visitor donations and from their 'tiger walk' goes to Sumatra to assist in-situ conservation of wild tigers.
- Some wildlife tourism operations contribute to monitoring of wildlife numbers or general research relevant to conservation
- Bringing tourists regularly into some areas may make it more difficult for poachers of large animals or those who collect smaller species for the black market.

9.8 WILDLIFE ECOTOURISM IN UTTARAKHAND

The state has 12 National Parks and Wildlife Sanctuaries which covers 13.8 percent of the total area of the state. The various Parks and Sanctuaries are located at different altitudes varying from 800 mts to the high altitude Protected Areas at 5400 mts. Apart from these there are two Conservation Reserves- The Asan Barrage and Jhilmil Tal conservation Reserves, two World Heritage sites of the Nanda Devi Biosphere reserve and Valley of Flowers National Park. The state can boast of the first national park of the Indian Sub-continent-the Corbett National Park, with its major attractions being tiger, elephant and leopard. It also supports a wide variety of birds sharing its boundary with the Rajaji National Park.

The high altitude National Park includes the Nandadevi National Park and the Valley of Flowers National Park which are regarded as unique creation of nature. They have become popular with trekkers and mountaineers. Almost 300 species of wild flowers bloom here and attracts nature lovers, botanists, ecologists, zoologists, ornithologists and trekkers. Other National Parks and Sanctuaries include Binog Wildlife Sanctuary near Mussoorie, Govind Pashu Vihar and National Park, Askot

wildlife Sanctuary, Kedarnath Wildlife Sanctuary, Sonanadi Wildlife Sanctuary, Binsar WLS near almora, Gangotri National Park. . Looking the trend and attitude of tourists, visitors, it is the demand of time that we should go for sustainable development of the tourism.

9.9 SUMMARY

The state is divided into two divisions, Garhwal and Kumaon, with a total of 13 districts. Uttarakhand has a great diversity of flora and fauna. In both the division there are national parks or sanctuaries. They are full with the Varsity of fauna i.e Jim Corbett national park the tourist usually visit to see the elephant and tigers. But the unctrolled development of the tourism is creating the problems for survival of the fauna.

Hence there is an urgent need to preserve the ecological and environmental security of the Himalayas. This can only be achieved if man returns to Nature and establishes a cordial and respectful relationship with all the natural resources.

Only the immediate, consistent and stringent measures to save the ailing Himalayas can restore the fasting deteriorating pristine glory of the rich and varied Himalayan resources. On the contrary, any further delay in this action would certainly be an invitation to doomsday for the Himalayas and its denizens. Hence Uttrakhand is the best destination for the wildlife tourism.

9.10 GLOSSARY

- **Fauna** -----Varsity of animals and creatures
- **Diversity**----- Varsity
- **Deteriorate**---- to made worse
- **Eco-crisis**----- problems to ecology
- **Partridges**-----a kind of game bird
- **Extinction**----- suppression
- **Amphibians**-- animals living both in water and bland

- **Sanctuary**----- a place of refuge

9.11 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. 65 percent
2. Monal
3. Musk Dear
4. Rinoola
5. 2700 meter
6. *Ancistrodon himalayanus*
7. Uttarakashi
8. 315 by Dr kala
9. Place of eighty forts.
10. Corbett national Park
11. Ramganga

9.12 REFERENCES

- Rana, S.V.S. Environmental Studies. Global Media,
- Jacobs, "Belief in 'Balance of Nature' Hard to Shake". Miller - McCune.
- 3 International Transaction in Humanities and Social Sciences, Varsity-1, N-1,p 24-28
- Bisht.H, 1994, Tourism in Garhwal Himalaya, Indus Pub. Co., New Delhi
- Kala C.P, 1999, Phenology of Alpine Plants in the Valley of Flowers National Park and Hemkund, Western Himalya
- Kandari O.P, 1982. Nanda Devi: India's Highest National Park
- Newsome, David; Dowling, Ross K.; Moore, Susan A. (2005). Wildlife Tourism (1st ed.). Clevedon; Toronto: Channel View Publications. p. 16. ISBN 9781845410063

9.13 TERMINAL AND MODEL QUESTIONS

(A) Long Questions

1. Describe the importance of wildlife of Uttarakhand in the development of tourism.
2. Write short note on the following:
 - a) Rajaji national Park
 - b) Govind Wildlife sanctuary
 - c) Askot Sanctuary
 - d) Binsar Sanctuary
3. Through light on impacts of Wildlife tourism
4. Write an essay on parks and sanctuaries of Uttarakhand.

(B) Short Questions

1. Name the UNESCO heritage parks in Uttarakhand.
2. Name the oldest national park in the state.
3. In which Government of India introduced the project Leopard?
4. In which district of Uttarakhand the Valley of Flower national park situated?
5. Why the species of fauna disappearing rapidly?
6. In which year the Nanda Devi sanctuary was established?

Unit-10
Popular Hill Resorts of the State

Structure:

- 10.1 Introduction
- 10.2 Objectives
- 10.3 Resorts and types of Resorts
- 10.4 Famous resorts of Garhwal
- 10.5 Famous resorts of Kumaun
- 10.6 Summary
- 10.7 Glossary
- 10.8 Answer to Check your Progress
- 10.9 References
- 10.10 Terminal and Model Questions

10.1 INTRODUCTION

The uniqueness of the Indian sub-continent lies in the diversity it offers in every aspect. India is blessed with the most disparate geography and climate which provide habitat to a vivid range of flora and fauna. The incredible range of wildlife in India is a nature's gift that makes India the ideal location for Wildlife Tourism. Protecting the birds and animals in the zoological parks is a good thing but there is nothing better than serving them exactly where they are best suited. Therefore, India houses a number of wildlife sanctuaries and national parks that help in preserving the wildlife in its natural form.

Watching the animals in the cage at anonymous zoo are an entirely different and unrealistic experience in comparison with that of wildlife sanctuary or national park. Stop cheering yourself by looking at the helpless animals in a zoo and observe the real life struggle of animals in a wildlife sanctuary. Do you know Uttarakhand hosts India's oldest National park? Here is your moment to listen to the call of the mountains. Explore, dream and discover yourself in the silence of the mountain trails in Uttarakhand. The Land of the gods awaits you for that one mystic experience of a lifetime that gives you a chance to sense the oneness with nature. Overwhelming natural panoramas accompany the pilgrims taking part in the Nanda Devi Raj Jaat and Kailash Mansarovar Yatras. The shrines of Hemkund Sahib and Nanakmatta Sahib are visited by thousands of Sikh devotees while a symbol of national integration - the Dargaah at Piran Kaliyar Sharif, holds a significant religious rank for Muslims and people from other faiths alike. Uttarakhand has many tourist spots due to its location in the Himalayas. There are many ancient temples, forest reserves, national parks, hill stations, and mountain peaks that draw large number of tourists. There are 44 nationally protected monuments in the state. Two of the most holy rivers of country the Ganga and Yamuna is in Uttarakhand. So the state is destination for tourists, nature lover and,

research scholars and hence requires shelter places to stay like hotels, motels or resorts. So in this unit you will get the details of popular resorts of the Uttarakhand.

10.2 OBJECTIVES

So in this unit we gave brief description of the resorts of the state which aims;

- To inform you about the facilities of state
- About the beautiful lodging places.
- To make you near the nature.

10.3 RESORTS AND TYPES OF RESORTS

A resort is a place used for relaxation or recreation, attracting visitors for vacations or tourism. Resorts are places, towns or sometimes commercial establishment operated by a single company. In North American English, the term "resort" is now also used for a self-contained commercial establishment which attempts to provide for most of a vacationer's wants while remaining on the premises, such as food, drink, lodging, sports, entertainment, and shopping. The term may be used to identify a hotel property that provides an array of amenities and typically includes entertainment and recreational activities. A hotel is frequently a central feature of a resort, such as the Grand Hotel at Mackinac Island, Michigan. A resort is not always a commercial establishment operated by a single company, although in the late twentieth century this sort of facility became more common. For convenience of study we classified the resorts in following categories:

- **Town Resort:** Towns which are resorts – or where tourism or vacationing is a major part of the local activity – are sometimes called resort towns. If they are by the sea they are called seaside resorts. Inland resorts include ski resorts, mountain resorts and spa towns. Towns such as Sochi in Russia, Sharm el Sheikh in Egypt, Barizo in Spain, Cortina d'Ampezzo in Italy, Druskininkai in Lithuania, Cancún in Mexico, Newport, Rhode Island, in the USA, Ischgl in

Austria, St. Moritz in Switzerland, Blackpool in England and Malam Jabba in Pakistan are well-known resorts.

- **Island resorts:** An island resort is an island or an archipelago that contains resorts, hotels, restaurants, tourist attractions and its amenities.
- **Seaside resorts:** Seaside resorts are located on a coast. In the United Kingdom, many seaside towns have turned to other entertainment industries, and some of them have a good deal of nightlife. The cinemas and theatres often remain to become host to a number of pubs, bars, restaurants and nightclubs. Most of their entertainment facilities cater to local people and the beaches still remain popular during the summer months. Although international tourism turned people away from British seaside towns, it also brought in foreign travel and as a result, many seaside towns offer foreign language schools, the students of which often return to vacation and sometimes to settle.
- **Ski resorts:** In Europe and North America, ski resorts are towns and villages in ski areas, with support services for skiing such as hotels and chalets, equipment rental, ski schools and ski lifts to access the slopes.

- **Destination resort:** A destination resort is a resort that contains, in and of itself, the necessary guest attraction capabilities – that is to say that a destination resort does not need to be near a destination (town, historic site, theme park, or other) to attract its public. A commercial establishment at a resort destination such as a recreational area, a scenic or historic site, a theme park, a gaming facility or other tourist attraction may compete with other businesses at a destination. Consequently, another quality of a destination resort is that it offers food, drink, lodging, sports and entertainment, and shopping within the facility so that guests have no need to leave the facility throughout their stay. Commonly these facilities are of higher quality than would be expected if one were to stay at a hotel or eat in a town's restaurants. Some examples are Atlantis in the Bahamas, the Walt Disney World Resort near Orlando, Florida, USA, Costa do Sauípe in Northeastern Brazil, Laguna Phuket in Thailand and Sun City near Johannesburg in South Africa. Closely related to these resorts are convention and large meeting sites. Generally these occur in cities where special meeting halls, together with ample accommodations as well as varied dining and entertainment, are provided.
- **All-inclusive resort:** An all-inclusive resort charges a fixed price that includes most or all items. At a minimum, most inclusive resorts include lodging, unlimited food, drink, sports activities, and entertainment for the fixed price. In recent years, the number of resorts in the United States offering "all-inclusive" amenities has decreased dramatically; in 1961, over half offered such plans and in 2007, less than ten percent do so. All-inclusive resorts are found in the Caribbean, Egypt, particularly in Dominican Republic, and elsewhere. Notable examples are Club Med and Sandals Resorts.

An all-inclusive resort includes a minimum of three meals daily, soft drinks, most alcoholic drinks, gratuities and possibly other services in the price.^[2] Many also offer sports and other activities included in the price as well. They are often

located in warmer regions. The all-inclusive model originated in the Club Med resorts which were founded by the Belgian Gérard Blitz.

Some all-inclusive resorts are designed for specific vacation interests. For example, certain resorts cater to adults, while even more specialized properties accept couples only. Other all-inclusive resorts are geared toward families, with facilities like craft centers, game rooms and water parks to keep children of all ages entertained. All inclusive resorts are also very popular locations for destination weddings.

- **Recreation Resort:** A spa resort is a short term residential/lodging facility with the primary purpose of providing individual services for spa-goers to develop healthy habits. Historically many such spas were developed at the location of natural hot springs or sources of mineral waters. Typically over a seven-day stay, such facilities provide a comprehensive program that includes spa services, physical fitness activities, wellness education, healthy cuisine and special interest programming. Golf resorts are resorts that cater specifically to the sport of golf, and include access to one or more golf course and or clubhouse. Golf resorts typically provide golf packages that provide visitors with all greens and cart fees, range balls, accommodations and meals.

In North America a ski resort is generally a destination resort in a ski area, and is less likely to refer to a town or village.

A resort can be expensive vacations and often boasts many visitor activities and attractions such as golf, watersports, spa and beauty facilities, skiing, natural ecology and tranquility. Because of the extent of amenities offered, it may be considered destination resort.

- **Mega resort:** A mega resort is a type of destination resort which is of an exceptionally large size, such as those along the Las Vegas Strip. In Singapore an integrated resort is a euphemism for a casino-based destination resort.

A holiday village is a type of self-contained resort in Europe, where the accommodation is generally in villas. A holiday camp in the United Kingdom refers to a resort where the accommodation is in chalets. The term "holiday park" is used for a resort where the accommodation includes static caravans and chalets.

- **Historic resort:** A famous historic resort of the ancient world was Baiae, Italy, popular over 2,000 years ago. Capri, an island near Naples, Italy, has attracted visitors since Roman times. Another famous historical resort was Monte Ne near Rogers, Arkansas, United States, which was active in the early 20th century. At its peak more than 10,000 people a year visited its hotels. It closed in the 1930s, and was ultimately submerged under Beaver Lake in the 1960s.

Check your Progress - 1

5. What type resort is Walt Disneyworld resort,USA?

Ans.....6.

Name the two main river of Uttarakhand.

Ans.....

10.4 FAMOUS RESORTS OF GARHWAL

Garhwal, or Gadhwal, is a region and administrative division of Uttarakhand, lying in the Himalayas. It is bounded on the north by Tibet, on the east by Kumaon region, on the south by Uttar Pradesh, and on the west by Himachal Pradesh. It includes the districts of Chamoli, Dehradun, Haridwar, Pauri (Pauri Garhwal), Rudraprayag, Tehri (Tehri Garhwal), and Uttarkashi.

The administrative center for Garhwal division is the town of Pauri. Garhwal originally consisted of 52 petty chieftainships, each chief with his own independent fortress (garh). Nearly 500 years ago, one of these chiefs, Ajai Pal, reduced all the minor principalities under his own sway, and founded the Garhwal kingdom. He and his ancestors ruled over Garhwal and the adjacent state of Tehri, in an

uninterrupted line till 1803, when the Gurkhas invaded Kumaon and Garhwal, driving the Garhwal chief into the plains. For twelve years the Gurkhas ruled the country with a rod of iron, until a series of encroachments by them on British territory led to the war with Nepal in 1814. At the termination of the campaign, Garhwal and Kumaon were converted into British districts, while the Tehri principality was restored to a son of the former chief. The British district of Garhwal was in the Kumaon division of the United Provinces. The region is famous for its natural beauty and hence having number of hotels/resorts. The famous resorts of the Garhwal region are as follows:

i) Raga on the Ganges-An Amritara Private Hideaway: It is situated at Singthali, Byasi, Devprayag Road, Tehri Garhwal. Raga on the Ganges is 35 km from Rishikesh Bus Stand and 52 km from Haridwar Railway Station. Dehradun - Jolly Grant Airport is 57 km from the resort. Car rentals are available at a charge, while on-site parking is free.

Raga on the Ganges is a wellness resort in Rishikesh, offering rejuvenating activities like yoga on its outdoor deck. Enjoy relaxing massage treatments while overlooking the beautiful mountain landscape. Besides free Wi-Fi, the resort also provides an outdoor pool with many sun loungers, as well as a fitness centre. The well-decorated rooms all come with a flat-screen TV, a seating area and a personal safe. The en suite bathrooms are equipped with a shower and free toiletries. Room service is available 24 hours.

If you are looking for adventure, the resort can also help arrange exciting activities like white water rafting, rock climbing and canoeing. A business centre and a 24-hour front desk are also available. Sargam Restaurant serves a selection of Indian, Chinese and Continental dishes. The resort also provides barbecue facilities.

ii) Aloha On The Ganges: Aloha is in Tapovan, Rishikesh, Offering an outdoor pool and spa and wellness centre, Aloha On The Ganges is located in Rishikesh. Free WiFi access is available in this resort. It is 2 km from Lakshman Jhula, 3 km from Ram Jhula and 4.6 km from Triveni Ghat. The Rishikesh Railway Station is 5.4 km away, Lakshman Jhula Bus Station is 8 km and the Jolly Grant Airport is 22 km away.

The accommodation will provide you with a TV and air conditioning. There is also an electric kettle. Featuring a shower, private bathroom also comes with a bath and a bath or shower. Extras include a minibar, a seating area and satellite channels. At Aloha on the Ganges you will find a 24-hour front desk and a garden. Other facilities offered at the property include a shared lounge, a tour desk and luggage storage. An array of activities can be enjoyed on site or in the surroundings, including cycling. The property offers free parking.

The in-house restaurant serves multi-cuisine delights. Room service can be requested for in-room dining comforts.

iii) Ganga Beach Resort: This resort is on Laxman Jhula Road, Shesdhara Tapovan, and Rishikesh. The resort overlooks azure waters of Umiam Lake situated just 1.5 km away. Guwahati Railway Station is 75 km away and Guwahati Airport is 105 km away.

Spread over 45 acres of lush greeneries, Ganga Beach Resort offer spacious cottages as well as meeting and banquet facilities. Guests can also enjoy a relaxing spa treatment. Fan-cooled cottages are fitted with a sofa seating area, a cable TV and a dressing table. Attached bathrooms include hot/cold shower facilities or a bath.

Ganga Beach Resort's 24-hour front desk can assist with laundry/ironing services as well as travel arrangements for guests who would like to go trekking or even a picnic. The Resort has a multi cuisine restaurant - Sao Aiom, which serves local Indian delights, Chinese and continental cuisines.

iv) Royal Orchid Fort Resort: Royal orchid in Tara Hall Estate, Picture Palace Road, Mussoorie. Operating a 24-hour front desk to assist guests, Royal Orchid Fort Resort is located 1 km from the popular Mall Road and 5 km from Mussoorie Jheel and the Lal Tibba. Guests can pamper themselves at the spa or enjoy a game of table tennis and mini golf.

The air-conditioned accommodation will provide you with a satellite TV. Featuring a shower, private bathroom also comes with free toiletries and slippers. At Royal Orchid Fort Resort you will find a terrace, business centre and meeting/banqueting space. Services like ironing and dry cleaning are provided. The property offers free parking. If you feel like visiting the surroundings, check out Kempty Falls that is 13 km away. This resort is 500 metres from the Local Bus Station, 32 km from Dehradun Railway Station and 52 km from Jolly Grant Airport. It serves a selection of Indian and International cuisine. 24-hour room service is available for private dining.

v) V Resorts Rajaji National Park: In Village Ganga Bhogpur, Gauhari Range, Rajaji National Park, Rishikesh you will get the V resort, offering an indoor pool and a restaurant, V Resorts Rajaji National Park is located in Rishikesh. Free WiFi access is available in this resort.

The accommodation will provide you with air conditioning and a seating area. Featuring a shower, private bathroom also comes with free toiletries. You can enjoy Mountain View and garden view from the room. Extras include bed linen and a fan. At V Resorts Rajaji National Park you will find a 24-hour front desk and a garden. Other facilities offered at the property include a tour desk. An array of activities can be enjoyed on site or in the surroundings, including cycling and hiking. The property offers free parking. In the surroundings, of the resort kindly check out Triveni Ghat (9.4 km) and Rishikesh Railway Station (9.6 km). This resort is 20 km from Jolly Grant Airport.

vi) Tapovan Vatika Resort: This resort is Near Moskh Ashram, Laxman Jhulla, Dist Tehri Garhwal, Rishikesh. Bordered by mountains and situated on the left of the Ganges River. Tapovan Vatika Resort houses have spa and an Indian restaurant offering 24-hour room service. Complimentary Wi-Fi access is provided. Fitted with a balcony offering views of the mountains and surrounding greenery, rooms are air-conditioned and feature a flat-screen TV, an electric kettle and a telephone. The attached bathroom comes with hot and cold shower facilities. Day trips can be arranged at the tour desk. The 24-hour reception staff can assist with laundry and doctor-on-call services. Guests who drive can park on-site for free. Tapovan Vatika is 3.5 km from Rishikesh Railway Station and 5 km from Rishikesh city centre. Jolly Grant Airport is 15 km away.

vii) Kedia Resorts: Kedia resort is on Virbhadrā Road, Rishikesh. The resort is located about 18 km from Jolly Grant Airport and 20 km from Haridwar Railway Station. The Haridwar Bus Station is located about 19.2 km from Kedia Rishikesh Resorts. Kedia Resorts is conveniently located in Rishikesh, just 4 km from Laxman Jhula and 6 km from Swarg Ashram. It provides spacious rooms with private balconies, massage services and Wi-Fi at an extra charge. Daily yoga classes are available at its yoga studio.

The rooms are simple and come equipped with freshly laundered beddings. They are fully air conditioned and well equipped with a flat-screen satellite TV. All rooms have an en suite bathroom providing hot and cold shower facilities. The resort provides laundry and dry cleaning services. It also provides free parking on site. Room service is also offered for guests' convenience.

viii) Karma Vilas Resort (Mussoorie): Karma Vilas resort is "A fantastic place for a family outing". Having club house for children, lawns & private spaces all around the property to just relax & unwind, trekking option to a nearby. The staff members of Karma Vilas are known for their hospitality. Excellent place for staying and enjoying the nature of the city.

ix) **Monal Resort (Rudra Prayag):** A resort is "the best place to stay in route to Badrinath Ji and Kedarnath Ji". It is also good for travelling in a big family group, having family suites and deluxe rooms. All the rooms were excellent. The toilets in the family suites need upgrading. You have very nice hotel with a very good view of Ganges.....neat and clean bathrooms.....excellent interiors..nice service. But always go for AC rooms as Rudraprayag is always hot and the coolers were of no use.

xi) **Kanatal Resorts:** Kanatal Resorts is located on the Chamba-Mussoorie road, in Kanatal. The nearest railhead is at Dehradun, 80 km away. The nearest airport is Jolly Grant Airport (Dehradun), approx 90 km away. Kanatal Resorts is an exquisite property located in the beautiful and serene environs of Kangra Valley, amidst pine and deodar trees in the foothills of the Himalayas. The resort provides guests with quality accommodation, coupled with modern and efficient services and facilities.

Other facilities and services include: travel desk; dormitory for drivers; 24 hour in-house laundry service; doctor on call; airport/railway station transfers; taxi services, sightseeing tours and excursions; portable barbeque for outdoor excursions; indoor hot water pool with a stream; sauna and Jacuzzi; wide selection of movies on demand in a widescreen mini-theatre room; indoor games such as snooker, ice-hockey table, carom, chess, video games, bicycles for hire and outdoor activities like horse riding, trekking, rappelling, valley crossing, and jungle safari. Treatments like Soothing Scalp Massage, Oriental Therapeutic Massage, Ayurvedic Treatment, Shirodhara and more, tender the body and enable absolute soothing rejuvenation. The spa maintains focus on the synchronization of healing activities and thus renders the desired health and tone to the body with specially prepared herbs and oils. The resort also has a large swimming pool, as well as a yoga and meditation centre. Other facilities include a world class spa called Rasayana Spa. The Rasayana Spa menu is an extensive one, with a specific offer for varied needs.

Check your Progress - 2

- How many chief doms were in Garhwal?

Ans.....

- Wher is 'Aloho on the Ganga' resort?

Ans.....

- Where do you find Royal Orchard Forest Resort?

Ans.....

10.5 FAMOUS RESORTS OF KUMAUN

Kumon or Kumaun is one of the two regions and administrative divisions of Uttarakhand, a mountainous state of northern India, the other being Garhwal. It includes the districts of Almora, Bageshwar, Champawat, Nainital, Pithoragarh, and Udham Singh Nagar. In the ancient period between 1300 to 1400 AD, after the disintegration of Katyuri kingdom of Uttarakhand, eastern region of Uttarakhand (Kumaon and Far-Western Region of Nepal which was a part of Uttarakhand then), divided into eight different princely states i.e., Baijnath-Katyuri, Dwarhat, Doti, Baramandal, Askot, Sira, Sora, Sui (Kali kumaon). Later on, in 1581 AD after the defeat of Raika Hari Mall (maternal uncle of Rudra chand) with the hand of Rudra Chand all these disintegrated parts came under King Rudra chand and the whole region was as kumaon. It is bounded on the north by Tibet, on the east by Nepal, on the south by the state of Uttar Pradesh, and on the west by the Garhwal region.

The Kumaon region consists of a large Himalayan tract, together with two submontane strips called the Terai and the Bhabhar. The submontane strips were up to 1850 an almost impenetrable forest, given up to wild animals; but after 1850 the numerous clearings attracted a large population from the hills, who cultivated the rich soil during the hot and cold seasons, returning to the hills in the rains.

The rest of Kumaon is a maze of mountains, part of the Himalaya range, some of which are among the loftiest known. In a tract not more than 225 km in length and 65 km in breadth there are over thirty peaks rising to elevations exceeding 5500 m.

The rivers like Gori, Dhauli, and Kali rise chiefly in the southern slope of the Tibetan watershed north of the loftiest peaks, amongst which they make their way down valleys of rapid declivity and extraordinary depth. The principal are the Sharda (Kali Ganga), the Pindari and Kailganga, whose waters join the Alaknanda. The river Sharda (Kali Ganga) forms the international boundary between India and Nepal. The pilgrim route currently used to visit Kailash-Mansarovar goes along this river and crosses into Tibet at Lipu Lekh pass.

i) Vijay Mount Resort, Munsiyari: At Vijay Mount Resort, Munsiyari we are always dedicated towards guest satisfaction. Rooms at Vijay Mount Resort, Munsiyari are quite spacious and comfortable with all amenities. All rooms are wooded providing warmth to the guest. All rooms offer majestic views of Panchachuli Peaks. Even from the comfort of your bed you can enjoy mesmerising views of Panchachuli Peaks. The Vijay Mount Resort, Munsiyari is a combination of modern facilities with local architecture. It is situated at 5 minutes walk from the main market. Though it is in the heart of the town yet it provides you complete privacy and tranquil atmosphere for relaxation. Amazing view of the Himalayan Peaks welcomes you with its freshness and cooling effects as you step inside the resort. Outside the rooms there is a courtyard with Panchachuli & Hansling Snow Clad Peak View, where you can sit and enjoy sun, relax, eat snacks.

ii) Shervani Hilltop Resort: Housed in a charming manor, Shervani Nainital offers classic rooms in landscaped grounds. Featuring a restaurant with a beautiful garden terrace, it provides Wi-Fi, jeep service and parking for free. Nestled in Nainital's hillside, Shervani Hilltop Nainital provides a free scheduled shuttle to Mall Road, just 1.5 km away. It is a 6-hour drive from New Delhi International Airport Air-

conditioned rooms feature classic wood furnishings and cable TV. In-room amenities include a safe, tea/coffee making amenities and an attached bathroom with shower facilities. For leisure, guests can make use of the car hire and tour services to explore the region. Staff can also attend to business and laundry needs. A wide range of Indian, Chinese and Western dishes can be sampled at The Dining Hall. After meals, premium whiskeys and relaxing cocktails are available at The Courtyard Bar.

ii) Corbett Riverside Resort: This resort is in Dhikuli, Jim Corbett National Park, Ramnagar, offering a multi-cuisine restaurant and a private beach area, Corbett Riverside Resort is located in Garjia. Free WiFi access is available in the public areas of this resort. The air-conditioned accommodation will provide you with a satellite TV and a seating area. Featuring a shower, private bathroom also comes with free toiletries.

At Corbett Riverside Resort you will find a 24-hour front desk, a garden and barbecue facilities. Other facilities offered at the property include meeting facilities, a shared lounge and a tour desk. An array of activities can be enjoyed on site or in the surroundings, including cycling. The property offers free parking.

The Garjia Temple is 3 km, the Jim Corbett Museum and the Corbett National Park Dhikala Gate are 7 km and the Bijrani Gate is 8 km. The Jhirna Forest Zone is 22 km, the Kaladungi Waterfall is 40 km and the hill station of Nainital is 60 km. The Ramnagar Bus Station and the Ramnagar Railway Station are within 11 km and the Pantnagar Airport is 75 km.

iv) Jim's Jungle Retreat: Jim's jungle resort in village & PO Dhela, Ramnagar, District Nainital, Offering an outdoor pool and a spa and wellness centre, Jim's Jungle Retreat is an eco-sensitive wildlife lodge located in Ramnagar. Wi-Fi access and a 24-hour front desk are available in this resort. It is located 11 km from Kosi River and 19 km from Mansa Devi Temple. The Birjani Gate of Corbett Tiger Reserve

is 11 km away. Patnagar Domestic Airport is 98 km away. Ramnagar Railway Station and Ramnager bus station are both 13 Km away.

The accommodation will provide you with air conditioning, a balcony and a seating area. Featuring a shower, private bathrooms also come with a bathrobe and free toiletries. Extras include ironing facilities and a fan. At Jim's Jungle Retreat you will find car rental, barbeque, family room, shops in the hotel, games and activities room and a library. other facilities offered at the property include meeting facilities, a tour desk and luggage storage. It also offer free parking.

The seasonal river nearby hosts grazing deer, root-digging wild hog and migrating elephant herds. Water bodies and forest cover, planted over a decade ago, are now home to several bird and smaller mammalian species. The property's conservation practices include waste management, the use of solar energy, organic vegetables grown for the table and the recycling of bath water through a root-zone treatment plant for irrigation. Restaurant Gol Ghar serves pan-Indian and Continental cuisines. Room service options are also available.

v) BRYS Caves: In Jim Corbet National Park, Garjia, we have another resort, Offering a typical jungle experience, BRYS Caves situated near Jim Corbett National Park features an outdoor swimming pool, fitness centre and spa and wellness centre. It also has a massage parlor and sauna center. It is situated 4.5 km from the Jim Corbett Museum. It is located 12 km from Garija Temple, which is a huge rock in midst of river Kosi. The Birjrani, Ramnagar Railway Station and Ramnagar Bus Station are within 25 km. The Indira Gandhi International Airport is 292 km.

Air-conditioned caves are equipped with a heater, minibar and flat-screen satellite TV. Tea/coffee making facilities and safety deposit boxes are available. The private bathrooms include a hairdryer, shower and basic amenities. With a 24-hour front desk, the property provides services like currency exchange, luggage storage and breakfast buffet. A meeting/banqueting and business centre is available. A tour desk is available to make travel arrangements, or a car can be rented. The in-house

restaurant, Timber Land serves a variety of Indian, Chinese and Continental cuisines. Guests can savour these cuisines in the privacy of their room with room service.

vi) Jukaso Manu Maharani: It offering an outdoor swimming pool and a fitness centre, Jukaso Manu Maharani is located 7 km from the well-known Jim Corbett National Park. Free Wi-Fi access is available in the public areas of this resort. The elegant air-conditioned accommodation will provide you with a flat-screen cable TV and seating area. Featuring a shower, private bathrooms also come with a bathrobe and free toiletries. You can enjoy a mountain view and a garden view from all its room.

At Jukaso Manu Maharani you will find a 24-hour front desk, a concierge desk and garden. Other facilities offered at the property include a games room, a tour desk and luggage storage. An array of activities can be enjoyed on site or in the surroundings, including billiards. The property offers free parking.

The Garjia Temple is 3 km away while the Corbett Museum is 8 km away. The Ramnagar Railway Station and the Ramnagar Bus Station are within 9 km from the resort. The Pantnagar Airport is 90 km away. The property houses a multi-cuisine restaurant. Private dining is possible with room service.

vii) Corbett River Creek Resort: Another resort in the Jim Corbett region, spreading across 5 acres of grounds, Corbett River. Creek Resort sits on the banks of Ramganga River surrounded by mountains and thick forest. It features 2 restaurants, complimentary parking and modern guestrooms. Offering views of the river and lush greenery, spacious air-conditioned rooms are furnished with a wardrobe, a flat-screen satellite TV and seating area. Tea/coffee making amenities and a minibar are also provided. En suite bathrooms come with shower facility.

Corbett River Creek Resort operates a 24-hour front desk that can assist with laundry and concierge services. The in-house Vadanya restaurant serves delectable Indian, Continental and Chinese restaurants. The open-air Samara restaurant offers

barbecued dishes and grills. Meals can also be served in private with room service. The resort is just 8 km to the Durga Devi temple, and approximately 35 km to Ramnagar Railway Station. Jhirna, where guests can have sights of wild animals, is about 40 km away.

viii) Ojaswi Resort: Ojaswi Resort is a 5-minute drive from Musk Deer Park, while Temple Patal Bhuvaneshvar is 25 km away. Featuring free Wi-Fi throughout and a garden with BBQ facilities, Ojaswi Resort offers rooms in Pithoragarh. Guests can enjoy local cuisine at the restaurant. With garden views; each room comes with a sofa, wardrobe and a flat-screen TV with satellite channels. A bathrobe, slippers and free toiletries are included in the private bathroom.

ix) Krishna Orchard Resort: Krishna Orchard Resort is located in Mukteshwar (Uttarakhand). It is situated 7,513 ft high in Kumaon hills. Jim Mukteshwar had come to shoot a tigress here in Mukteshwar but fell in love with the place instead. Facilities here in the resort are as follows:

- Welcome drink on arrival.
- 02 bed tea, 02 breakfasts, 02 dinners per couple.
- Evening tea/coffee with cookies.
- One Hour boating in Nainital.
- Free use of Table Tennis and out door games in Kausani and Mukteshwar

x) SatTal Forest Resort: SatTal Forest Resort is a boutique resort, set amidst thick Pine and Oak forests of sattal hills. The resort overlooks the beautiful and picturesque 7 interconnected lakes, which together form the sattal lake complex. The resort provides the facilities:

- Unwind With Nature
- Bird Watching
- Indoor Activities
- Unwind With Nature
- Day Excursions
- Base to Cover Uttarkhand

xi) Krishna Mountview Mountain Resort (Kausani): Hotel Krishna Mountview Kausani is Best Hotel in Kausani. Its service was excellent and the service staff was

very friendly. Over all a very nice hotel for family and work living city for 2-3 days stay. Krishna Mountview is a truly gem in Kausani. Location is wonderful just besides Gandhi Ashram. We had visited this on 2nd October and enjoyed different program organized by all schools nearby.

xii) Suman Royal Resort: Kausani is visited by tourists round the year for its natural beauty. Mahatma Gandhi fell in love with the natural beauty of this destination and called it 'The Switzerland of India.' This Place is famous among tourists because of the majestic view of the Himalayas and the breathtaking view of the sunrise and sunset. This is a place away from the hustle and bustle of the city life where people find themselves in a peaceful environment. Kausani is about 6500 ft about sea level.

While at Suman Royal Resort, Kausani, one can view the best sunrise and unparalleled spectacular 365km wide view of the Himalaya from any part of the Resort. Suman Royal Resort, a heaven for lovers of Nature, ensures peace and harmony amidst the great Himalayan Range. Located at VIP Road, View Point Kausani, Suman Royal Resort is the only Boutique Resort in Kausani

xiii) Kasaar Jungle Resort (Almora): Kasaar Jungle Resorts, Almora is nestled amidst lofty pine and oak trees. Elegantly decorated cottages set beside a veranda allow guests to get an enriching view of the Himalayas. A range of modern amenities, warm ambience and the pleasingly rustic feel of the jungle creates the perfect lingering memory. Kasaar Jungle Resort stands on the renowned Binsar wild life sanctuary road. The Resort is just 8 Km from Binsar Wild Life Sanctuary. Places of interest surrounding the hotel include Kasar Devi (Approx. 0.25km) and Sai Baba Mandir (Approx. 9km). For nature and animal lovers, Nainital is an ultimate destination with its beautiful lakes, mountain ranges and natural surroundings. The highest peak of town, China Peak or Naini Peak, Khurpa Taal and Pt. G.B. Pant High Altitude Zoo which is one of the high altitude zoos in India must also be visited by the guests. An ideal fun-filled stay is offered with interesting activities like trekking, rappelling, rock climbing, bonfire, playpen for children, indoor games like carom,

chess, badminton, housie, yoga, meditation, bird watching and nature trail. Sumptuous food is served at the resort's multi cuisine restaurant with a distinct ambience.

xiv) Club Mahindra Binsar Valley (Binsar): Club Mahindra Valley Resort Binsar is perched on top of a hill with a spectacular view of the snow capped peaks and the Almora Valley which is the epitome of serenity and tranquility. Surrounded by abundant garlands of alpine flora, ferns, hanging moss and many other species of wild flowers, this is as close as one would get to heaven. Club Mahindra Valley Resort is located in Binsar which is one of the most scenic spots and acclaimed hill resorts in the Kumaon Himalayas. Outside Binsar, the temple complex of Jageshwar which consists of 124 temples (60 km) nestles in a beautiful valley, crested by majestic deodars. The resort in itself is beautiful to look at with its slate roofing, stonewalls and beautiful wood carvings, typical of the Gupta period. It fits well amidst the alpine flora, hanging moss and vibrant spray of wild flowers that carpet the village.

Check your Progress - 3

6. Name the ancient name of Kumaun.

Ans.....
.....

7. Mahatma Gandhi called which place 'the Switzerland of India'?

Ans.....
.....

8. Where is Kasar jungle Resort?

Ans.....

9. How many temples consist in jageshwer?

Ans.....

10.6 SUMMARY

India is country known for its geographical and cultural diversities. The incredible range of wildlife in India is a nature's gift that makes India the ideal location for Wildlife Tourism. This attracts a huge number of the world tourist. Especially the hill stations of the India have great potential for tourism industry.

The Uttarakhand, the newly established Himalayan state is one of them. Here you will have unique kind of natural attraction like conical mountains, huge bugyal, rich variety of flora and fauna. So it is a best destination for the nature lover and adventure loving people and this can help to enrich the economy of the state. To enhance the tourism the first need is the places to stay which not only give the rest to the visitors but also the nature's view. Hence we require developing the better facilities of lodging and boarding. The Hotel and resort have vital role in the tourism industry.

In this unit tried our best to furnish you the details of resorts of the Uttarakhand.

10.7 GLOSSARY

- **Anonymous-** name unknown
- **Premise-** a building with its environs
- **Amateur-** one who is fond of a subject
- **Retreat-** to go back

10.8 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. Destinations Resort
2. The Ganga, Yamuna
3. 52
4. Tapovan, Rishkesh
5. Mussoorie

6. Manaskhand
7. Kousani
8. Almora
- 9.124

10.9 REFERENCES

- "American Plan resorts among last of vanishing breed". Associated Press (CNN.com). June 28, 2007. Archived from the original on 2007-10-12. Retrieved 2007-06-29.
- Conrad, Sarah "What does all inclusive mean?", What Does All Inclusive Mean, January 12, 2011, accessed April 16, 2011.
- Garrett Nagle (1999). Tourism, Leisure and Recreation. Nelson Thornes. ISBN 0-17-444705-1.
- Negi S.S, Himalayan Rivers, Lakes and Glaciers, 2009, Indus Publishing House
- Tourism and Trekking in Nainital Region, ed by Singh S.K and Nag P. 1999, Concept Publication
- Bisht D.S, Guide to Garhwal and Kumaun Hills, 1982, Trishul Publication, Dehradun
- Uttarakhand by Outlook Traveller, 2007
- Gupta. S.K, Tourism and Heritage Resources in Garhwal Himalaya, 2002, Kaveri Books, New Delhi

10.10 TERMINAL AND MODEL QUESTIONS

Long Questions

1. Write an essay on the popular hill resort of Uttarakhand.
2. Define the term 'Resort'. Through light on types of resorts.
3. Write an essay on the 10 best resorts of Kumaun.

Short Questions

1. What is Holiday Park?
2. What is Resort?

3. Write short notes:

- i) Ski resort
- ii) Corbett Riverside Resort
- iii) Mega resort
- iv) Role of resorts in Tourism development

Block-3

Religious and Spiritual Heritage

Unit-11

The panch kedarsand The panch badris

Structure:

- 11.1 Introduction
- 11.2 Objective
- 11.3 History of Panch Kedar's
 - 11.3.1 Kedarnath
 - 11.3.2 The Tungnath
 - 11.3.3 The Rudranath
 - 11.3.4 The Madhyamaheshwar
 - 11.3.5 The Kalpeshwar
- 11.4 History of Panch Badri's
 - 11.4.1 The Badrinath temple
 - 11.4.2 Adi Badri
 - 11.4.3 Bhavishya Badri
 - 11.4.4 Yogadhayan Badri
 - 11.4.5 Narasingh Badri
- 11.5 Summary
- 11.6 Answers to check your progress
- 11.7 References

11.1 INTRODUCTION

In this unit you will learn about the religious and historical importance of The Panch Kedars and The Pach Badris Panch Kedar refers to five Hindu temples or holy places of the Shaivite sect dedicated to god Shiva. They are located in the Garhwal Himalayan region in Uttarakhand, India. They are the subject of many legends that directly link their creation to Pandavas, the heroes of the Hindu epic Mahabharata.

The five temples designated in the strict pecking order to be followed for pilgrimage for worship are-

1. The Kedarnath at an altitude of 3,583 m / (11,755 ft)
2. The Tungnath at an altitude of 3,680 m /12,070 ft
3. The Rudranath at an altitude of 2,286 m /7,500 ft)
4. The Madhyamaheshwar at an altitude of 3,490 m /11,450 ft
5. The Kalpeshwar at an altitude of 2,200 m /7,200 ft.

The Kedarnath is the main temple, which is part of the four famous Chota Char Dhams (literally 'the small four abodes/seats') or pilgrimage centers of the Garhwal Himalayas. The other three dhams are the- Badrinath, Yamunotri and Gangotri. Kedarnath is also one of the twelve Jyotirlingas. The Garhwal region is also called the Kedar-Khanda after Kedar – the local name for Lord Shiva. The region abounds in emblems and aniconic forms of Shiva sect of Lord Shiva, much more than the Vaishnava sect. The western part of this region in particular, which constitutes half of Chamoli district being known as Kedar-Kshetra or Kedar mandala, encompasses in its ambit all the five temples constituting the Panch Kedar. Number of visitors to Kedarnath shrine is increasing rapidly every year.

Visitors to Kedarnath shrine in 87,629 in 1987 where as the number of visitors in 2007 was 557,923. The Panch Badri temple circuit consisted of only five temples dedicated to god Vishnu, located in Garhwal Himalayas in the Indian state of Uttarakhand. These five Badri's are as follows:

1. The Badrinath temple called the Badri-vishal (altitude 3,133 m (10,279 ft) is the primary temple among the seven shrines, followed by six others, namely,
2. Adi Badri, Vridha Badri
3. Bhavishya Badri
4. Yogadhayan Badri
5. Narasingh Badri

In the past two more Badri's were there constituting a group of Seven Badri's. These were Ardha Badri and Dhyani Badri or sometimes Vridha Badri the Badri-Kshetra in which all the Badri temples are located lies in the Alaknanda river valley, starting from Satapanth about 24 kilometres (15 miles) above Badrinath extending up to Nandprayag in the south.

Since the early times, approach to the main temple of Badrinath was only along a bridle path passing through badri van or (forest of berries). Thus, the word "Badri", meaning "berries", is suffixed to the names of all the Sapta Badri (seven) temples. The main shrine of Badrinath is well connected by road and air but is closed during the winter season due to snow conditions, from October–November to April–May depending on the astrological dates fixed by the Temple Committee; the Raj Purohit (Royal priest) decides the auspicious day for opening the temple phatak (doors) on Vasant Panchami day in end of April/early May while the closing day is Vijayadashami day in October/November. The other six temples are located in villages, largely in remote locations. A few of them can be approached only by trekking along bridle paths.

11.2 OBJECTIVE:

The main objective of this unit is to give the detailed information about-

1. The Historical, religious and spiritual importance of The Panch Kedar
2. The Historical, religious and spiritual importance of The Panch Badri.
3. Various tourist destinations to the students.

11.3 HISTORY OF PANCH KEDAR

In this paragraph you will learn about the history of Panch Kedar. According to the legend, after the battle of Kurukshetra, the Pandavas went to sought the blessings of Lord Shiva to atone their sins. But Lord Shiva, who din't want to meet them finally eluded. When the Pandavas came to know where Lord Shiva is, the Lord took the form of a bull to hide himself.

The Pandavas were not ready to accept it. One of the Pandava, Bhima tried his best to pick up the bull (Lord Shiva) but failed and the bull sacattered into pieces. The pieces sank into the earth but however Bhima managed to retain the hump of the bull (Lord Shiva) Impressed by the determination of Pandavas, Lord Shiva finally blessed them and freed them from their sins. The lord then asked them to worship his hump at Kedarnath. This conical protrusion is worshipped as the idol in the shrine.

The other parts of bull's (Lord Shiva's) body went as Arms (Bahu) at Tungnath, Face (mukh) at Rudranath, Navel (nabhi) at Madhyamaheshwar and Hair (jata) at Kalpeshwar.

The five temples designated in the strict pecking order to be followed for pilgrimage for worship are-

1. The Kedarnath
2. The Tungnath
3. The Rudranath
4. The Madhyamaheshwar
5. The Kalpeshwar

11.3.1 Kedarnath - Having Hump

Kedarnath, the ancient and magnificent temple is located in the Rudra Himalaya range in Rudraprayag District of the northern state of Uttarakhand. In Kedarnath lord Shiva is worshiped as one of the twelve jyotirling (linga of light).

This conical protrusion about five feet by four feet or 'jyothirlingam' is worshipped as the idol in the Kedarnath temple. Other parts emerged at four other places: arms at Tungnath, face at Rudranath, belly at Madmaheswar and the locks of hair with head at Kalpeshwar. All the five shrines are worshiped as 'Panch Kedar'. Kedarnath is highest among the 12 Jyotirlingas.

This thousand year old built temple is built of massive stone slabs over a large rectangular platform. Ascending through the large gray steps leading to the holy sanctums we find inscriptions in Pali on the steps. The inner walls of the temple sanctum are adorned with figures of various deities and scenes from mythology. The origin of the revered temple can be found in the great epic - Mahabharata. The statue of Nandi, the divine bull of Shiva, stands at the entrance of the temple as a guard. Inside the temple, there are marvellous sculptures of Kedaragouri, Krishna, Pandavas, Draupadi, Karthikeyan etc.

A conical rock formation inside the temple is worshipped as Lord Shiva in his Sadashiva form. The temple, believed to be very ancient, has been continually renovated over the centuries. Besides its affiliation with Siva, Kedarnath is also believed to be the site of Shankaracharya's samadhi (achievement of beatified afterlife). The Bhairavnath temple which is situated to the south of the main temple of Kedarnath is dedicated to Lord Bhairav, the deity who guards the main temple in winter when it is closed.

Best time to visit: The shrine is covered by snow for 6 months in a year (closed from Oct-Nov up to Apr-May) so the best time to visit Kedarnath is May to October as at the approach of winters in the month of November, the holy statue of Lord Shiva, is carried down from Kedarnath to Ukhimath. At this time, that the doors of the temple are thrown open to pilgrims. During its closure the shrine is submerged in snow and worship is performed at Ukhimath.

General Information:

- Latitude 30° 44' -1" N

- Longitude 79° 4' 0" E
- Altitude 3,581 m above sea level
- Location Very close to the Indo-Chinese border.
- Dedicated to Lord Shiva
- Built in "The present temple, built in 8th century A.D. The temple is believed to be more than 1000 years old. "

How to reach:

- By Air Nearest airport is Jolly Grant, 226 kms.
- By Rail Nearest railhead is at Rishikesh, 249 kms.
- By Route Well connected to Rishikesh, Haridwar, Dehradun and Delhi.

11.3.2 Tungnath - Having Arms (Bahu)

Tungnath, the 2nd Panch Kedar is set on the crest of a hill. It is the highest shrine on the inner Himalayan range. 3 kms. uphill from Chopta, Tungath is reached through a path that wends through alpine meadows and rhododendron thickets. It lies just below the Chandrashila peak. At this temple at 3,886 mts, Shiva's arm is worshipped. The high altitude temple is a Seat of Swyambhu Linga or the Lord Shiva Incarnate.

Tungnath is built of stone. This temple is a fine model of ancient architecture. Facing the gate of the temple is Nandi, the Divine Bull and Shiva's vehicle. There are two smaller temples dedicated to Parvati and Vyas in a small courtyard. A dark left-tilting one-foot high linga is the centre of attraction. The peak of Tungnath is the source of three springs that from the river Akashkamini. This place is also popular for its dense forests and natural aromatic flowers.

Best time to visit: The Tungnath temple opens from 6 am to 7 pm. And aarti is performed daily at 6:30 pm.

General Information:

Latitude	(data not available)
Longitude	(data not available)
Altitude	3,581 m above sea level
Location	Very close to the Indo-Chinese border.
Dedicated to	Lord Shiva
Built in	(data not available)

How to reach

By Air	Nearest Airport is Jolly Grant, 232 Kms.
By Rail	Nearest Railway station is Rishikesh, 215 Kms.
By Road	Route to Tungnath: From Rishikesh: Rishikesh > Shivpuri > DevPrayag > Srinagar > Rudraprayag > Agastyamuni > Suyal Saur > Kund > Ukhimath > Chopta > Tungnath From Gopeshwar: Badrinath Kedarnath Road > Chamoli > Gopeshwar > Mandal > Chopta - Tungnath

Accomodation: Tourist Rest House, Temple Committee Guest, Private Hotels, lodges and Dharam Shalas are available.

11.3.3 Rudranath - Having Face (mukh)

Rudranath the 3rd Pancha Kedar is situated amid thick forest at a height of 2286 m. This shrine is 23 kms from Gopeshwer. In this natural rock temple the Mukh or face of Lord Shiva is worshipped as Neelkantha Mahadeva. Lord Shiva is worshipped here as Neelkantha. This is the only temple in India where the image of Shiva is worshipped as a symbol of his face, a sublime, tender aspect of Shiva, unusual, serene and beautiful indeed to behold.

There are numbers of holy Kunds (Tanks) near Rudranath temple namely Surya kund, Chandra kund, Tara kund, Manas Kund. From Rudranath temple magnificent view is available of Hathi Parvat, Nandadevi, NandaGhunti, Trishuli and many others.

Best time to visit: The Rudranath Temple opens at 7 am, there is special Shingaar Pooja takes place at 7:30 pm. Aarti is performed in the evening at 6:30 pm.

General Information:

- Latitude (data not available)
- Longitude (data not available)
- Altitude 2286 m
- Location Gaurikund, District Rudraprayag.
- Dedicated to Mukh or face of Lord Shiva
- Built in (data not available)

How to reach:

- By Air Nearest Airport is Jolly Grant, 232 Kms.
- By Rail Nearest Railway station is Rishikesh, 215 Kms.
- By Road

Route to Tungnath:

From Rishikesh: Rishikesh > Shivpuri > DevPrayag > Srinagar > Rudraprayag > Agastyamuni > Suyal Saur > Kund > Ukhimath > Chopta > Tungnath

From Gopeshwar: Badrinath Kedarnath Road > Chamoli > Gopeshwar > Mandal > Chopta - Tungnath

- By Route from Gopeshwar 4 kms drivable road is available upto village Sagar from where 20 kms. Trek leads to Rudranath and can be approached from Joshimath as well, by trekking about 45 kms.

11.3.4 Madamaheshwar - Having Navel (nabhi)

Madhyamaheshwar, the 4th Pancha Kedar. It is located at the base of Chaukhamba peak at an altitude of 3289 mts. above the sea level, 30 kms northeast of Guptakashi. Shiva is worshipped at Madhyamaheshwar in the form of navel - shaped lingam. This classic temple architecture belongs to the North-Indian style.

From here Kedarnath and Neelkanth peaks are also visible. These peaks are said to be the entire ring of mountains associated with the life and times of shiva. The confluences of two streams at Gaundar just short of the temple, is one of the prettiest spots in the region. The temple can also be approached by a trek through the famous Sidha Peeth of Kalimath.

Best time to visit:

The temple opens at 7 am and aarti is performed in the evening from 6 pm to 6:45 pm

General Information:

- Latitude (data not available)
- Longitude (data not available)
- Altitude 3289 m
- Location Chaukhamba peak, District Chamoli.
- Dedicated to Nabhi or navel of Lord Shiva
- Built in (data not available)

How to reach:

- By Air Nearest Airport is Jolly Grant, 244 Km.
- By Rail Nearest Railway station is Rishikesh, 227 Km.
- By Route Route to Madhyamaheshwar: Rishikesh > Shivpuri > DevPrayag > Srinagar > RudraPrayag > Agastyamuni > Suyal Saur > Ukhimath > Uniana > Ransi > Gaundhar > Bantoli > Madhyamaheshwar
- Accommodation: Dharamshalas are available

11.3.5 Kalpeshwar - Having Hair (jata)

Kalpeshwar, the 5th Pancha Kedar is a small rock temple and a favorite location of meditating sages. This shrine is located in Urgam Valley at an altitude of 2,134 m. above sea level. Here the locks (hair) and head, of Lord Shiva are worshipped as JATADHAR.

Rishi Durvasa is also believed to have meditated here under the wish-fulfilling tree, Kalpavriksha. It is also said that Rishi Durvasa when, along with several disciples visited here. He told Draupadi that he and his disciples are hungry and thus expect some food from her. There was not a grain to cook for them at that time. This made Draupadi puzzled and sad. Scared with Rishi Durvasas anger she started praying Lord Krishna. Happy with her pray Lord Krishna then appeared and solved her problem.

Best time to visit: The temple opens at 7 am and aarti is performed in the evening from 6 pm to 6:45 pm

General Information:

- Latitude (data not available)
- Longitude (data not available)
- Altitude 2,134 m
- Location Urgam Valley, District Chamoli
- Dedicated to Jata or hair of Lord Shiva
- Built in (data not available)

How to reach:

- By Air Nearest Airport is Jolly Grant, 272 Km.
- By Rail Nearest Railway station is Rishikesh, 155 Km.
- By Route The temple can be reached after a trek of 10 kms from Rudranath to Helong which is the motor head on Rishikesh-Badrinath route.

- Accomodation Dharamshalas are available
-

11.5 HISTORY OF PANCH BADRI'S

In this section you will learn about the History of Panch Badri's. As per the legends there are five Badri's that has mythological evidence as well as spiritual importance in the Hindu religion. These five Badri's are:

1. The Badrinath temple
 2. Adi Badri
 3. Bhavishya Badri
 4. Yogadhayan Badri
 5. Narasingh Badri
-

11.4.1 Badrinath Temple

Badrinath is the northern Dham of the four sacred Dhams (pilgrimage centres) called Char Dham. Though the Badrinath temple is believed to date to the Vedic period, the current structure was built in the 8th century AD by Adi Shankaracharya. The other three dhams are Rameshwaram in the south, Dwarka in the west and Jagannath Puri in the east; all three temples, except Rameshwaram, are dedicated to god Vishnu.

Adi Shankara's basic intention was to unite the country under the banner of Hinduism. The temple, which had been subjected to damage due to snow avalanches and landslides, several times in the past, was last restored in the 19th century with the royal patronage of the Scindias and Holkars. Badrinath is also part of Chota Char Dham, four sacred temples in Uttarakhand. The others include the Shiva temple of Kedarnath and the sources of the holy rivers Ganges and Yamuna.

The Badrinath legend states that Vishnu (Mahavishnu), did penance in an open space at the location of the Badrikashram or Badrinath. His consort Lakshmi (Maha-lakshmi) created shelter for him in the form of Badri tree (berry tree) to protect him from adverse climatic conditions. The sage Narada did penance here, and is believed to continue to do so to this day by reciting the divine chants called

Ashta Akshara mantras (eight lettered hymns). Narada was also informed by Vishnu that his divine form subsumed both Nara and Narayana. According to the scripture Bhagavata Purana, "There in Badrikashram (Badrinath) the Personality of Godhead (Vishnu), in his incarnation as the sages Nara and Narayana had been undergoing great penance since time immemorial for the welfare of all living entities.

The layout of the temple has three enclosures namely-

1. The Garbhagriha (Sanctum Sanctorum)
2. The Darshan Mandap (worship hall)
3. The Sabha Mandap (Conference hall).

The sanctum holds the central image of Badri-narayana (Vishnu), which is made in black stone and 1 metre (3.3 ft) in height. The four-armed Vishnu holds the Shankh (Conch) and Sudarshana Chakra (discus) in two arms in a raised posture and the other two arms rest on the lap in Yogamudra (meditative pose). The images of religious leaders Adi Shankara, Swami Vedanta Desikan and Ramanujacharya are also worshipped here.

In the sanctum, to the far right side are Nara and Narayana. Narada is kneeling in front on the right side and is difficult to see. On the left side is Kubera, the god of wealth. Garuda, Vishnu's vehicle is kneeling in front, to the left of Badri-narayana. Wings at the entrance are adorned with images of Hanuman, the monkey-god and a silver Ganesha, the elephant-headed god of wisdom. In the enclosure (prakara) surrounding the temple, a small shrine is dedicated to Lakshmi, Vishnu's consort. Nambudiri Brahmins from southern state of Kerala serve as head priests here.

11.4.2 Adi Badri

The Adi Badri (30°27'27"N 77°20'28"E) the first temple complex among the Sapta Badri temples is an ancient shrine dedicated to Vishnu and is one among a chain of 16 small shrines located in the hill ranges 17 kilometres (11 miles), beyond Karnaprayag (confluence of Pindar River and Alaknanda River in Chamoli district. Seven temples of this chain were built during the late Gupta period (5th century to 8th century). *Adi Badri complex of temples near Karnaprayag*

According to tradition, Adi Shankara is attributed as builder of all the temples. Adi Shankara is believed to have sanctioned these temples in order to spread Hinduism to every remote part of the country. In ancient times, when approach to the main shrine of Badrinath was closed due to weather conditions, pilgrims worshipped Vishnu at this temple.¹ Adi Badri, also known as Helisera according to revenue records, is a tiny temple complex enclosed within a space of 14 metres (46 ft) X 30 metres (98 ft). The height of the temples varies from 2–6 meters (6.6–20 ft). The chief temple is dedicated to god Vishnu, which is built over a raised platform, with a small enclosure in a pyramidal form. The sanctum holds black stone 1 metre (3.3 ft) image of Vishnu. The image depicts Vishnu holding a mace, lotus and chakra. Brahmins from South India serve as chief priests in the temple.

Adi Badri is located 3 kilometres (1.9 miles) from Chandpur fort or Garhi located on the hilltop, which was built by the Gurkha kings to fight the British. Adi Badri is an hour's drive from Karnaprayag and close to Chulakot on the way to Ranikhet. On shifting of Badrinath (also known as Raj Badri) to Bhavishya Badri, Adi Badri will be called the Yog Badri.

11.4.3 Bhavishya Badri

Bhavishya Badri, also spelt as Bhabisya Badri, 2,744 metres (9,003 ft), above sea level) is located in a village called Subhain at a distance of 17 kilometres (11 miles) from Joshimath, beyond Tapovan and approach is through dense forest, only by trekking. It is situated on an ancient pilgrim route to Mount Kailash and

Manasarovar, along the Dhaulī Ganges River. It is situated on the way from Tapovan to Lata in the Niti valley. Bhavishya Badri is connected by a motorable road to Saldhar, 19 kilometres (12 miles), from Joshimath, beyond which a 6 kilometres (3.7 miles) trek is undertaken to reach the shrine.

According to the legend of Bhavishya Badri (literally "Badri of the future"), when evil transcends the world, the mountains of Nara and Narayana would block up the route to Badrinath and the sacred shrine would become inaccessible. The present world will be destroyed and a new one established. Then, Badrinath will appear at the Bhavishya Badri temple and be worshipped here, instead of the Badrinath shrine. The shrine of Narasingh Badri at Joshimath is closely associated with the legend of Bhavishya Badri. Currently, the Bhavishya Badri has an image of Narasimha, the lion-faced incarnation of Vishnu.

11.4.4 Yogadhyan Badri

Yogadhyan Badri, also called Yoga Badri, is located at Pandukeshwar (30°38'2"N 79°32'51"E) at the elevation of 1,829 metres (6,001 ft), close to Govind Ghat and is as ancient as the main Badrinath temple. Pandukeshwar is located on route from Govind Ghat to Hanuman Chatti, 9 kilometres (5.6 miles) away from Hanuman Chatti. Legend has it that King Pandu, father of the five Pandavas - heroes of the Hindu epic Mahabharata, meditated here to god Vishnu to cleanse him of the sin of killing of two mating deer, who were ascetics in their previous lives. The Pandavas were also born here and Pandu died and attained salvation here. Pandu is believed to have installed the bronze image of Vishnu in the Yogadhyan Badri shrine. The image is in a meditative posture and thus the image is called Yoga-dhyan (mediative) Badri. The idol is life size and has been carved from Shaligram stone. According to legend, the Pandavas, after defeating and killing their cousins Kauravas in the Mahabharata war, came here to repent. They handed their kingdom

of Hastinapur to their grandson Parikshit and went to perform penance in the Himalayas.

Copper plate inscriptions found here indicate rule by early Katyuri Rajas and the region was known as Panchal Desh, now officially designated as Uttarakhand. One inscription extols the grant of land given by King Nimbarana. Another historic location is the Suryakund, on top of Milam glacier, which is a hot water spring, where Kunti - mother of Pandavas gave birth to her illegitimate son Karna, fathered by the sun-god Surya. Kunti was married to Pandu at Pandukeshwar. Yogdhyan Badri is also considered the winter abode for the Utsava-murti (festival-image) of Badrinath, when the temple of Badrinath is closed. Hence, it is religiously ordained that a pilgrimage will not be complete without offering prayers at this place. Bhatts (priests) from South India serve as chief priests in the temple.

11.4.5 Narasingh Badri

The existing temple of Narasimha (Narasingh) at Joshimath (30°33'3"N 79°33'30"E), also called as Narasingh Badri or Narasimha Badri, is closely linked to the Bhavishya Badri legend, even though usually it is regarded as not one of the famous Panch Badri or Sapta Badri. Sometimes, it may be included in the Sapta-Badri list instead of Ardha-Badri or Panch-Badri list instead of Dhyan Badri.

The chief image of Narasimha is made out of the Shaligram stone, in the eighth century during the reign of King Lalitaditya Yukta Pida of Kashmir. Some believe the image is self-manifested (swayambhu). The image is 10 inches (25 cm) high and depicts the god sitting in the lotus position.

It is believed that one arm of the image is getting emaciated with time and finally fall off. When the arm disappears, the main shrine of Badrinath will be closed to the world and Lord Badrinath will shift to Bhavishya Badri shrine. With this cataclysmic event, Kali Yuga will end ushering in the Satya Yuga. Then the Badrinath shrine would get re-established. When the chief Badrinath shrine is closed

in winter, the priests of Badrinath shift to this temple and continue their worship to Badrinath here. Along with the central Narasimha image, the temple also has an image of Badrinath.

11.5 SUMMARY:

After reading this unit you must have been aware of the various facts about The Panch Kedar and The Panch Badri's. Following are the key points which give the overview of what we have discussed in this unit.

- The five Kedar lies in the valleys between the rivers Bhagirathi and Alaknanda.
- The term Kedar itself means a natural rock formation or a glacial moraine.
- Himalayas Kedarnath, the chief seat of the Panch Kedar, come into being during the period when the five Pandava brothers were asked to seek Shiva's blessings, purging them off sin of fratricide, or killing their cousin brothers in the terrifying battle of Kurukshetra.
- Shiva disguised himself as a bull and started to plunge underground when he was spotted by Pandavas.
- The natural rock formation that is worshipped in Kedarnath resembles the rump of bull.
- The other four places where Shiva is worshipped take their appearance from different part of his body - the navel at Madmaheshwar, the arm at Tungnath, the face at Rudranath, and the matted hair at Kalpeshwar.
- The five Badries are revered by all as the apt tribute to Lord Vishnu.
- He loved the place so much that he plotted to unseat Shiva from his meditation here.
- Considered one of the Char Dham or four principle places of Hindu worship at Himalayas, Badrinath four subsidiary Badries include Bhavishya Badri, Yogdhyan Badri, Vridha Badri and Adi Badri.

11.6 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. Write a brief history of Panch Kedar
2. Write a brief history of Panch Badri
3. Name five temples of Panch Kedar and write in brief about them.
4. Name five temples of Panch Kedar and write in brief about them.

11.7 REFERENCES

- <http://www.garhwaltourism.com/panch-badri/>
- <http://www.badrinathdham.com/panchbadri>
- http://www.uttarakhandtourism.net/panch_kedar_yatra.htm
- <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rudranath>
- http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adi_Shankara

Unit-12

The Gangotri, The Yamunotri and Popular Shaktipeeth

Structure:

12.1 Introduction

12.2 Objectives

12.3 The Gangotri

13.3.1 Religious significance of Gangotri

13.3.2 Places to visit in and around Gangotri

12.4 The Yamunotri

13.4.1 Religious Significance of Yamunotri

13.4.2 Yamunotri Temple

12.5 Popular Shaktipeeth

13.5.1 Religious and Spiritual Importance of Shaktipeeth

13.5.2 Four Adi Shaktipeeth

13.5.3 List of 4 Adi Shaktipeeth

13.5.4 The 51 Shaktipeeth

13.5.5 History of Shaktipeeth

13.5.6 18 Maha Shakti Pithas

12.6 Answers to check your progress

12.7 References

12.1 INTRODUCTION

Uttarakhand is also revered as the '**abode of gods**' because of the uncountable ancient temples situated here. Every mountain, every rock and every stream of Uttarakhand is somewhat associated with the mythological background of India. The sacred shrines of Gangotri, Yamunotri, Lord Shiva's Panch Kedar, Lord Vishnu's Panch Badri and numerous other renowned Shaktipeeths are situated in Uttarakhand. Millions of devotees visit Uttarakhand every month to visit sacred pilgrims and to perform ritual practices. In Uttarakhand all the gods and goddesses resides on the highest seat to bestow the devotees with blessings. Wash your sins by taking a holy dip in the sacred Ganga River, make a wish inside the temple in front of the god, praise the beauty of nature and go home with an invigorated soul.

12.2 OBJECTIVE

The objective of this unit is to impart the knowledge of-

- Spiritual and historical significance of Gangotri
- Spiritual and Historical significance of Yamunotri
- Spiritual and Historical significance of Shaktipeeth
- Various tourist destinations near Gangotri and Yamunotri

12.3 THE GANGOTRI

Gangotri is a town and a Nagar Panchayat (municipality) in Uttarkashi district in the state of Uttarakhand, India. It is a Hindu pilgrim town on the banks of the river Bhagirathi. It is on the Greater Himalayan Range, at a height of 3,100m.

Gangotri, the origin of the River Ganges and seat of the goddess Ganga, is one of the four sites in the Char Dham pilgrimage circuit. The original Gangotri Temple was built by the Gurkha general Amar Singh Thapa. The river is called Bhagirathi at the source and acquires the name Ganga (the Ganges) from Devprayag onwards where it meets the Alaknanda. The origin of the holy river is at Gaumukh, set in the Gangotri Glacier, and is a 19 km trek from Gangotri.

12.3.1 Religious Significance of Gangotri

According to this legend, King Sagar, after slaying the demons on earth decided to stage an Ashwamedha Yajna as a proclamation of his supremacy. The horse which was to be taken on an uninterrupted journey around the earth was to be accompanied by the King's 60,000 sons born to Queen Sumati and one son Asamanja born of the second queen Kesani. Indra, supreme ruler of the gods feared that he might be deprived of his celestial throne if the 'Yagya' (worship with fire) succeeded and then took away the horse and tied it to the ashram of Sage Kapil, who was then in deep meditation. The sons of the King Sagara searched for the horse and finally found it tied near the meditating sage. Sixty thousand angry sons of King Sagara stormed the ashram of sage Kapil. When he opened his eyes, the 60,000 sons had all perished, by the curse of sage Kapil. Bhagiratha, the grandson of King Sagar, is believed to have meditated to please the Goddess Ganga enough to cleanse the ashes of his ancestors, and liberate their souls, granting them salvation or Moksha.

12.3.2 Places to visit in and around Gangotri

1. Gaumukh Glacier: This is the snout of the Gangotri glacier and the present source of the Bhagirathi River. It is held in high esteem by the devotees who do not miss the opportunity to have a holy dip in the bone chilling icy water.

GAUMUKH

BHAGIRATHI PEAK AT GAUMUKH

SURYAKUND

GAURIKUND

The 18 km distance from Gangotri has to be covered on foot by ponies. The trek is easy and many people come back to Gangotri the same day. Porters and ponies are available for excursions to Gaumukh and other trekking routes at Gangotri. There is a Tourist Bungalow at Bhojbas, 14 km from Gangotri where lodging and other facilities are available.

2. **Submerging Shivling:** Submerged in the river, this natural rock Shivling is the place where, according to mythology, Lord Shiva sat when he received the Ganga in his matted locks. It is visible in winter months when water level decreases.
3. **Nandanvan Tapovan:** These two spots are situated opposite the Gangotri glacier further up from Gaumukh, at a distance of 6 km from where visitors can have a superb view of the majestic Shivling peak.
4. **Kedartal:** A spectacular lake situated at a distance of about 18 km trek from Gangotri, negotiable through a rough mountain trail. The trek is very trying and testing even for a hardy trekker. There no facility of any kind on the way and one has to make all arrangements in advance.
5. **Kedar Ganga Sangam:** Around 100 yards from the Ganga temple, flows the river Kedar Ganga. Starting from the Kedar valley, this river meets the Bhagirathi River on it's left bank.
6. **Bhaironghati:** 10 km from Gangotri. A stride to the Uttarkashi and near the confluence of Jat Ganga and Bhagirathi rivers is situated, Bhagirathi. The temple of Bhairav Nath surrounded by thick forests is worth visiting.
7. **Harsil:** 26 km from Gangotri. Located in the topographically mountainous district of Uttarkashi, this hamlet is famous for its natural beauty and delicious apples. Harsil is situated at a distance of 72 km from Uttarkashi on the main highway to Gangotri and is at a height of 2,620 mt, above sea-level. From Harsil, the adventurous tourist can trek to Sat Tal, situated just above Dharali, 2 km beyond Harsil, to be greeted by the rewarding sight of seven lakes situated amidst beautiful natural surroundings. The Harsil-Jangala Chatti route is amidst dense Deodar forest.
8. **Bhairon Mandir:** After traveling by road from Lanka to Bhaironghati one has to cross the Jahanvi River on foot. After crossing the Jahanvi river and moving uphill, the Bhairon temple can be seen.

9. Gangnani: 55 km from Gangotri. Noted for its thermal springs and close-up views of famous mountain peaks, its peaceful and tranquilising environment provides an ideal setting for meditation.

Maneri: 92 km from Gangotri. It has lately emerged as a place of tourist interest as a result of the construction of a dam across the Bhagirathi river, from where the water is fed to the turbines through an 8 km long tunnel at Tiloth in Uttarkashi. The resultant lake at Maneri has added to the charm of the place.

First sighting of the River Bhagirathi at Maneri, about 10 km from Uttarkashi

12.4 THE YAMUNOTRI

Yamunotri is the source of the Yamuna River and the seat of the Goddess Yamuna in Hinduism. It is situated at an altitude of 3,293 metres (10,804 ft) in the Garhwal Himalayas and located approximately 30 kilometers in North of Uttarkashi, It is one of the four sites in India's Chhota Char Dham pilgrimage. The sacred shrine of Yamunotri, source of the river Yamuna, is the westernmost shrine in the Garhwal Himalayas, perched atop a flank of Bandar Poonch Parvat. The chief attraction at Yamunotri is the temple devoted to the Goddess Yamuna and the holy thermal springs at Janki Chatti (7 km. Away).

The actual source, a frozen lake of ice and glacier (Champasar Glacier) located on the Kalind Mountain at a height of 4,421 m above sea level, about 1 km further up, is not frequented generally as it is not accessible; hence the shrine has been located on the foot of the hill. The approach is extremely difficult and pilgrims therefore offer puja at the temple itself.

The temple of Yamuna, on the left bank of the Yamuna, was constructed by Maharaja Pratap Shah of Tehri Garhwal. The deity is made of black marble. The Yamuna, like the Ganges, has been elevated to the status of a divine mother for the Hindus and has been held responsible for nurturing and developing the Indian civilization. Close to the temple are hot water springs gushing out from the mountain cavities.

Surya Kund is the most important kund. Near the Surya Kund there is a shila called Divya Shila, which is worshipped before puja is offered to the deity. Devotees prepare rice and potatoes, tied in muslin cloth, to offer at the shrine by dipping them in these hot water springs. Rice so cooked is taken back home as prasadam. The pujaris of Yamunotri come from the village of Kharsali near Janki Chatti. They are the administrators of the sacred place and perform religious rites.

12.4.1 Religious Significance of Yamunotri

According to the legend ancient, sage Asit Muni had his hermitage here. All his life, he bathed daily both in the Ganges and the Yamuna. Unable to go to Gangotri during his old age, a stream of the Ganges appeared opposite Yamunotri for him. The temple and the place open every year on the auspicious day of the Akshaya Tritiya, which generally falls during the last week of April, or the first week of May. The temple always closes on the sacred day of Diwali in mid-October - first week of November, with a brief ceremony. The temple staff return to their villages and for the rest of the time the valley is gripped in no-man silence and covered with a white sheet of snow. With the melting of the snow next summer, the temple re-opens. The daughter of the Sun god, Surya and consciousness, Sangya the birthplace of the Yamuna is the Champasar Glacier (4,421 m) just below the Banderpoonch Mountain. The mountain adjacent to the river source is dedicated to her father, and is called Kalind Parvat, Kalind being another name of Surya. Yamuna is known for her frivolousness, a trait that she developed because, according to a common story, Yamuna's mother could never make eye contact with her dazzling husband.

12.4.2 Yamunotri Temple

Yamunotri Temple is situated in the western region of Garhwal Himalayas at an altitude of 3,235 metres (10,614 ft) in Uttarkashi district, Uttarakhand.^[3] The original temple was built by Maharani Guleria of Jaipur in the 19th century. The current temple is of recent origin as earlier constructions have been destroyed by

weather and the elements. There seems to be a confusion as to who built the temple of Yamunotri. However according to sources, the temple was originally constructed by Maharaja Pratap Shah of Tehri Garhwal.

12.5 POPULAR SHAKTI PEETH

The Shakti Peethas are places of worship consecrated to the goddess Shakti or Sati, the female principal of Hinduism and the main deity of the Shakta sect. They are sprinkled throughout the Indian subcontinent.

This goddess Shakti, the Goddess of power is the complete incarnation of Adi Shakti, has three chief manifestations as-

1. Durga- Goddess of strength and valour
2. Mahakali- goddess of destruction of evil
3. Goddess Gowri- the goddess of benevolence.

12.5.1 Religious and Spiritual Importance of Shaktipeeth

When Lord Brahma was tired after creating the universe, he performed a yajna (Vedic ritual of fire sacrifice) to please Shakti and Shiva. Goddess Shakti emerged, separating from Shiva and helped Brahma in the creation of the universe. Brahma decided to give Shakti back to Shiva. Therefore his son Daksha performed several yajnas to obtain Shakti as his daughter in the form of Sati. It was then decided that Sati was brought into this world with the motive of getting married to Shiva.

However, due to Lord Shiva's curse to Brahma that he would not be worshiped and also his fifth head was cut off due to his lie in front of Shiva, Daksha started hating Lord Shiva and decided not to let Lord Shiva and Sati get married. However, Sati got attracted to Shiva and finally one day Shiva and Sati got married. This marriage only increased Daksha's hatred towards Lord Shiva.

Daksha performed a yajna with a desire to take revenge on Lord Shiva. Daksha invited all the deities to the yajna except Lord Shiva and Sati. The fact that she was not invited did not deter Sati from attending the yajna. She expressed her desire to

attend the yajna to Shiva, who tried his best to dissuade her from going. Shiva eventually relented and Sati went to the yajna. Sati, being an uninvited guest, was not given any respect at the yajna. Furthermore, Daksha insulted Shiva. Sati was unable to bear her father's insults toward her husband, so she immolated herself.

Enraged at the insult and the injury, Shiva destroyed Daksha's yajna, cut off Daksha's head, and later replaced it with that of a male goat as he restored him to life. Still immersed in grief, Shiva picked up the remains of Sati's body, and performed the Tandava, the celestial dance of destruction, across all creation. The other Gods requested Vishnu to intervene to stop this destruction, towards which Vishnu used the Sudarshana Chakra, which cut through the Sati's corpse. The various parts of the body fell at several spots all through the Indian subcontinent and formed sites which are known as Shakti Peethas today.

At all the Shakti Peethas, the Goddess Shakti is accompanied by her consort, Lord Bhairava (a manifestation of Lord Shiva). Shakti is an aspect of the Supreme Being Adi parashakti, the mother of the trimurti, the holy trinity in Hindu mythology.

12.5.2 Four Adi Shaktipeeth

Some of the great religious texts like the Shiva Purana, the Devi Bhagavata, the Kalika Purana and the AstaShakti recognize four major Shakti Peethas-

1. Bimala (Pada Khanda)- Inside the Jagannath temple of Puri, Orissa
2. Tara Tarini (Sthana Khanda, Purnagiri, Breasts)- Near Berhampur, Orissa
3. Kamakhya (Yoni khanda) - Near Guwahati, Assam
4. Dakhina Kalika (Mukha khanda)- In Kolkata, West Bengal, originated from the limbs of the Corpse of Mata Sati in the Satya Yuga.

The Astashakti and Kalika Purana says (in Sanskrit): "Bimala Pada khandancha, Sthana khandancha Tarini (Tara Tarini), Kamakshya Yoni

khandancha, Mukha khandancha Kalika (Dakshina Kalika) Anga pratyanga sanghena Vishnu Chakra Kshyta nacha"

Further explaining the importance of these four Pithas, the "Brihat Samhita" also gives the location of these Pithas as (In Sanskrit) "Rushikulya* Tatae Devi, Tarakashya Mahagiri, Tashya Srunga Stitha Tara Vasishta Rajitapara" (Rushikulya is a holy river flowing on the foot hill of the Tara Tarini Hill Shrine).

12.5.3 List of Four (4) Adi Shakti Peeth

In the listings below:

- "Shakti" refers to the Goddess worshipped at each location, all being manifestations of Dakshayani, Parvati or Durga;
- "Body Part or Ornament" refers to the body part or piece of jewellery that fell to earth, at the location on which the respective temple is built.

S.No	Place	Body Part or Ornament
1	In Puri, Orissa (inside Jagannath Temple complex)	Pada Bimala
2	Near Berhampur, Orissa	Sthana khanda Tara Tarini
3	Guwahati-Assam	Yoni khanda Kamakshya
4	Kolkata- West Bengal	Mukha khanda Dakshina Kalika

Apart from these four there are 52 other famous Peethas recognised by religious texts. According to the Pithanirnaya Tantra the 52 peethas are scattered all over India, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh, Nepal, Tibet, Bhutan and Pakistan. The Shivacharita besides listing 52 maha-peethas speaks about 26 more upa-peethas. The Bengali almanac, Vishuddha Siddhanta Panjika too describes the 52 peethas including the present modified addresses. A few of the several accepted listings are

given below. One of the few in South India, Srisailam in Andhra Pradesh became the site for a 2nd century temple. In the listings below:

- "Shakti" refers to the Goddess worshipped at each location, all being manifestations of Dakshayani, Parvati or Durga;
- "Bhairava" refers to the corresponding consort, each a manifestation of Shiva;
- "Body Part or Ornament" refers to the body part or piece of jewellery that fell to earth, at the location on which the respective temple is built.

12.5.4 The Fifty One (51) Shakti Peeth

1. Hingula (Hinglaj) Devi's mind or brain fell here and the idols are Devi as Kotari (Durga) and Shiva as Bhimlochan (Terrible eyed or the third eye). The location is towards 125 km from Karachi, Pakistan.
2. Sharkarare or Karavipur Devi's three eyes fell here and the idols are Devi as Mahishmardini (Durga the destroyer of Mahishashur) and Shiva as Krodhish (the one who can be angry). It is near Karachi in Pakistan, by rail the nearest station is Parkai.
3. Jwalamukhi, Kangra, Devi's tongue fell here and the idols are Devi as Ambika (Mother) and Shiva as Unmatta (Furious). This is located near Pathankot, H.P., and Jwalamukhi Road.
4. Sugandha Devi's nose fell here and idols are Devi as Sunanada (Pleasing) and Shiva as Traimbak (Rudra). In the state of Bengal near Barishal in Shivahri Karpur village Devi's temple is located and Shiva's temple is in a village called Ponabalia, nearest railway station is Jhalkati.
5. On Bhairabha Mountain near Avanti Devi's upper lips fell here and idols are Devi as Avanti (Modest) and Shiva as Lambakarna (Long eared one). It is located near Ujjain.
6. Attahas (laughter) Devi's lower lips fell here and the idols are Devi as Fullara (Blooming) and Shiva as Bhairabhvishesya (Lord of the universe). The place is in

Bengal near Birbhum. Image of Devi and the Shiva temple is next to the Devi temple. It is a major pilgrimage and tourist attraction.

7. Prabhas Devi's stomach fell here and the idols are Devi as Chandrabhaga (Throne of the moon) and Shiva as Bakratunda (the one with the bent staff). This is near Mumbai where a launch goes to Bharoal which is near Prabhas.
8. Yanasthana Devi's chin fell here and the idols are Devi as Bhramari (female Bumble bee or attendant of Durga) and Shiva as Vikrakatakkha (one with the crooked eyes or look). Other names are Devi as Chibuka (the one with the chin) and Shiva as Sarvasiddhish (the one who can provide all desires).
9. Godavari (river) Devi's left cheek fell here and the idols are Viswamatuka (mother of the world) and Shiva as Dandapani (the one who holds a staff).
10. Gandaki (river) Devi's right cheek fell here and the idols are Devi as Gandakichandi (the one who overcomes obstacles or Gandi) and Shiva as Chakrapani (Holder of the discus).
11. Suchidesha Devi's upper teeth fell here and the idols are Devi as Narayani (the wife of Narayan) and Shiva as Sanghar. Panchasagar – Devi's lower teeth fell here and the idols are Devi as Barahi and Shiva as Maharudra (the angry one).
12. Bhavanipur or Karota (river) Devi's left seat or her clothing fell here and idols are Devi as Aparna (the one who ate nothing, not even leaves) and Shiva as Bhairabha (Destroyer of fear). The King of Nator and his grandson the Maharajah Ramakrishna used to meditate here. The seat, the yognakunda and five skulls are still here. In the month of Baisakha according to the Bengali calendar, there is a large fete or Mela here to celebrate Ramanavami or Deepanbita.
13. Shriparvata or Shri Mountain Devi's right seat fell here and the idols are Devi as Shri Sunadari (beautiful) and Shiva as Sundaranand (the handsome one).
14. Karnat Devi's two ears fell here and the idols are Devi as Jai Durga (the victorius Durga) and Shiva as Avirooka.

15. Vrindavana Devi's hair fell here and idols are Devi as Uma (Devi) and Shiva as Bhootesh (or provider of all desires). Playgorund of Lord Krishna and the gopis.
16. Kirit Devi's crown or headdress fell here and idols are Devi as Vimala (Pure) and Shiva as Sangbarta. Take the train to Ajimganj. The temples are on the shore of the Ganges near Batnagar. (In Bangladesh?)
17. Shrihatta Devi's nape of the neck fell here and the idols are Devi as Mahalakshmi (the goddess of prosperity and wife of Mahavishnu) and Shiva as Sarvananda (the one who makes everyone happy). Devi's temple is Near Shrihatta town and Shiva's temple is near Jainpur. Shivaratri and Ashokashtami are celebrated with a Mela (carnival). Take train from Calcutta to Goalanda and steamer to Kechuaganj. Then either take a boat or walk about five miles (6 koshas).
18. Nalhati Devi's vocal pipe fell here and the idols are Devi as Kalika (Durga) and Shiva as Yogesh. By train from Howrah station.
19. Kashmir Devi's neck fell here and the idols are Devi as Mahamaya (the great Illusion) and Shiva as Trisandhyasvar. The famous pilgrimage is Amarnath. There is a Shiva linga of glacial ice which expands and contracts with the seasons.
20. Ratnabali Devi's right shoulder fell here and the idols are Devi as Kumari (Durga) and Shiva as Bhairabha (Remover of fear).
21. Mithila Devi's left shoulder fell here and the idols are Devi as Mahadevi (Devi) and Shiva as Mahodara (the big belied one). This is near Janakpur station.
22. Chattagram (also called Chattal) Devi's right arm fell here and the idols are Devi as Bhavani (Devi) and Shiva as Chandrashekhar (the one who has the moon as the crown). It is said that Mahadeva has himself pronounced that he will visit Chandrashekhar Mountain regularly during Kali Yuga. This is near Sitakunda station. This is in Bangladesh.
23. Manav Kschetra (Field) Devi's right hand or palm fell her and the idols are Devi as Dakhchayani (Durga) and Shiva as Amar (Immortal). Take train from Howrah

- station to Guskar station and then a few miles to Kogram. Mahadeva is considered Siddhidayaka or provider of all wishes.
24. Ujjaini Devi's elbows fell here and the idols are Devi as Mangalchandi (Durga) and Shiva as Kapilambar (one who wears the brown clothes). Shiva is siddhidayaka.
 25. Manibandha Devi's middle of the palms fell here and the idols are Devi as Gayatri (Saraswati) and Shiva as Sarvananda (the one who makes everyone happy).
 26. Prayag (three rivers meet here) Devi's ten fingers fell here and the idols are Devi as Lalita (beautiful). Another name is Alopi and Shiva as Bhava. Near Tribeni ghat there is Banitirtha ghat (Quay for boats). Allahabad is the train station.
 27. Ramgiri (or Chitrakoot mountain) Devi's left breast fell here (another opinion is that her Nala or Jaghanasti fell here) and the idols are Devi as Shibani (the wife of Shiva) and Shiva as Chanda. Near Bilaspur station and a walk of 2 miles.
 28. Bahula Devi's left arm fell here and the idols are Devi as Bahula (Abundant) and Shiva as Bhiruk (who is also Sarvasiddhadayaka). Arrive at Katoa rail station and then go to Ketugram which is a pilgrimage.
 29. Jalandhar Devi's right breast fell here and the idols are Devi as Tripurmalini (Durga) and Shiva as Bhisar (Gruesome). Jwalamukhi is the nearby Tirtha and train goes from Delhi to Jalandhar.
 30. Vaidyanath Devi's heart fell here and the idols are Devi as Jaidurga (Victorious Durga) and Shiva as Vaidyanath. It is in Bihar. Joshidi is the train station.
 31. Utkal, Orissa, Devi's navel fell here and the idols are Devi as Vimala (the pure one) and Shiva as Jagannath (the ruler of the world). This is near the Jagannath temple of Puri in the state of Orissa.
 32. Kanchidesh Devi's skeleton fell here and the idols are Devi as Devagarbha and Shiva as Ruru. Bolpur station to Kopar river banks. There is a well for worship.

33. Kalmadhava Devi's right hips fell here and the idols are Devi as Kali (another form of Durga) and Shiva as Asitananda. By praying to the Devi profusely pilgrims can obtain their desired objective.
34. Sone (near Sone river) Devi's left hips fell here and the idols are Devi as Narmada and Shiva as Vadrasen.
35. Kamakhya (or Kamroop) Devi's yoni fell here and the idols are Devi as Kamakhya (personification of love) and Shiva as Umananda. This is near Gauhati in the state of Assam on the banks of the Brahmaputra (the son of Brahma) river. The temple is on top of the Nilachal Hill. This is a famous pilgrimage for women seeking fertility or love. The temple is supposedly built by Kamdev, the god of love. The Umananda temple is nearby in an islet on the river. It has many pet monkeys.
36. Nepal Devi's two knees fell here and the idols are Devi as Mahashira and Shiva as Kapali.
37. Jayanti Devi's left thigh fell here and the idols are Devi as Jayanti and Shiva as Kramadiswar. In Bengal near Sri Hatta.
38. Magadha Devi's right thigh fell here and the idols are Devi as Sarvanandari and Shiva as Bomkesha. Inside Shrihatta at Jayantipargana near the base of the Kahshia Mountain Devi's legs are placed here. Srihatta to Kanairghat by boat and then walk 2 miles. In West Bengal.
39. Tripura Devi's right foot fell here and the idols are Devi as Tripurasundari and Shiva as Tripuresh. Devi is grantor of all wishes or Sarvavishta pradyani.
40. Khirgram Devi's right toe fell here and the idols are Devi as Yogadaya and Shiva as Khirakantha. Take Eastern Indian Railway to Bardwhan station. Take Bardwhan Katoa Rail to Nigam station. Nigam station to Khirgram (village) is 2 miles. A mela (fete) is held during Baisakha Sankranti.
41. Kalighat (Kolkotta) Devi's four small toes from her right foot fell here and the idols are Devi as Kali and Shiva as Nakulish or Nakuleswar. Famous pilgrimage

located in Kolkotta in the state of West Bengal. Kali is a dark complexioned form of Shakti who has taste for blood and death. She rules over the cremation sites and is worshipped by devotees on a dark and moon less night. She is a popular deity of Bengal. kali is the female version of Kala or end of time.

42. Kurukchetra (or fields belonging to the Kuru family where the battle of the Mahbharata was fought between the Kurus and Pandus) Devi's right ankle fell here and the idols are Devi as Savitri or Sthanu and Shiva as Aswanath.
43. Bakreswar Devi's mind or the centre of the brows fell here and the idols are Devi as Mahishamardini (the slayer of Mahishasur or Durga) and Shiva as Bakranath. Near Ahmedpur station. There are seven hot springs and also the Paphara (remover of sins) river. The Mahamuni Ashtabakra found enlightenment here. On Shivaratri (night) there is a grand Mela (fete) here.
44. Jessore Devi's centre of the hands fell here and the idols are Jashoreswari and Shiva as Chanda (Moon or the one who holds the moon).
45. Nandipur Devi's necklace fell here and the idols are Devi as Nandini and Shiva as Nandikishore.
46. Varanasi (Benaras) Devi's earrings (Kundal) fell here and the idols are Devi as VishwaLakschmi (The provider of wealth to all) and Shiva as Kala (Time or the end of time). Famous pilgrimage in UP and one of the oldest cities in the world. The Puranas say that this city exists even after the Pralaya.
47. Kanashram or Kalikashram Devi's back fell here and the idols are Devi as Sharvani and Shiva as Nimisha.
48. Lanka her feet bells (Nupur) fell here and the idols are Devi as Indrakschi and Shiva as Rakchaseswara. Indrakschi was created and worshipped by Indra in person.
49. Virat Devi's small toes of the feet fell here and idols are Devi as Ambika and Shiva as Amrita (nectar of immortality).

50. Bivasa Devi's left ankle fell here and the idols are Devi as Bhimarupa and Shiva as Sarvananda.

51. Trisnota Devi's left feet fell here and the idols are Devi as Vramari (Bumblebee) and Shiva as Iswar (God). On the banks of Tista river in Shalbari village in Jalpaiguri district in West Bengal

- Chandi Mandir in (near Memari Rail station) Memari, Bardhaman, West Bengal, Fullara in Birbhum district are also considered to be a Shakti peetha.
- Hedavde Mahalaxmi Mandir, Maharashtra.
- Naina Devi Temple. Nainadevi in Himachal Pradesh (Bilaspur) is also considered a Shakti peetha, where Sati's eyes fell.
- Sharda Devi Temple at Maihar near Satna Dist. Satna is also considered a Shakti peeth where the necklace of Sati fell.
- Bhadrakali Temple in holy city Kurukshetra (Haryana) is also considered as one of the 51 holy Shakti peethas. The temple is dedicated to Bhadrakali a form of Shakti. This is considered to be one of the fifty one Shakti pithas of India. It is believed that the right ankle of Sati fell here in the well. The "consort of Savtri is called Sthanu". Hence, the city is called "Staneshwar" meaning abode of Shiva. It is believed that the mundun (hair removing) ceremony of Srikrishna and Balarama was also performed in this temple.
- Kalika Mata Temple at Pavagadh near Vadodara in Gujarat is also considered Shakti peeth where a part of Sati's toe is said to be fallen.

12.5.5 History of Shaktipeeth

First relating to Brahmanda Purana, one of the major eighteen Puranas, it mentions 64 Shakthi Peetha of Goddess Parvati in the Bharat or Greater India including present day India, Bangladesh, Nepal, Pakistan and Sri Lanka. Another text which gives a listing of these shrines is the Shakthi Peetha Stotram, written by Adi Shankara, the 9th century Hindu philosopher.

According to the manuscript Mahapithapurana (circa 1690-1720 CE), there are 52 such places. Among them, 23 are located in the Bengal region, 14 of these are located in what is now West Bengal, India, 1 in Baster (Chattisgarh), while 7 are in what is now Bangladesh.

Rishi Markandeya composed the 'Devi Saptashati' or the seven hundred hymns extolling the virtues of the Divine Goddess at the shaktipeetha in Nashik. The idol is also leaning a little to the left to listen to the sages composition. The Saptashati or the "Durga Stuti" forms an integral part in the vedic form of Shakti worship. Preserving the mortal relics of famous and respected individuals was a common practice in ancient India - seen in the Buddhist stupas which preserve the relics of Gautama Buddha. It is believed by some that these 64 peethas preserve the remains of some ancient female sage from whom the legend of Kali could have emerged and then merged with the Purusha - Prakriti (Shiva Shakti) model of Hindu thought

12.5.6 Eighteen (18) Maha Shakti Pithas

The modern cities or towns that correspond to these 64 locations can be a matter of dispute, but there are a few that are totally unambiguous, these are mentioned in the Ashta Dasa Shakthi Peetha Stotram by Adi Shankara. This list contains 18 such locations which are often referred to as Maha Shakthi Peeths.

No	Place	Part of the Body Fallen	Name of Shakti
1	Trincomalee (Sri Lanka)	Groin	Shankari devi
2	Kanchi (Tamil Nadu)	Back part	Kamakshi Devi
3	Pandua (West Bengal)	Stomach	Srigala Devi

4	Mysore (Karnataka)	Hair	Chamundeshwari devi
5	Alampur (Andhra Pradesh)	Upper teeth	Jogulamba devi
6	Srisailem (Andhra Pradesh)	Neck part	Bhramaramba devi
7	Kolhapur (Maharashtra)	Eyes	Mahalakshmi devi
8	Mahur (Nanded District, Maharashtra)	Right hand	Renuka Devi
9	Ujjain (Madhya Pradesh)	Upper lip	Mahakali devi
10	Pithapuram (Andhra Pradesh)	Left hand	Puruhutika devi
11	Purnagiri Temple, Tanakpur State (Uttarakhand India)	Navel	Purnagiri temple Tanakpur, Uttarakhand India
12	Draksharamam (Andhra Pradesh)	Left cheek	Manikyamba devi
13	Guwahati (Assam)	Vulva	Kamarupa devi
14	Prayaga (Uttar Pradesh)	Fingers	Lalita devi
15	Katra, Jammu and Kashmir	Head part	Vaishnavi devi

16	Gaya (Bihar)	Breast part	Sarvamangala devi
17	Varanasi (Uttar Pradesh)	Wrist	Vishalakshi devi
18	Kashmir*	Right hand	Saraswathi devi

[*]This temple is currently non-existent. Only ruins are found in these places. Instead, Sringeri in Karnataka is believed to be the Shakti Peeth of this aspect of the goddess.

Among these, the Shakti Peethas at Kamakhya, Gaya and Ujjain are regarded as most sacred as they symbolise three most important aspects of mother Goddess viz. Creation (Kamarupa Devi), Nourishment (Sarvamangala Devi/Mangalagauri) and Annihilation (Mahakali Devi).

When observed carefully one can see that they lie in a perfect straight line from Kamakhya to Ujjain via Gaya symbolizing that every creation in this universe will annihilate one day without fail.

12.6 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. Explain in brief about the religious significance of Gangotri.
2. Explain in brief about the religious significance of Yamunotri.
3. Explain in brief about the religious significance of Shaktipeeth
4. Name four Adi Shaktipeeth

12.7 REFERENCES

- <http://www.eUttarakhand.com/tourism/gangotri.php>
- <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gangotri>
- <http://www.goibibo.com/travel-guide/barkot/>
- <http://www.bhadrakalishaktipeeth.com/18mahashaktipeeth.php>
- http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shakti_Peethas

- http://www.riiti.com/316/51_shakti_peethas_of_ma_durga

Unit 13: Religious and Spiritual Significance of Haridwar, Rishikesh, Joshimath and Uttarkashi

Structure

- 13.1 Introduction
- 13.2 Objectives
- 13.3 History of Haridwar
 - 13.3.1 In Ancient Literature
 - 13.3.2 In Middle Ages
 - 13.3.3 In Modern Times
- 13.4 Mythological significance of Haridwar (Hara-Dwar)
 - 13.4.1 The place of immortality
 - 13.4.2 The Gateway to Chardham
 - 13.4.3 Chardham
- 13.5 Spiritual Significance of Haridwar
- 13.6 Rishikesh
- 13.7 Religious Significance of Rishikesh
- 13.8 Spiritual Significance of Rishikesh
- 13.9 Places to visit at Rishikesh
- 13.10 Joshimath
- 13.11 Places to visit near Joshimath
- 13.12 Uttarkashi
- 13.13 Religious places to visit near Uttarkashi
- 13.14 Summary
- 13.15 Answers to check your progress
- 13.16 References

13.1 INTRODUCTION

In this unit you will learn about the historical, spiritual, religious significance of Haridwar, Rishikesh, Joshimuth, and Uttarkashi. Haridwar is one of the most sacred pilgrimage places in Uttarakhand state of India. An ancient centre of pilgrimage, Haridwar has a lot of places to see, feel and experience. Haridwar is a city engulfed in ancient myths, legends and fables. Haridwar is also the proud host of the Kumbha (Kumbh) Mela and the Ardha (Ardh) Kumbha Mela.

Rishikesh has been the centre of spiritual and religious activities since ancient times. This place situated on the right bank of the river Ganga is surrounded on all sides by beautiful hills.

Rishikesh is the gateway for pilgrimage to Badrinath and Kedarnath. Rishikesh is also referred as the yoga capital of the world and it houses a number of ashrams offering yoga and meditation courses. This famous pilgrimage spot is also noted for its traditional and cultural performances, exotic cuisine and many other enriching unique factors which fascinates the tourists coming here giving them a wonderful experience. Its serene and holy atmosphere inspires the pilgrims with pious thoughts. It is around Rishikesh where sages, seers or the rishis and munis in ancient times practiced severe penance and meditation. Rishikesh is also an interesting places for those who adventure as passion for in recent times, it is developing as a place of adventure tourism like white water rafting.

Uttarkashi is famous Pilgrimage town also becoming popular for trekking, mountaineering, adventure. Uttarkashi town, the headquarters of the district by the same name, is more on the Temples circuit than the regular tourist circuit. Nevertheless, with trekking and mountaineering gaining popularity as adventure sports, the importance of this region cannot be discounted. The region has some high-altitude lakes and the Gangotri and Yamunotri glaciers lead on to several major peaks-the hunting grounds for serious mountaineering guys.

13.2 OBJECTIVES

This unit is exclusively designed for the tourism students to give them the detailed information about the Historical, spiritual and religious importance of Haridwar, Rishikesh, Joshimath, and Uttarkashi.

13.3 HISTORY OF HARIDWAR

The city of Haridwar is an ancient city of India, mentioned in several Upanishads and Puranas with different names such as Gangadwara, Mayapuri and Kapilasthana. The city's name literally meaning the 'Doorway of / to Gods', is equally important to both Shaivites (Shiva followers) and Vaishnavites (Vishnu followers). Hence it is known as both Hardwar and Haridwar. Every six years the Ardh Kumbh Mela is celebrated here with great fervor here.

13.3.1 In Ancient Literature

Haridwar has been mentioned in the Mahabharata, in the Vanaparva chapter, where Sage Dhaumya tells Yudhisthira about the 'Tirthas' (pilgrimages) of India, including Haridwar. The next mention is in the fable of famed King Bhagiratha, who brought Ganga down to purify the souls of his 60,000 ancestors in the Satya Yuga. After this, the first dates in regular history come to 322-185 BC, when Haridwar came under Maurya Empire and then Kushana Empire continuously.

13.3.2 In Middle Ages

Well-known Chinese traveler Huan Tsang mentions Haridwar as 'Mo Yu Lo' in his travel chronicles dated 629 AD. Next came Timur Lang, the Turkish invader, on 13th January 1399 and invaded the city. Haridwar is also talked about in the 16th century 'Ain-e-Akbari' (written during Akbar's reign) as Mayapuri. The first written evidence of the name Haridwara comes by Thomas Coryant, during Jahangir's reign.

13.3.3 In Modern Times

After the Britishers arrival in the 1800s, two major dams were created, notably the Bhimgoda Dam in 1840. In 1868, the 'Haridwar Union Municipality' was constituted including the then villages of Mayapur and Kankhal. The first railway track in Haridwar was laid down in 1886, which extended to Dehradun by 1900.

The first example of contemporary civilization is the industrial unit of BHEL (Bharat Heavy Electricals Limited), also know as a 'Navratna PSU'. Earlier in the state of Uttar Pradesh, it is now the pride of the newly formed Uttarakhand since November 2000 onwards.

13.4 MYTHOLOGICAL SIGNIFICANCE OF HARIDWAR

Haridwar is also famous by many mythical names like Gangadwar, Mokshadwar, Tapovan and Mayapuri. It is at Haridwar that the Ganga finally emerges into the northern plains. Haridwar has earned fame as being the place which has been blessed by the trinity of Lord Shiva, Vishnu and Brahma. It is also one of the major Shaktipeethas. People prefer taking bath on the numerous Ghats built on the river shores. It is said that taking bath here purifies the soul and opens the way for the ultimate freedom, Moksha or Nirvana. Down the ages, Haridwar has purified the mind, the body and the soul. Not only in spiritual or religious terms has Haridwar come up as a major learning centre for arts, science and culture.

13.4.1 The place of immortality

Haridwar is also one of the 12 places were the nectar of immortality or ambrosia feel during the churning of the Milk Ocean, known as the Ksherasagar or Keshra Samudra. This mythological connection gives Haridwar (Hara-Dwar) a very important position in the growth of Hinduism. Also it is because of this belief that the Kumbha (Kumbh) Mela and the Ardha (Ardh) Kumbha Melas are held here regularly.

13.4.2 The Gateway to Chardham

Haridwar stands as the gateway to the four pilgrimages of Uttarakhand or Uttarakhand. Haridwar is considered to be located at the feet of Shiva's hills – the Shivaliks, therefore Haridwar is a doorway to the Devabhoomi (Dev-Bhoomi), the abode of the Gods

13.4.3 Chardham

Four of the holiest pilgrimages of India

1. Bhadrinath or Sri Badrinathji
2. Kedārnath or Sri Kedārnathji
3. Gangotri
4. Yamunotri

Collectively referred to as the Char Dham (or four pilgrimage centres) of Hinduism. For centuries, saints and pilgrims, in their search for the divine, have walked these mystical vales known in ancient Hindu scriptures as 'Kedarkhand'

The story of Bhagirath

According to a popular Hindu mythology Haridwar was known as Kapilasthana. Legend has it that the ancestors of Raja Bhagirath were consumed by fire at this spot following a curse of Rishi Kapila. For their salvation Raja Bhagirath requested the Ganga (Ganges) to descend on Earth.

13.5 SPIRITUAL SIGNIFICANCE OF HARIDWAR

Haridwar was a town of the Sadhus', the naked Hindu Ascetic. For many millennia the only residents were the Nathapanthis. The Sraddha rituals and the Pandas, Pujaris who come from the surrounding villages and leave at sunset after finishing their business with their respective Yajamanas (JajMaans). There was an unwritten law that there should be no carnal activities in this Holy city of Haridwar (Hara-Dwar). Gradually this has changed and where once a few hermitages stood has replaced by a district headquarters akin to any modern city

Still, the life line is the river Ganga (Ganges). All activities are directly related to the pilgrims who come to take the holy bath in Ganga. It is generally believed that Haridwar purifies a person religiously and spiritually. In recent times numerous Ashrams and Spiritual schools have revived the ancient glory of spiritual Haridwar. Off course the twin city of Rishikesh remains the spiritual capital of the world.

PLACES TO VISIT AT HARIDWAR:

1. Har Ki Pauri: This sacred Ghat was constructed by King Vikramaditya (1st century BC) in memory of his brother Bhrithari. It is believed that Bhrithari came to Haridwar and meditated on the banks of the holy Ganges. When he died, his brother constructed a Ghat in his name, which later came to be known as Har-Ki-Pauri. The most sacred ghat within Har-ki-Pauri is Brahmakund. The evening prayer (Aarti) at dusk offered to Goddess Ganga at Har-Ki-Pauri (steps of God Hara or Shiva) is an enchanting experience for any visitor. A spectacle of sound and colour is seen when, after the ceremony, pilgrims float diyas (floral floats with lamps) and incense on the river, commemorating their deceased ancestors. Thousands of people from all round the world do make a point to attend this prayer on their visit to Haridwar. A majority of present ghats were largely developed in the 1800s.

2. Chandi Devi Temple: Chandi Devi Temple, Haridwar The temple is dedicated to Goddess Chandi, who sits atop the 'Neel Parvat' on the eastern bank of the river Ganges. It was constructed in 1929 A.D. by the king of Kashmir, Suchat Singh. Skanda Purana mentions a legend, in which Chanda-Munda, the Army Chief of a local Demon Kings Shumbh and Nishumbha were killed by goddess Chandi here, after which the place got the name Chandi Devi. It is believed that the main statue was established by the Adi Shankracharya in **8th** century A.D. The temple is a 3 km trek from Chandighat and can also be reached through a ropeway takes up just 5-10 minutes.

3. Mansa Devi Temple: Mansa Devi Temple, Haridwar Situated at the top of Bilwa Parwat, the temple of Goddess Mansa Devi, literally meaning the Goddess who

fulfills desires (Mansa), is a popular tourist destination, especially because of the cable cars, which offer a picturesque view of the entire city. The main temple houses two idols of the Goddess, one with three mouths and five arms, while the other one has eight arms. Visitors to Mansa Devi Temple have a number of options for getting to the temple. There are regular Taxis, Auto Rikshaws and Cabs available from Haridwar to Mansa Devi. To reach the hilltop, you can use the ropeway-cable car. Otherwise, if you are looking for a light dose of adventure, you can choose to trek up to the temple.

4. Maya Devi Temple: Maya Devi Temple, Haridwar Dating to the 11th century, this ancient temple of Maya Devi, the Adhithatri deity of Haridwar, is considered one of the Siddhapethas and is said to be the place where the heart and navel of Goddess Sati had fallen. It is one of few ancient temples still standing in Haridwar, along with Narayani Shila temple and Bhairav Temple.

5. Kankhal: Daksheswara Mahadev Temple The ancient temple of Daksha Mahadev also known as Daksheswara Mahadev Temple, is situated in the south Kankhal town. According to Hindu texts, King Daksha Prajapati, father of Dakshayani, Lord Shiva's first wife, performed a yagna, to which he deliberately did not invite Lord Shiva. When he arrived uninvited, he was further insulted by the king, seeing which Sati felt infuriated and self-immolated herself in the yagna kund. King Daksha was later killed by the demon Virabhadra, born out of Shiva's anger. Later the king was brought to life and given a goat's head by Shiva. Daksha Mahadev temple is a tribute to this legend.

Sati Kund, another well-known mythological heritage worth a visit is situated in the Kankhal. Legend has it that Sati immolated herself in this kund.

6. Piran Kaliyar: Built by Ibrahim Lodhi, a ruler of Delhi, this 'Dargah' of Hazrat Alauddin Sabir Kaliyari, a 13th century, Sufi Saint of Chishti Order (also known as Sarkar Sabir Pak), in Kaliyar village, 7 km. from Roorkee, is a living example of religious harmony in India, visited by devotees from all over the world, during the

annual 'Urs' festival, which is celebrated from 1 st day of sighting the moon to 16th day of Rabeull month Islamic calendar.

7. Neel Dhara Pakshi Vihar: This Bird Sanctuary is situated on the main Ganges river, or Neel Dhara, at the Bhimgoda barrage, it is a paradise for bird watchers and home to many migratory birds during the winter season.

8. Bhimgoda Tank: This tank is situated at a distance of about 1 km from Har ki Pauri. It is said that while Pandavas were going to Himalayas through Haridwar, prince Bhima drew water from the rocks here by thrusting his knee (goda), to the very ground.

9. Ram Mandir: This mandir is under construction near Saptarishi marge, at Bhupatwala. Mandir is being constructed by Swami Ramanandacharya Smarak Seva Nyays headed by Jagadguru Ramanandacharya Swami Ramnareshacharya of Sri Math, Panchganga Ghat, Varanasi. This Ram temple would be biggest in India.

10. Doodhadhari Barfani Temple: Part of the ashram of Doodhadhari Barfani Baba, this temple complex in white marble is one of most beautiful temples in Haridwar, especially the temples of Rama-Sita and Hanuman.

11. Sureshwari Devi Temple: Temple of Goddess Sureshwari, situated in midst of beautiful Rajaji National Park. Serene and religious makes this temple abode of worshipers, saints etc. Located at outskirts of Haridwar in Ranipur and permission from forest rangers is necessary.

12. Pawan Dham: A modern temple, made entirely of glass pieces, and now a popular tourist destination. The Temple complex was constructed by the effort of His Holiness Swami Vedantanand Ji Maharaj and the Institute is growing under the Leadership of His Holiness Swami SahajPrakash Ji Maharaj. People of Moga (Punjab) have put their efforts and Money to bring up this place.

13. Bharat Mata Mandir: A multi-storey temple, dedicated to Bharat Mata, Mother India, with each floor depicting an era in the Indian History, from the days of Ramayan till India's independence. The temple was built under the auspicious

blessings of the honorable former Shankaracharya His Holiness Maha-Mandleshwar Swami Satyamitranand Giriji Maharaj. Swami Satyamitranand Foundation was registered in 1998. Since the inception of the Foundation, several other branches have been opened, namely in Renukut, Jabalpur, Jodhpur, Indore and Ahmedabad. The Bharat Mata Mandir was inaugurated on 15 May 1983 by Rt.Hon.Smt. Indira Gandhi and stands along the River Ganges in Haridwar. It is situated adjacent to the 'Smanvaya Ashram', and stands eight stories tall to the height of 180 feet (55 m). Each floor is devoted to a particular theme. On the first floor is the statue of Bharat Mata. The second floor 'Shoor Mandir' is dedicated to the well renowned heroes of India. The third floor 'Matru Mandir' is dedicated to the achievements of India's revered women; such as Meera Bai, Savitri, Maitri etc. The great saints from various religions, including Jainism, Sikhism and Buddhism are featured on the fourth floor 'Sant Mandir'. The Assembly Hall with walls depicting symbolic coexistence of all religions practiced in India and paintings portraying history and beauty in various provinces of India, is situated on the fifth floor. The various forms of the Goddess of Shakti can be seen on the sixth floor, whilst the seventh floor is devoted to all incarnations of Lord Vishnu. The eighth floor holds the shrine of Lord Shiva from which devotees can gain a panoramic view of Himalayas, Haridwar, and the splendour of the entire campus of Sapta Sarovar.

14. Jairam Ashram: Famous for its diorama exhibition, and a massive white statue depicting the famous Samudra manthan episode, a must-see for any visitor.

15. Sapt Rishi Ashram and Sapt Sarovar: A picturesque place near Haridwar, where seven great sages or Saptarishis, namely Kashyapa, Vashisht, Atri, Vishwamitra, Jamadagni, Bharadwaja and Gautam, said to have meditated. The Ganges split herself into seven currents at this place so that the Rishis would not be disturbed by the flow.

16. Parad Shivling: Situated in Harihar Ashram, Kankhal. Parad Shivling (Mercury Shivling) weighing about 150 kg and Rudraksha tree are the main attractions here.

17. Ramanand Ashram: Situated in shravan nath nagar of the town near railway station, this is the main ashram of Ramanand Sampraday in Haridwar. Mahant Bhagwan Das is the chief of this ashram.

18. Anandamayi Maa Ashram: Situated in Kankhal, one of five sub-cities of Haridwar, the ashram houses the samadhi shrine of Sri Anandamoyi Ma (1896–1982), a noted saint of India.

19. Shantikunj: Shantikunj is the Headquarter of famous spiritual and social organisation All World Gayatri Pariwar (AWGP) established by Pt Shriram Sharma Acharya. Its located at a distance of 6 Kilometers from Haridwar railway station towards Rishikesh/Dehradun on NH58. At the bank of the holy Ganges and between the Shivalik ranges of the Himalayas, it's also a place of attraction for tourists as well as seekers of spiritual guidance.

13.6 RISHIKESH

Rishikesh is situated in the Tehri Gharwal region of Uttarakhand, along the banks of the sacred river Ganges. It is an important pilgrim centre and gateway to the Himalayan; It is small town, renowned as an important pilgrimage center of the country, shrines of Badrinath, Kedarnath, Gangotri and Yamunotri. The Pilgrimage season starts in end April/ Early may and lasts til the Day of Deepawali (Festival of light) end of October/early November. It is from here that the river Ganges leaves behind her mountain home and enters the vast north Indian plains. The town abounds in natural splendour and the sight of the Ganga rushing through the Himalayan foothills is awesome. There are several temples on the banks of the Ganga at Rishikesh.

13.7 RELIGIOUS SIGNIFICANCE OF RISHIKESH

It is believed that Rishikesh represents the site where Vishnu vanquished the demon Madhu. In Tapovan, on the other side of the Ganges, is a temple to Lakshmana. The Lakshman Jhula at Rishikesh is a 450 feet long suspension bridge

was built in 1939. There is a newer bridge which has been added recently - the Ram Jhula. Rishikesh is not only popular for its religious significance but also considered to be a base for devotees on their journey to the Char Dham Yatra.

13.8 SPIRITUAL SIGNIFICANCE OF RISHIKESH

Situated 24 km upstream from Haridwar, Rishikesh has long been a spiritual centre at the confluence of the Chandrabhaga and Ganga. It is believed that the sage Raibhya Rishi did penance here and satisfied with him God appeared to him in the form of Rishikesh. The name originates from that only.

The yoga centres of Rishikesh have enhanced the significance of the place. Rishikesh has numerous ashrams, few of which are internationally recognized as centres for meditation, yoga and philosophical studies. International Yoga Week which attracts participation from across the world is held here, every year, in February on the banks of the Ganga. Rishikesh also best Spa and many other Ayurvedic treatment centers for every one's requirement.

The places to visit in Rishikesh include - Bharat Temple, Rishi Kund & Raghunath Temple, Laxman Jhoola, Pushkar Temple, Shatrughan Temple, Muni-Ki-Reti, Swarg Ashram, Gita Bhawan, Parmath Niketan, Lakshman Temple, Sadanand Jhoola, Triveni Ghat, Shivanand Ashram, Kailash Ashram and Academy of Meditation. The nearby excursions include beautiful places like: Dehradun, Mussoorie, Hardwar, Chilla, Devprayag, Auli, and NarendraNagar.

13.9 PLACES TO VISIT AT RISHIKESH

1. Ashram - The ashrams of rishikesh are world famous for yoga, and these are abundant in number and around Rishikesh. Some of these are very well known and is regarded as tourist spots while some are still been regarded as proper ashrams where rishis (saints) stay. Ashrams situated on the eastern bank of the river Ganges are collectively known as Swargashram. The credit for World famous Maharishi

goes to the beauty of natural rock band Beatles. Yoga, in most of the Ashrams, is another important aspect for drawing tourists from around the world.

2. Lakshman Jhula - the hanging bridge, Lakshman Jhula is on the river Ganges that flows through Rishikesh. According to legends, Lakshman the brother of Lord Ram crossed this river with the help of a hanging bridge made of jute. The present bridge was built in the year AD 1939, on the same spot where the original jute suspended bridge used to be. The current of water, when an increase gives an incomparable scene when viewed from the bridge. There's another bridge called the Ram Jhula or the Shivanand Jhula.

3. Gita Bhavan - Situated by the side of the Lakshman, the Gita Bhavan is a beautifully constructed building housing some attractive statues of various gods and goddesses.

4. Triveni Ghat - Triveni is a bathing spot at a distance about 1.5 km from Rishikesh. It is considered sacred for being the confluence of three mountain streams. Pilgrims from all over the world come here to take a dip into the holy waters.

5. Neelkanth Madhav - Neelkanth Madhav, at a distance of 12 km from the Rishikesh town and surrounded by lush green, it is a place of interest especially for the religious minded tourists. According to mythological data Lord Shiva drank the venom that came out of the cosmic churning of the ocean by the gods and demons.

13.10 JOSHIMATH

Joshimath is a city and a municipal board in Chamoli District in the Indian state of Uttarakhand. It is home to one of the four cardinal *pīthas* established by Adi Shankara.

Joshimath is a popular hill station and a famous centre for pilgrimage at a height of 1,890mts above sea level in Chamoli district of Garhwal division in Uttarakhand. In ancient scriptures Joshimath is described as Kartikeyapura as it has

been named after Kartikeya, the God of Katyuri kings. Joshimath is one of the four maths or monasteries established in the 8th century by Adi Guru Sri Shankaracharya. The rivers Alkananda and Dhauliganga meet at the confluence of Vishnuprayag located just below Joshimath.

Joshimath is the base for trekking to the famous Valley of Flowers. The best time to visit Joshimath and for the trek is from mid July till end-August. Among the important attractions of Joshimath includes a temple dedicated to Narashima, an incarnation of Lord Vishnu. Some other temples are dedicated to Hanuman, Gaurishankar, Ganesh, and Naudevi and Surya.

In winters, the town becomes home to Lord Badri who is brought down from Badrinath to Vasudeva temple at Joshimath. Some nearby places of excursion are Auli, one of the best skiing destinations in India and Nanda Devi National Park which is 23kms from Joshimath. You can also trek up to the exotic Valley of Flowers from Joshimath. One of the routes used for the trek is from Govindghat till a small market at Ghangaria. Overnight accommodation is available at Ghangaria. Camping at the Valley of Flowers is not allowed. An alternative route is from Hemkund Saheb, a Sikh pilgrimage centre to Ghangaria which is about five and a half kms.

Joshimath is connected with a 4km cable car upto Auli making it the longest and highest trolley of Asia. Joshimath is also the home of the oldest tree of India, Kalpavriksha which is stood at Joshimath from the time of Adi Shankaracharya. Joshimath is also called as Jyotirmath. The average literacy rate of Joshimath is 77% which is higher than the literacy rate of India. Joshimath is a traveler's delight and devotees temple as well. The view of the Hathi Parbat (Elephant Mountain) from Joshimath is mystifying.

13.11 PLACES TO VISIT NEAR JOSHIMATH

1. **Govindghat:** Govindghat is situated at a distance of 18.7 km from Joshimath and lies on the banks of the Alaknanda River. The place is famous for its religious site,

the Hemkund Sahib. Hemkund means the 'lake of snow' and the water of the lake is very cold.

It is believed that Guru Gobind Singh used to meditate at this place. A gurudwara and a temple are situated here. The temple is dedicated to Lord Rama's younger brother, Lakshman. Govindghat is also an ideal spot for trekking.

2. **Ghangaria:** Ghangaria village is located 23.5 km away from the town of Joshimath and is locally called as Govinddham. The village receives heavy snowfall during the winter season and the best time to visit Ghangaria is between the months of May and October. It serves as a base camp for trekking to the Valley of Flowers and Hemkund Sahib.

3. **The Nanda Devi national park:** The Nanda Devi National Park spreads over an area of around 630 sq km and is surrounded by the Nanda Devi Mountain on three sides. In 1988, the park was declared as a UNESCO World Heritage Site, along with the Valley of Flowers. The whole region of the Nanda Devi National Park falls under the Western Himalayas Endemic Bird Area (EBA).

The park provides shelter to snow leopard, Himalayan black-bear, serow, Himalayan musk deer and Himalayan tahr. Brown-bear, ruby throat, bharal, langur and grosbeaks can also be seen in the park. There are around 100 species of birds, including orange-flanked bush robin, Indian tree pipit, yellow-bellied fantail flycatcher, blue-fronted redstart and vinaceous-breasted pipit. Varied species of butterflies can also be seen in the Nanda Devi National Park. The park has around 312 species of flowers, along with juniper and alpine vegetation.

4. **The Narsingh Temple:** The Narsingh Temple is dedicated to Lord Narsingh, who is believed to be an incarnation of Lord Vishnu. This temple is considered to be the home of Shri Badrinath.

5. **Kalpavriksha:** Kalpavriksha is considered as one of the oldest trees in the country and is believed to be around 1,200 years old. According to folklore, Adi Guru Shri

Sankaracharya used this spot for meditation. The circumference of the Kalpavriksha has been calculated to be around 21.5 m. Tourists can also visit the cave, where the saint resided, near the Kalpavriksha.

13.12 UTTARKASHI

The holy town of Uttarkashi is set on the banks of river Bhagirathi at an altitude of 1158 metres, about 145 kms from Rishikesh on the main route to Gangotri. It is considered to have similar religious importance as Kashi. The famous Vishwanath temple here is dedicated to Lord Shiva. In front of the temple is unique Mahadev-ka-Vishal Trishul or Shiva's Great Trident, made of eight major metals. It is believed Lord Shiva killed Vakasur with this trident. Other important temples are dedicated to Lord Parashuram, Lord Ekadash Rudra and Goddess Kali. It is an important stopover for pilgrims visiting Gangotri. Uttarkashi has also emerged as an important centre for adventure sports.

13.13 RELIGIOUS PLACES TO VISIT NEAR UTTARKASHI

1. Vishwanath Temple: The Viswanath Temple is the most important and ancient holy shrine in this region. Of the many temples in Uttarkashi, the temple of Lord Vishwanath is unrivalled in importance. Shiva, the presiding deity of this temple, is worshipped all day here.

Every evening, visitors are greeted by the sound of bells, and the chanting of mantras by pundits at the puja. Within the courtyard of the Vishwanath temple, and to the front of it, is the Shakti Temple, dedicated to the goddess of strength. The massive brass trident projecting from this temple bears an inscription describing how the Vishwanath Temple was built. According to it, the temple was built by King Ganeshwar, whose son Guh, a great warrior, built the trident. 26 feet high, this trident's base measures 8 feet 9 inches, and its top, 18¹/₂ inches in circumference. The town of Gopeshwar also features a Shiva Temple and a trident with Sanskrit inscriptions. It is much smaller.

2. Kandar Devta Temple: There is a hilly village 8 km from Uttarkashi known as Sangrali. The Temple of the Deity - Kandar Devta is located on a hill in this village. In the Kedarkhand Puran it is this place is marked as a Kandar Bhairav. Among the local Devta, Kandar Devta is known as the deity of the local town Uttarkashi and the surroundings. According to the Purana Kandar is one Gana of the Shivji. Ghanta karna is another name of the Local Deity Kandar Devta.

According to the local myth Varunawat Parvat is the origin of the Local Deity Kandar Devata, which is located just above of the Gyansu Village. This Gyansu village is also known as Kandar Khola among the local population. It is told that the Statue of Kandar Devta was found by a local farmer in the field while he was ploughing his field.

3. Bhairav Temple: The Vishwanath Temple is the major temple in Uttarkashi. It is dedicated to Lord Shiva. Two other very important temples are located in the Chowk area. These are the Annapurna Temple and the Bhairav Temple. Once, it is said, there were 365 temples here. Hiuen Tsang referred to this place as Brahma Pura, while the Skanda Puran has recorded it as Varunavata. It is believed that in the second millennium of Kaliyug, Kashi will be submerged, and Uttarkashi will replace it as an important religious centre.

4. Shakti Mandir: The centre of attention at the Shakti Temple is the `shakti stambh` or the huge trident that protrudes out of the roof of the temple. It is said that when the epic battle ensued between the devtas (gods) and the asuras (demons), the Shakti stambh was sent down from heaven to kill the asuras. Since then, it has been balanced on the hood of the shesh naag (the mythological snake which also supports the earth on its hood) in pataal (the nether world). It is also said that no one has been able to identify the metals from which the stambh is made though its globular base was created out of asht dhatu (eight metals) a thousand years ago. The column leading up to the trident is covered in red pieces of cloth decorated with

gold work (traditional offering to Goddess Shakti) which symbolise the wishes of the devotees.

5. Hanuman Mandir: The idols of **Lord Hanuman** ancient and they emerged from the earth on its own. They were earlier worshipped at the ancient Hanuman Chowk. The temple was built 30 years ago when the ancient idols were installed here.

6. Annapurna Mata Mandir: The idol has existed here for centuries and the temple was built around it sometime in the 8th century AD. **Navratri** is celebrated here with great enthusiasm.

13.14 SUMMARY

After reading this unit you must be aware of religious and spiritual significance of Haridwar, Rishikesh, Joshimath, and Uttarkashi. A summary of what we have studied in this unit is-

- The city of Haridwar is an ancient city of India
- It was also known as Gangadwara, Mayapuri and Kapilasthana.
- Every six years the Ardh Kumbh Mela is celebrated here with great fervor here.
- Haridwar is also one of the 12 places where the nectar of immortality or ambrosia fell during the churning of the Milk Ocean, known as the Ksherasagar or Keshra Samudra. This mythological connection gives Haridwar (Hara-Dwar) a very important position in the growth of Hinduism. Also it is because of this belief that the Kumbha (Kumbh) Mela and the Ardh (Ardh) Kumbha Melas are held here regularly.
- Haridwar stands as the gateway to the four pilgrimages of Uttarakhand or Uttarakhand.
- Haridwar is considered to be located at the feet of Shiva's hills – the Shivaliks, therefore Haridwar is a doorway to the Devabhoomi (Dev-Bhoomi), the abode of the Gods

- The various places that can be visited in Haridwar are –Har ki pauri, Mansa devi temple, Chandi devi temple, Sapt rishi Ashram and sapt arovar etc.
- Rishikesh has Asrams which are internationally recognized as centres for meditation, yoga and philosophical studies.
- International Yoga Week which attracts participation from across the world, is held here, every year, in February on the banks of the Ganga.
- Rishikesh has best Spa and many other Ayurvedic treatment centers for every one's requirement.
- The main tourist attractions of Rishikesh are - Bharat Temple, Rishi Kund & Raghunath Temple, Laxman Jhoola, Pushkar Temple, Shatrughan Temple, Muni-Ki-Reti, Swarg Ashram, Gita Bhawan, Parmath Niketan, Lakshman Temple, Sadanand Jhoola, Triveni Ghat, Shivanand Ashram, Kailash Ashram and Academy of Meditation.

13.15 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. Write a brief note on religious significance of Haridwar.
2. Write a brief note on religious significance of Rishikesh.
3. Write a brief note on religious significance of Uttarkashi.
4. Name some important places to visit in Haridwar and write a brief note about their religious and spiritual significance.
5. Name some important places to visit in Rishikesh and write a brief note about their religious and spiritual significance.
6. Write in detail about the religious importance of Joshimath and Uttarkashi.

13.16 REFERENCES

- <http://www.religiousindia.info/rishikesh-temple/>
- <http://hotelassociationuttarkashi.com>

Block-4

Other Cultural Legacies

Unit-14

Important Monuments, Museums and Historical Sites

Structure

- 14.1 Objectives
- 14.2 Monuments in Uttarakhand
- 14.3 Museums in Uttarakhand
- 14.4 Answers to check your progress
- 14.5 References

14.1 OBJECTIVES:

The main objective of this unit is to make the students aware of various:

- Monuments
- Museums
- Historical sites in Uttarakhand.

14.2 MONUMENTS IN UTTARAKHAND

A **monument** is a type of structure either explicitly created to commemorate a person or important event or which has become important to a social group as a part of their remembrance of past events.

One of the prime attractions of the state of Uttarakhand is its numerous monuments. A tour of monuments of the state will bring alive the past days and the glory of this wonderful state. There are some famous monuments in Uttarakhand, like all the major cities and states of the country.

Below is a list of those Monuments of National Importance (ASI) as officially recognized by and available through the website of the Archeological Survey of India in the Indian state Uttarakhand.

S. No.	Name of the monument / site	Location	District
1	Badrinath group of temples	Dwarahat	Almora
2	Bandeo Temple	Dwarahat	Almora
3	Gujardeo Temple	Dwarahat	Almora
4	Kacheri group of temples	Dwarahat	Almora
5	Kutumbari Temple	Dwarahat	Almora
6	Maniyan group of temples	Dwarahat	Almora
7	Mritunjaya group of temples	Dwarahat	Almora
8	Ratan Deo Shrines	Dwarahat	Almora
9	Surya Temple	Katarmal	Almora
10	Dandeshwar Temple	Jageshwar	Almora

11	Chandi-ka-Temple	Jageshwar	Almora
12	Jageshwar Temple	Jageshwar	Almora
13	Kuber Temple	Jageshwar	Almora
14	Mritunjaya Temple	Jageshwar	Almora
15	Nanda Devi or Nau Durga	Jageshwar	Almora
16	Nava-grah shrine	Jageshwar	Almora
17	Pyramidal shrine	Jageshwar	Almora
18	Shrine dedicated to Surya	Jageshwar	Almora
19	Monuments	Sitoli	Almora
20	Grave of a European Soldier	Uprari	Almora
21	Group of ancient temples, consisting of main shrine of Siva and 17 subsidiary shrines	Bajjnath	Bageshwar
22	Three temples of the Indo-Aryan shikara type known as Lakshmi Narayan, Rakshas Deval and Satya Narayan	Talli Hat	Bageshwar
23	Remains of sixteen temples	Adibadri,	Chamoli
24	Fort with walls and ruins of dwelling house inside it and with flights of steps	Chandpur	Chamoli
25	Trident of iron with a shaft with one ancient and three modern inscriptions	Gopeshwar	Chamoli
26	Two Temples	Pandukeshwar	Chamoli
27	Rudranath temple	Gopeshwar	Chamoli
28	Rock Inscription in Survey Plot No. 89	Village Mandal	Chamoli

29	Group of Baleshwar Temples	Champawat	Champawat
30	Kotwali Chabutra	Champawat	Champawat
31	Naula or covered spring attached to the Baleshwar Temples	Champawat	Champawat
32	Temple sacred to Mahasu	Hanol or Onol	Dehradun
33	Ancient site	Jagatram	Dehradun
34	The inscribed rock edicts of Asoka	Kalsi	Dehradun
35	Kalinga Monuments	Karanpur	Dehradun
36	Temple and images in its vicinity	Lakha Mandal	Dehradun
37	Old Cemetery	Rourkee	Haridwar
38	Old Cemetery	Shaikhpuri & Ganeshpur	Haridwar
39	Remains of ancient buildings locally identified with Vairatapattana	Dhikuli	Nainital
40	Old temple sacred to Sita	Sitabani	Nainital
41	Patal Bhubaneswar Caves	Patal Bhubaneswar	Pithoragarh
42	Remains of a few old temples and an inscribed masonry well	Gangoli Hat	Pithoragarh
43	Excavated Site at Dronasagar (only preliminary notification issued)	Mauza Ujjain Kashipur	Udhamsingh Nagar
44	Excavated site and Remains	Purola	Uttarkashi

District wise information of the above mentioned monuments is given below:

ALMORA

- **Jageshwar Temple (Phulai Gunth):** This is one of the most sacred temple complex in this region. The inscriptions testify to the presence of shrines here in the eighth century and these were, in all probability not the first erected at this spot. A remodelling of the entire institution is, perhaps with some truth attributed to the reformer Sankaracharya. It is in the time of the Katyuri of Central Himalaya that the construction of temple activities has taken place in the large scale and perhaps the temple of the Jageshwar have been reconstructed in the present temple form.
 - The Jageshwar temple locally known as Jagnath (Lord Shiva as Yogishwara) gives its name to the site. Facing west, it consists of triratha sanctum with curvilinear sikhara followed by a mandapa having pyramidal roof. The original roofs of the mandapa have fallen down and are replaced now with the metallic sheets. The temple is datable to circa eight century AD as per stylistic considerations.
- **Mritunjaya Temple (Phulai Gunth):** This is another important Siva temple in the Jageshwar group of temple. Stand apposite to Jagnath temple this east facing temple is built in Latin sikhara style consists of triratha sanctum, antrarala followed by pillared mandapa. The pyramidal roof of mandapa must have been provided originally with stone slabs which has been replaced by metallic sheets later on. It has panchanga-bada. The pabhaga mouldings are high and three in number. The central ratha have large niches extending upto upper jangha while the subsidiary rathas have separate niches at talajangha and upper jangha. The bandana is formed by a single moulding. The bada is demarcated from sikhara by a single moulding of varanda having relieved frieze of chaitya motif. The shikhara rises upto four bhumis, separated by bhumi amlas. Above the visam course, the neck and amalakasila are visible though covered under huge canopy. The highly pronounced sukhasa raises upto first bhumis and have a big ornate medallion. The lower compartment of the medallion contains the figure of Lakulisa with disciples and the upper one contains usual Trimurti called Panchanana Siva. Stylistically, the temple can be dated to circa eighth century A.D.

- **Dandeshwar Temple (Kotuli and Chandhok Gunth):** Dedicated to lord Siva, this temple stand, in the vicinity of Jageshwar, before the main temple complex. In conception, this temple is close to *phamsana sikhara* type, but unlike the latter, their respective *sikharas* rises in three to four receding *kandhara*, each surmounted by a *kumbha* moulding. The evidence shows that originally temple consists of a sanctum, vestibule followed by *mandapa* in plan but *mandapa* is completely missing now. Stylistically this temple is assignable to the 9th -10th century AD.
- **Kuber Temple (Phulai Gunth):** This is a small rekha shrine standing on a raised ground near Chandika temple. Though smaller in dimensions, this temple resembles with the architecture of Mahamritunjaya temple, Jagashwar. The Sikhara is crowned by an akasa linga above the amalaka-sila.
- **Chandika Temple (Phulai Gunth):** This is a Valabhi type sikhara temple dedicated to Goddess Chandika. Generally this type of temples is dedicated to Sakti cult. Rectangular on plan, its elevation up to varandika is also rectangular, above which is raised a Valabhi Sikhara in two curvilinear courses with a plain sunk moulding in between and terminating in a ridged roof. Entrance of the temple is given invariably from the corner. Stylistically, the temple can be dated to circa eight - ninth century A.D.
- **Nanda Devi or Nau Durga, Jageshwar:** This is a Valabhi sikhara type temple built within the enclosure wall of Jageshwar Group of temple. Attributed to Goddess Nanda Devi this temple locally known as Nau Durga Temple. The plan and elevation of this temple is same as in the case of the Chandika Temple. In addition there are three more similar shrines in the group dedicated to *Kalika*, *Pushti-devi* and *Chandika* temple respectively also built in *Valabhi sikhara* style.
- **Nava Graha Shrine, (Phulai Gunth, Jageshwar):** Standing to the north of the Surya temple in the Jageshwar temple complex, this temple is devoid of any architectural feature with a relief of *Navagraha* panel depicted on lintel of the temple.

The image of Surya is carved in its usual long boot holding full bloomed lotus flower in both hands while Rahu is represented by a head and Ketu with a snake canopy. Remaining grahas carries a water pot (Kmandalu) in the left hand and a mala in the raised right hand. A low relief band of a scroll ornament on the upper edge of the slab is of a pleasing character.

- **Pyramidal Shrine (Phulai Gunth):** Just on the back of Jagnath temple within the temple premises there are two pyramidal shrines of Phamsana sikhara type. Rectangular on plan and elevation, the sikhara of both the temple is composed of receding horizontal alternating course of projected and sunk mouldings called pidha, hence also known as pidha-deval. On plan the temples have a grabhgriha (sanctum sanctorum) preceded by a kapili (vastibule) without any subsidiary components.
- **Shrine Dedicated to Surya (Phulai Gunth, Jageshwar):** This is a small rekha sikhara temple of usual architectural features. Dedicated to Sun God it consists of Triratha Grabhgriha with projected portico. The sanctum is devoided of any image while Sun God with his chariot is carved on lintel, suggest this temple is to be associated with Saura worship. On the basis of the architectural style this temple is assignable is 14 Cent. AD.
- **A Large Temple Dedicated to Sun (Katarmal):** Locally known as "*Bara Aditya*" or the great Sun God, this temple is one among the tallest temples in the region. In addition to main temple, there are 44 subsidiary shrines built on a raised platform on hill slope entered through flight of steps from east. The main shrine, facing east, consists of a *tri-ratha grabhagriha* followed by a gabled roof *mandapa* a later addition in plan. The beautifully carved wooden beam presently displayed in the National Museum, New Delhi and backed brickbats available at the site suggest that originally the temple was made of brick and wooden architectural members which might have been replaced by existing stone temple during 12th-13th century AD. However subsidiary shrines in the complex shows the continuity of construction of

temples at Katarmal even in the later date. There are large numbers of stone sculptures of various *Brhaminical* deities placed in the sanctum. In addition to stone image of Sun god, there is a wooden image, almost disintegrated, seems to be under worship prior to the existing temple.

- **Badrinath Group of Temples (Dwarahat):** There are three temples in this group, of which the main temple is dedicated to Lord Vishnu, worshiped as Baddrinath. Facing east, it consists of garbhgriha, antrala and mandapa, however mandapa is missing now. On elevation the temple has mouldings of kumbha, kalash & kapota-pattika followed by shikhra consisting of bhumi amlaka topped with kalasha. The black stone image of vishnu is under worship, bear an inscription of samvat 1105, suggesting the date of the construction of the temple in 1048 AD. There are two more miniature shrine in the group, one is dedicated to Godess Laxmi while other is devoid of any image.
- **Bandeo Temple (Dwarahat):** Standing in the midst to the cultivated fields on the bank of a small stream, known as Khiru Ganga, this pyramidical shrine, known as pahmnas shikhar temple, represents the earliest extent developed temple of central Himayala. Rectangular on plan, the elevation of the shikhara is composed of receding horizontal courses of projected and sank moulding called pidha, hence, known as pidha deval in some architectural canons. The temple is presently without any image.
- **Gujar Deo Temple (Dwarahat):** Though in a dilapidated condition, this temple can be described as a master's piece of temple architecture of the region of Sekhari shikhara type. It is an orthogonal temple with panchratha plan. In elevation shikhara of the temple is composed of small replicas of Latina sihkara arranged in receding order one above another. Because of these multiple miniature shikharas, it is called sekhari. This temple represents the most developed type of nagara temples (north Indian type) of Central Himalaya. On the basis of architecture and sculptural art, it may be dated to 13th Cent. AD. The Latina and sekhari sikhara type temples are the

only structures having subsidiary components like mandapa, gudhamandapa, rangamanadapa, mukhamandapa and arddhha-mandapa.

- **Kacheri Group of Temple (Dwarahat):** There are twelve shrines in this group, five each living in two rows while the remaining two stands separate on higher terrace. Stylistically, these temples can be placed to circa eleventh to thirteenth century A.D. Though, these temples are relatively stunted, their stylistic similarities bring them very near to the Ratan Deo temples at Dwarahat. These shrines have a common portico with series of free standing pillars with plain shafts and brackets in front. These temples were dedicated alternatively to Siva and Vishnu. This fact is ascertained from the existence of an outlet for sacrificial water (somasutra) which has to be provided in a Linga and the pedestal against the back-wall to install the image of Vishnu. There is also a circular well made of stone blocks in the complex.
- **Kutumbari Temple (Dwarahat):** Originally located on the higher slope of the hill, presently Kutumbari temple is now lost completely, however, architectural members of the temple can be seen on the houses near by. A detail survey was carried out by Dehradun Circle in 2000 revealed that the Kutumbari temple is existence upto 1950. Available photograph revealed that this rekha sikhara temple was in dilapidated condition and have been fallen down sometime between 1950-1960. All architectural members have been taken away by villagers for construction which can still be seen on the wall of existing houses.
- **Maniyan Group of Temples (Dwarahat):** Earlier there were seven temples in the group but recent scientific clearance has revealed remains of foundation of two more shrines, hence in all there are nine shrines in Maniyan group. Four shrines are built in a way that it constitutes a single component with a common courtyard in front. Images of the Jain thirthankara on lintel of three shrines suggest that these shrines are dedicated to Jain sector which are generally not found in this region. However, remaining shrines seems to be dedicated to Brahmical deities. Stylistically this group of temple is assignable to 11th - 13th Cent. AD.

- **Mritunjaya Group (Dwarahat):** This is one of the most sacred groups of temple at Dwarahat. Main temple is dedicated to Lord Shiva, known as a Mritunjaya (Vanquisher of death). Facing east, this nagara sikhara temple is thriratha on plan consisting of garbhgriha, antarala followed by mandapa in same axis. Stylistically this temple is assignable to 11th -12th Century AD. There is a another temple dedicated to Bhairava in same complex while other shrines are devoid of any images and are in ruined condition.
- **Ratan Deo Shrines (Dwarahat):** Originally, the Ratan Deo Temple Complex comprises of nine shrines. However, presently only six temples are intact. Three temples stands on a common platform preceded by a north facing common oblong mandapa probably each dedicated to god Brahma, Vishnu and Siva. Among the subsidiary shrines, one stands on the west and other two on the east facing each other dedicated to other Brahmanical deities. Having curvilinear element in the Sikhara, the Ratan Deo shrines have also a trianga-bada. The shrines under this group look more tapering than the rest of Dwarahat temples. The volume of the jangha seems to be more than that of the sikhara. Stylistically, these temples can be placed between 11th-13th centuries AD.

BAGESHWAR

- **GROUP OF ANCIENT TEMPLES, CONSISTING OF MAIN SHRINE OF SIVA AND 17 SUBSIDIARY SHRINES (BAIJNATH OR VAIDYANATH):** Baijnath identified as ancient Karttikayapura often is believe to be the seat the Katyuries, earliest ruling dynasty of central Himalayan region who had shifted their capital from Joshimath (District Chamoli) to this place sometimes in 8th Century AD.

The main temple known as Baijnath is dedicated to Siva. Panchratha on plan, the temple consist of sanctum with projected portico. The plinth of the temple has five base moldings however, remaining portion is devoid of any decoration. The original shikhara of the temple is lost and the present one is a later addition which is a

clerestoried tin-shed supported on wooden frame. The other shrines in the group are also identical both in plan and elevation. Among the important are Kedareswar, Lakshmi-narayan and Brahmani Devi temples.

- **THREE TEMPLES OF THE INDO-ARYAN SHIKARA TYPE KNOWN AS LAKSHMI NARAYAN, RAKSHAS DEVAL & SATYA NARAYAN (TALLI HAT MOUNT KATYUR):** These temples are located adjacent to the west of Baijnath group of temple in village Tallihat. The Lakshmi Narayan Temple stands within enclosure wall and consists of a sanctum in rekha style followed by mandapa with a pyramidal roof. It is more akin to Orissan temples style. Triratha on plan, the temple has Kakshasana balconies on the transept projections. There is an inscription of Saka- era 1214 i.e. A.D. 1292 near the doorway of the temple.

The Rakshas Deol (temple), also known as Rakshaka deva, is a massive temple. Standing within enclosure wall, it consists of a sanctum in rekha order followed by mandapa of pyramidal style. The shikhara of the main temple has five bhumis topped with amalaka over which akasalingas is placed. Due to lack of decoration and on the basis of its architectural style, it is believed to be little earlier than that of Lakshmi Narayan temple.

The ruins of Satyanarayan temple are located a little away from village in the open field. The shikhara and veneering stone members of surviving structure are missing. However, a few sculptures and detached architectural members suggest the old grandeur of this temple.

CHAMOLI

- **Rudranath Temple, Gopeshwar:** Gopeshwar appears to have been a major temple site located about 10km. away from Chamoli on the way to Ukhimath. The presence of some twenty-one amalasaraka of different sizes found within the compound of the main temple suggesting the existence of many more temples at the site while now only a few temples survived. The main temple locally known as Gopinath / Rudranath is dedicated to Siva, the object of worship being a svayambhu-linga. It is

built in Nagara style with a Latina sikhara. Triratha on plan and elevation its sikhara is adorned with chaitya motif all over hence termed as jala sikhara in architectural canons. Some of these chaitya motifs are adorned with bhadrakumukas. The chandrasala of its tall sukanasa shows Siva in his Nataraja form. Stylistically, this temple has close similarity with the Mrityunjaya temple, Jageshwar, both in terms of plan and elevation as well as ornamentation and assignable to eighth century AD. The mandapa of the main temple is a later addition. Besides, there are three miniature shrines, one of which is of valabhi style dateable to tenth century AD. In addition, there are two double storied building built in tradition at style known as Baradari & Rawal Niwas.

- **Trident - Gopeshwar:** Within the Rudranath/Gopinath temple complex there is a colossal metal trident measuring over 5feet high with a diameter of 20cm. Inscribed in late Brahmi characters of sixth-seventh century AD recording its erection in front of the temple of Rudra by one Ganapatinaga. Interestingly, in course of time, this trident seems to have fallen down and it was restored to its present position by King Asoka Challa of Dulu, western Nepal (1191 A.D.), as we learn from his inscription on the same trident engraved in Nagari characters. Atkinson reads this name as Aneka Malla, however, recent studies have shown that Atkinson's reading is erroneous and the correct reading is Asoka Challa.

- **Two Temples - Pandukeshwar:** Known as Yogadhyanbadri and Vasudevabadri, these temples are dedicated to Lord Vishnu constructed at Pandukeshwar, at a distance of about 20km. from Joshimath on way to Badrinath. The Yogadhyanbadri temple consists of a *garbhagriha*, *antarala* and *mandapa*. Both, the *garbhagriha* and the *mandapa* are square on plan, devoid of any *ratha* proliferations but has a curious design in elevation. Its *varandika* rising from the square khurachhadya base is circular on plan which is carried into the elevation through the sikhara up to the shoulder, which in turn with its perfects curve coalesces with the neck of the temple, thus looking like a cylindrical dome. Another

temple known as Vasudevabadri is *rekha shikhara* temple. Stylistically these temples are assignable to 9th -10th Cent. AD. Recently, Archaeological Survey of India exposed remains of one more temples in same complex and restored. This temple is locally known as Laxminarayan temple. Hence there are three temples exist in the complex.

- **Remains of Sixteen Temples, Adibadri:** Situated about 25 km. from Karanprayag on way to Dwarahat (Kumaon), this group of temples is known as Adibadridham, one of the five Badries viz Adibadri, Dhyanbadri, Yogabadri, Bhavishatbadri and Vishalbadri. It is believed that originally there were 16 temples out of which only 14 remains now. On the basis of architectural features, construction of these temples can be, between circa 8th - 12th cent. A.D.

The main temple in the group is dedicated to Lord Vishnu while other subsidiary shrines are attributed to Shri Lakshminarayan, Gaurishankar, Annapurna, Surya, Satyanarayan, Ganesha, Siva, Garuda, Durga, of Janki etc.

- **Fort with Walls And Ruins of Dwelling Houses Inside It And With Flight Of Steps - Khal:** It is believed that this Fort was the seat of Kanak Pal, the actual founder of the present Garhwal dynasty, whose descendant Ajaipal consolidated the Raj of Garhwal. The fort is situated on the peak of a hillock at a height of about 100m. from the road. Scientific clearance carried out by ASI revealed ruins of the palace complex on the top and residential structure on the hill slope. It is a multistoried structural complex with provision of the chambers for the attendants. In addition to working floor, terracotta pipes, a circular well with lime plaster either for storing the grains or for water, are found. Carvings on stone beams in the construction of top story suggest its construction around 14th century AD.

- **Rock inscription in survey plot no. 89 (Mandal):** This seven lines inscription is inscribed on the rock surface in reserve forest area at a distance of about 6km. from Mandal on the way to Goddess Ansuya temple. One has to reach here through a deep forest on the hill via village Siroli. Inscribed in northern Brahmin script in

Sanskrit language the inscriptions refer to Naravarman records the construction of water-through by him. Paleographically the inscription is datable to 6th century AD.

CHAMPAWAT

- **Group of Baleshwar Temples:** This group of temple was constructed during 14 Cent. A.D. by Chand rulers of the region. The temples comprises of both latina, shikihara and sekhri shikara type However, their significance lies in the fact that the two main temple in complex are composed of double mula-prasadas(sanctum sanctorum) each of which is preceded by a mandapa which in turn are joined in axial length. The entire temple complex is in dilapidated condition and the majority of the architectural members have been taken away by the vandals. However, large numbers of the stone images are still available at the site.
- **Kotwali Chabutra:** It is a stone square pavilion measuring 2.75m with an height of 0.83m. locally called Chaumra or Chabutra. Such structures are found through out length and breathe of the Central Himalaya. Available evidence suggests that this chabutra was highly ornamented with elaborate roof called Chatri. The purpose of such platform is not known, but it is locally believed that this is the place from where king used to deliver justice.
- **Naula or Covered Spring Attached of the Baleshwar Temple:** This is one among the important water structure in this region. Attached to the south of the temple premises, this rectangular structure is built below the ground level in which water oozing from the ground is collected. The tank is raised with two parallel walls on each side slightly above the ground level to prevent the flow of the rain water. The superstructure is made of dressed stone masonry with conical sloping roof of stone slab supported by stone beams laid in lantern pattern.

DEHRADUN

- **The Inscribed Rock Edict of Asoka (Kalsi):** The site of Asoka's inscriptions at Kalsi the only place in north India where the great Mauryan emperor has inscribed the set of the fourteen rock edicts (res). The language of these edicts is Pali and the

script Brahmi which reflect Asoka's humane approach in his internal administration, his fatherly concern for the moral and spiritual welfare of his subjects, and his commitment to non-violence and abandonment of warfare. For this Asoka proclaimed certain restrictive and prescriptive policies. The essences of the restrictive policies are restraint in worldly amusement, in gratuitous slaughter or non destruction of animals, in participating in despicable and useless beliefs and practices, and in glorification of one's own faith. That of prescriptive ones: self-control, purity of mind, gratitude, and firm attachment service to parents and ascetics, alms to brahmins and sramanas (ascetics), seemly behaviour towards friends, relatives, acquaintances, servants and slaves, concordance in religious matters.

To implement his policies Asoka put restraint in killing animals for the royal kitchen, established hospitals and planted medicinal herbs for both human beings and animals. He did not only within his empire but also in the neighbouring kingdoms: Chodas, Pamdiyas, Satiyaputras, Kerlaputras upto tambapamni (srilanka) in the south, and of hellenic kings in the west. He appointed dhamma mahamatras (overseers of the sacred law) for the promotion of righteous conduct, and replacing sound of trumpet signalling war used sound of dhamma (righteousness) whereby he claims to have gained dhamma vijay (victory by means of righteousness) even in the kingdoms of his contemporary hellenic kings, namely, antiochus (i) theos of Sriya, Ptolemy (ii) Philadelphia of Egypt, Antigonus Gonatas of Macedonia, magas of Cyrene and Alexander of epirus. Thus, these inscriptions bear testimony to the facts that what Asoka preached also practiced. That is why he is acclaimed as one of the greatest emperors in the world.

- **Siva Temple, Lakhamandal:** Dedicated to Lord Siva, this temple, popularly known as Lakeswara, was built between 12th -13th cents. A.D in Nagara style. However, fragmentary inscription of Chhaglesha and Prashasti of Princes Isvasra (circa 5th-6th centuries AD), revealed that the antiquity of the site goes much earlier

then the existing temple. The Prashasti of Princes Isvasra, belonging to the Royal race of Singhpura, described the construction of a temple in honour of Siva, for the spiritual welfare of her deceased husband Chandragupta, the son of king Jalandhara. Remains of brick temple datable to 5th structures AD, below the ruined of stone temple in the complex are the earliest structural activity at the site.

Recent scientific clearance carried out by ASI revealed large number of structural remains in the temple premises including remains of flat roofed temples assignable to 5th -6th Cent. AD. Which through new dimension in the history of the temple architecture of the Central Himalayan region.

- **Mahasu Temple, Hanol:** The Mahasu temple at Hanol is considered to be sacred tirtha of the people living in a vast mountainous interior between the Jamuna and the Satluj. The cultic domain of Mahasu is, thus, not only confined to Jaunsar-Bawar, but it extends far beyond the adjoining area of Shimla District and Trans-Giri part of Sirmaur District in Himachal Pradesh and Dehradun and Uttarkashi District in Uttarakhand.

There are four deities collectively known as the Mahasu Devtas i.e, Mahasu, Basika, Pawasi and Chalda. The first three abide in the temple while fourth i.e. Chalda is remain always moving in the Mahasu-domain. There are numerous legends associated with the origin of the Mahasu, however, it is generally believed that originally Mahasu belong to Kashmir and brought here by one Huna Bhat of Mandarath.

The Mahasu Devata temple is one of the rare examples of harmonious blend of stone and wooden to form one composite grand edifice. The sanctum-proper is a pure-rekha shikhara structure in stone of the classical type, however, the part of shikhara above the griva has very aesthetically been camouflaged on all sides with an elaborately treated wooden superstructure. The whole wooden structure is covered with a high-pitched slated pent-roof-end and the projections of balcony are

gracefully ornamented with dangling fringes and the pendant corner bells. Architecturally the original mulaprahada is far more ancient and assignable to 9th-10th Cent. A.D. than the wooden contraption on the top. The mandapa and mukamandapa were added later and have undergone many changes in the subsequent periods.

- **Ancient Site (Jagatgram), Badhwala:** This ancient site was excavated by of Archaeological Survey of India between 1952 - 54, revealing remains of three fires alter and other associated material including inscribed bricks. Built in Syena Chiti form (Eagle shaped), these alters are believed to associate with the Ashvamedha sacrifices, perform by their authors. Sanskrit inscriptions in Brahmi characters of late third century AD, on bricks used in one of the three Jagatgram altars inform that king. Silavarman, alias Pona, of Yugasaila, who belonged to the Vrishagana gotra, performed four Asvamedha sacrifices here, indicating, perhaps, during the third century AD this western part of Central Himalaya was known as Yugasiala. In Pan Indian context such altars are extremely rare.
- **Excavated Site - Virbhadra Rishikesh:** The site was excavated by of Archaeological Survey of India between 1973-75. The excavation brought to light the remains of a three cultural phases:
 1. The early phase (1st Century AD to circa 3rd century AD) represented by mud brick wall.
 2. The middle phase (circa 4th century to circa 5th century AD) is marked by a floor of brick bats and remains of a Saivaite temple.
 3. The late phase (circa 7th century to circa 8th century AD) is marked by some residential structures of burnt brick-bats.
- **Kalinga Monuments (Karanpur), Shastradhara Road:** This memorial was built by victorious British Army in memories of their general 'Gilasp'y with other army men and their adversary Gorkha general 'Balbhadra Thapa' to pay tribute to their courage jointly.

In 1814, the battle of Nalapani (Dehradun) took place between the Gorkha army under the command of Balbhadra Thapa, grandson of Amar Singh Thapa and the British army led by general Gilaspy, in which women and children joined hands in fighting along with the Gorkha, against the Britishers. The British general Gilaspy lost his life on 31st October 1814 with other fellow military men. Later on due to continued onslaught by the Britishers, the Gorkha general Balbhadra Thapa along with his army was forced to leave the fort of Nalapani.

HARIDWAR

- **British Cemetery (Shekhpuri And Ganeshpur), Roorkee:** This is a vast cemetery having 33725 Sq m area (3372 Hectare/7.623 Acre) with a regular compound wall, pierced with an entrance gateway having a pointed arch of the Gothic style. The cemetery contains a number of graves including graves of general Sir Harold Williams of different designs and materials belonging to mid nineteenth century. A part of the cemetery is still use as graveyard by Christian community of Roorkee.

NAINITAL

- **Remains of Ancient Buildings Locally Identified with Vairatpattana, Dhikuli:** Remains of ancient Vairatpattana, the capital of the old kingdom of Govisana are spread in deep reserve forest of Jim Corbett National Park in Dhikuli. In the seventh century, the place was visited by *Hieun Tsang*. The remains of this ancient town are not easily accessible due to thick forest. But explorations in the past revealed the remains of a few platforms made of stone and fine specimens of pillar capitals, medallions, lions and fragments of decorated pillars near the modern temple on the hill slope. Since the site is located at the entrance of the Central Himalayan hills, this place might have served as transit centre of trade in the past hence the place is called *Pattan*.
- **Old Temple Sacred to Sita, Sitabani:** The site of the temple is said to be the hermitage of the Maharishi Balmiki. Number of amlaka stones, one headless

dancing Ganesha sculpture, doorjamb, decorated columns carved slabs scattered near the present temple prove the antiquity of the site. However the existing temple at the site is of very late period.

PITHORAGARH

- **Remains of A Few Old Temples and An Inscribed Masonry Well, Gangoli Hat:**

There are six temples, five samadhis (memorials) of Sadhus and one inscribed water reservoir. Of these four temples stands in one complex while the remaining two temples and samadhis are situated in another complex circled by separate boundary walls. The temples are generally triratha in plan with a short projected portico in front. These rekha sikhara temples are dedicated to God Vishnu, Shiva and Sun God. The samadhis are of very late period made in form of the miniature temple; probably belong to the Sadhus / Saints residing here in the recent past.

The water reservoir locally known as *Jahnavi naul* made of dressed stone masonry below the ground level where water oozing out from the ground. The reservoir is covered with with a flat roof *mandapa* with pillar *kakshakshana* on either side. There is an inscription mentioning three dates-Samvatsara 1321 (AD 1264); Saka 1189 (AD 1276); and Saka 1197 (AD 1275), and refers to *Rajanaraja Dhira,*

- **Patalbhubneshwar Cave, Didihat:** This natural cave is situated at a distance of about 500 mt away from village Bhubneshwar on hill slope. The Manas Khand of Skandapurana has mentioned the religious importance of the cave. It is believed that Shankarcharya visited this place in the year 822 cent. AD. One has to crawl 20 mt down below through a narrow passage to reach the bottom of the cave. There is formation of the stalactite and stalagmite deposits inside which is a common feature of a lime stone cave. This natural formation has taken unique shapes at various spaces inside the cave which are identified with the various Brahmical Gods and Goddess by the local people. However main deity under worship is Lord Bhubneshwar or Siva. A few images are also placed here for worship in later stage. A small rectangular tank cut into the bed rock inside the cave is only human

intervention. There is an inscription on the entrance of the cave datable to 14th Century A.D.

- **Mata Bhagwati Kotavi Cave, Ghunseragaon:** This is a very ancient and natural cave which is near the Halipad, Jajerdeol, Pithoragarh. Shankaracharya visited this place and one has to bend in order to keep moving to the farthest places. There are various Gods and Goddesses in side this ancient cave but the main deity is Goddess Kotavi Devi. There is natural water flow inside the cave which is used for worshipping the Shiv Lingas. The underground hidden water flows down to the base of the mountain and that is the place where people take holy bath. The local have a strong belief that the water has a healing capacity and eradicates the skin diseases. (www.matakotavi.com)

UDHAMSINGH NAGAR

- **Excavated Site at Dronasagar (Mauza Ujjan Kashipur):** Kashipur is identified by A. Cunningham with *Kiu-pi-shwang-na* of *Hiuen Tsang*, which is rendered by *Julien* as *Govisana*. Cunningham traced remains of a large structure at *Bhim-Gaja*, the highest place at the site. The ASI conducted excavations here, in the year 1939-40, 1965-66 and 1970-01 in order to reveal the details of the structure traced by Cunningham. Excavation revealed substantial part of the plan of the temple built in three different phases. Initially, the temple appear to have started as solid brick built high platform surmounted possibly by sanctum during Gupta period but later, two encircling walls probably in 6th-7th century AD were laid around it covering it finally into in extensive and impressive *Panchayatana* complex.

UTTARKASHI

- **Excavated Site - Purola:** The ancient site at Purola is located on the left bank of the river Kamal. The excavation yielded the remains of Painted Grey Ware (PGW) from the earliest level alongwith other associated materials including terracotta figurines, beads, potter-stamp, the dental and femur portions of domesticated horse (*Equas Cabalus Linn*). The most important finds from the site is a brick alter

identified as *Syenachiti* by the excavator. The structure is in the shape of a flying eagle (*Garuda*), head facing east with outstretched wings. In the center of the structure is the chiti is a square chamber yielding remains of pottery assignable to circa first century B.C. to second century AD. In addition, copper coin of Kuninda and other material i.e. ash, bone pieces etc and a thin gold leaf impressed with a human figure, tentatively identified as Agni have also been recovered from the central chamber.

14.3 MUSEUMS IN UTTARAKHAND

The museums of Uttarakhand are ideal retreats for people desiring to learn the Indian historical facts. These museums in Uttarakhand are classified into various categories and thus present the best of their state.

Below are some famous museums in Uttarakhand:

- 1. Group museum and archives of Roorkee:** Group museum and archives of Roorkee, located at Bengal Engineer Group and Center is a well known museum in Uttarakhand. Showcasing historical documents, books, pamphlets, paintings, photographs of Bengal Engineer Group, Group museum also displays several medals, portraits, weapons.
- 2. The War Museum at the Kumaon Regimental Center in Ranikhet:** It is a premier one and it displays various types of army materials including War Trophies, flags, uniforms, manuscripts, paintings, rifles, important historical documents weapons. War Museum is open on all weekdays.
- 3. Zonal Museum of Dehradun:** It is one of the reputed museums of Uttarakhand. Located inside Anthropological Survey of India on Hardwar Road, this museum displays items of Central and Western Himalayas are preserved in the museum.
- 4. Pt. Govind Ballabh Pant Government Museum:** It is another asset of Uttarakhand in Almora. This multi purpose museum was established in the year 1980 and boasts an interesting collection of art and crafts.

5. Survey Museum of Roorkee: It is sited inside the campus of University of Roorkee. Maintained by Department of Civil Engineering University, this museum houses old surveying elements of 19th century and modern surveying and mapping equipments.

The museums of Uttarakhand are famous for their folk arts, textiles, personal collection of eminent personalities, miniature paintings, woodworks and so on. These museums also boast an assortment of sculptures, terracotta, coins, musical instruments, bronzes, ivory copper plates, beads, manuscripts and many other things.

14.4 ANSWER TO CHECK YPUR PROGRESS:

1. Name 5 important monuments located in Almora District.
2. Name Panch Badris.
3. Write a detailed note on Monuments approved by Archeological survey of India in Uttarakhand.
4. Name important museums in Utrakhand and write a brief note on it.

14.5 REFERENCES:

- <http://www.himalaya2000.com/uttarakhand/monuments.html>
- <http://www.hindudevotionalblog.com/2009/04/badrinath-temple-uttarakhand-char-dham.html>
- www.uttaraguide.com/monuments.php
- http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chandi_Devi_Temple,_Haridwar
- <http://www.holidayiq.com/Nanda-Devi-Temple-Almora-Sightseeing-265-2.html>
- <http://wikimapia.org/1347941/Dunagiri-Mandir>
- http://www.nainitaltourism.com/katarmal_sun_temple.html
- <http://www.upscguide.com/content/historic-monuments-uttarakhand>
- <http://www.asidehraduncircle.in>

Unit-15
Fairs, Festivals and Religious Processions

Structure:

- 15.1 Introduction
- 15.2 Objectives
- 15.3 Fairs in Uttarakhand
- 15.4 Festivals of Uttarakhand
- 15.5 Folks dance of Uttarakhand
- 15.6 Summary
- 15.7 Answers to check your progress
- 15.8 References

15.1 INTRODUCTION

In this unit you will learn about the various festivals, fairs and religious processions of Uttarakhand.

The religious, social and cultural urges of the people of Uttarakhand find an expression in various fairs, which are in turn closely linked to the economic activities of the region. Various folk songs and dances have been kept alive because of these fairs.

In older times, when means of transport were not so good these fairs were an opportunity for friends and relatives to meet regularly. In spite of all the changes in society, the tradition of fairs has been kept up by the people. The fairs of Jauljibi, Thal and Bageshwar have been closely linked with the trading activities of the people of this region, while the fairs at Dwarahat, Syalde and Devidhura are important from the religious and cultural point of view.

The fairs and folk festivals of Uttarakhand are very colourful and distinctive, and are the blend of various natural, social and cultural factors. The people of Uttarakhand also celebrate all the major Indian festivals. Basant Panchami, Bhitauli, Harela, Phooldei, Batsavitri, Ganga Dusshera, Dikar Puja, Olgi or Ghee Sankranti, Khatarua, Ghruian Ekadashi and Ghughutia are some of the major festivals of Uttarakhand.

The daily lives of Uttarakhandi women are crowded with a never-ending succession of festivals, most of them involving fasts and the preparation of special foods.

15.2 OBJECTIVE:

The main objective of this unit is impart the knowledge of various-

- Fairs
- Festivals
- Folk dances
- Religious processions of Uttarakhand to the students of tourism.

15.3 FAIRS OF UTTRAKHAND

1. Kumbh Mela
2. Jauljibi and Thal Fairs
3. Uttrayini Fair
4. The Nanda Devi Fair
5. Syalde Bikhauti
6. The Somnath (Masi) Fair
7. The Devidhura Fair
8. The Jageshwar Fair
9. The Purnagiri Fair
10. The Hatkalika Fair

1. Kumbh Mela: Kumbha (Kumbha means pot) Mela is a sacred Hindu pilgrimage that takes place at the following four locations of India-

- Prayag (near the city of Allahabad, in the state of Uttar Pradesh) at the confluence of three rivers Ganga (Ganges), Yamuna and Saraswati
- Haridwar (in the state of Uttarakhand) where the river Ganga enters the plains from Himalayas
- Ujjain (in Madhya Pradesh), on the banks of Shipra river, and
- Nasik (in Maharashtra) on the banks of Godavari River.

The pilgrimage occurs four times every twelve years, once at each of the four locations. Each twelve-year cycle includes the Maha (great) Kumbha Mela at Haridwar and Prayag, attended by millions of people, making it the largest pilgrimage gathering around the world.

The observance of Kumbha Mela is based upon the following story: thousands of years ago, perhaps in the Vedic period, gods and demons made a temporary agreement to work together in obtaining amrita (the nectar of immortality) from the Milky Ocean, and to share this equally. However, when the

Kumbha (pot) containing the amrita appeared, the demons ran away with the pot and were chased by the gods. For twelve days and twelve nights (equivalent to twelve human years) the gods and demons fought in the sky for the possession of this pot of amrita. It is said that during the battle, drops of amrita fell on to four places: Prayag, Haridwar, Ujjain and Nasik. Thus, Kumbha mela is observed at these four locations where the nectar fell.

Kumbha Mela is attended by millions of people on a single day. A ritual bath at a predetermined time and place is the major event of this festival. Other activities include religious discussions, devotional singing, mass feeding of holy men / women and the poor and religious assemblies where doctrines are debated and standardized.

Kumbha Mela (especially the Maha Kumbha Mela) is the most sacred of all the Hindu pilgrimages. Thousands of holy men/women (monks, saints, sadhus) grace the occasion by their presence. The suspiciousness of Kumbha Mela is in part attributed to the gathering of thousands of holy men/women at one place on earth. The Ardh Kumbh is held every six years and then after six years Kumbh Mela is held. It is said that a holy dip in the river Ganges during the Kumbh & Ardh Kumbh gives you Moksha or Nirvana. According to astrologers, the 'Kumbh Fair' takes place when the planet Jupiter enters Aquarius and the Sun enters Aries.

2. Jauljibi and Thal Fairs: This fair is held every year in November at Jauljibi, the confluence of the rivers Kali and Gori, which is a meeting place of three different cultures - the Shauka, the Nepali and the Kumaoni. This gateway to Johar, Darma, Chaudans and Byans was at one time, considered to be the central place between Tibet and the Tarai regions. Though this fair is primarily a commercial one, its cultural importance cannot be overlooked. People come even from Nepal to this fair in order to sell horses, ghee and foreign goods and take back foodgrains, jaggery etc.

A similar fair is held at Thal on Vaishakh Sankranti (14 April) and it attracts a large number of Shaukas. With the closure of the Indo - Tibet trade these fairs have lost their former importance.

3. The Uttarayani Fair: Uttarayani fair is held in a number of places including **Bageshwar, Rameshwar, Sult Mahadev, Chitrashila** (Ranibagh) and **Hanshwar** etc. on **Uttarayani** day. At Pancheshwar the dola of Chaumu comes down to the temple. The fair at Bageshwar attracts maximum people. Its commercial, cultural and political importance is still very high. Goods like iron and copper pots, baskets, casks, bamboo articles, mats, mattresses, carpets, blankets, herbs and spices are sold during this fair.

The Uttarayani fairs are often used as platforms by social and political workers and the Bageshwar fair specially has played an important role in all the local movements, as also in the freedom movement. In 1921 activists had given a call for the eventual eradication of the system of bonded labour known as coolie begar. In 1929 Gandhi ji came to Bageshwar. Many freedom fighters and folk singers have been closely associated with the Bageshwar fair. Even today the fair attracts a large number of people, who spend the whole night dancing and singing Jhoras, Chancharis and Bairas.

4. Nandadevi Fair: The Nandadevi fair is held at Almora, Nainital, Kot (Dangoli), Ranikhet, Bhowali, Kichha and also in the far flung villages of lohar (like Milam and Martoli) and Pindar valleys (like Wachham and Khati). In the villages of the Pindar valley people celebrate the Nanda Devi Jaat (journey) every year, while in lohar people come from far and wide to Danadhar, Suring, Milam and Martoli in order to worship the Goddess. In Nainital and Almora thousands take part in the procession carrying the dola (or litter) of Nanda Devi. It is said that the Nanda Devi fairs started in Kumaon during the reign of Kalyan Chand in the 16th Century. A three day fair is held at Kot ki mai or Kot Bhramari Devi. The fair at Saneti comes every second

year. Both these fairs are rich in folk expressions and many village products are brought for sale.

5. Syalde Bikhoti: It is celebrated on the **Vishuwat Sankranti** day and commemorates an ancient victory. On this day, the Bagwal is held at **Syalde Pokhar** in the old town of **Dwarahat**. People also celebrate the occasion with music, songs and dancing. One day before this a similar fair is held at Vibhandeshwar in which Lord Shiva is worshipped. The Syalde Bikhauti fair has been successful in retaining its old colour and gaiety to a large extent.

6. Somnath (Masi) Fair: This fair, also on **Vishuwat Sankranti** day is held in the Shiva temple at **Masi**. It is a famous fair of Pali Pachhaun. Animals, especially bullocks and calves, are sold at this fair. On the same day a fair is held at Thal. In the summer the people in the valley of Ramganga (West), especially in Masi and Bhikiasen, celebrate the unique machhli utsav (the fish festival). The villagers bearing tumra come with Jaal, fatyav and hathiya to the river to catch fish. The fish festival is locally known as Dahau.

7. Bagwal - Devidhura Fair: This fair is held in the compound of the Varahi Devi temple at Devidhura on the day of Raksha Bandhan. Devidhura is situated at a trijunction of Almora, Pithoragarh and Nainital districts and the fair is well known for its enchanting folk songs and dances as also for its Bagwal. During the Bagwal the two groups (khams) of people throw stones at each other while they try to protect themselves by using big roof like shields. Even watching the Bagwal is a truly thrilling experience. The Devidhura fair has maintained its old vigour.

8. Jageshwar Fair: This fair is held on the fifteenth day of the month of Baishakh (late March or early April) at the Shiva temple in Jageshwar. During the fair people take holy dips in the Brahma Kund (pool) and worship Lord Shiva. On this day, fairs are also held in many other places.

9. Purnagiri Fair: Many people throng the temple at Purnagiri, which is situated on the top of a mountain on the right bank of the **River Kali** near **Tanakpur**, in the

district of Champawat. The temple is very crowded during the Navaratri of Paush and Chaitra. Every year a fair is held on Vishuwat Sankranti and this attracts a large number of pilgrims. After the Holi festival, the longest fair of Kumaon (for about 40 days) starts at Purnagiri. Thousands of people visit the shrine these days.

10. Haatkalika Fair: On the ashtami (eighth day of the month) of the Chaitra and Bhado, a fair is held in the Kalika temple at Gangolihat. People come with drums and flags to pay homage to Goddess Kalika. On this day, animals are sacrificed and offered to the Goddess. The athwar (eight sacrifices) processions with drums and dances are worth seeing.

15.4 FESTIVALS OF UTTRAKHAND

1. Makar Sankranti
2. Basant Panchami
3. Phool Dei
4. Harela and Bhitauli
5. Olgia or Ghee Sankranti
6. Khatarua
7. Bat Savitri
8. Ganga Dusshera or Dasar
9. Janopunya
10. Nanda Devi Rajjaat
11. Chippla Jaat
12. Hilljatra
13. Kandali
14. Holi

1. Makar Sankranti: According to the Hindu religious texts, on the day of Uttarayani, the sun enters the Zodiacal sign of 'Makar' (Capricorn) from the Zodiacal sign of the Kark (Cancer), i.e. from this day onwards the sun becomes 'Uttarayan' or it starts

moving to the north. It is said that from this day, which signals a change of season, the migratory birds start returning to the hills. On Makar Sankranti people give Khichadi (a mixture of pulses and rice) in charity, take ceremonial dips in holy rivers, participate in the Uttarayani fairs and celebrate the festival of Ghughutia or Kale Kauva. During the festival of Kale Kauva (literal translation 'black crow') people make sweetmeats out of sweetened flour (flour and gur) deep fried in ghee, shape them like drums, pomegranates, knives, swords etc. They are strung together and worn as necklace-in the middle of which an oragne in fixed. Early in the morning children wear these necklaces and sing "Kale Kauva.." to attract crows and other birds and offer them portions of these necklaces, as a token of welcome for all the migratory birds, who are now coming back after their winter sojourn in the plains.

Wearing garlands of the above eatables the children come out calling the crows with following song on their lips:

**Kale Kale, bhol bate aile, bor puwa Khale,
Ie Kauva bara, mai ke de sunu gharo,
Ie Kauva dhal, mai ke de sona thal.**

(Come dear crow, come daily, you will enjoy eating bara and puwa. Take the bara and give me a pitcher full of gold Take the shield and give me a golden plate).

2. Basant Panchami: The festival of Basant Panchami celebrates the coming of the spring season. This festival, which also signals the end of winter, is generally celebrated during Magh (January - February). During this festival people worship the Goddess **Saraswati**, use yellow handkerchiefs or even yellow cloths and in a few places people put a yellow tilak on their foreheads. This festival also marks the beginning of **holi baithaks**.

3. Phool Dei: Phool Dei is celebrated on the first day of the month of Chaitra in mid March. On this day, young girls conduct most of the ceremonies. In some places this

festival is celebrated throughout the month with the advent of spring. During this festival young girls go to all the houses in the muhalla or the village with plates full of rice, jaggery, coconut, green leaves and flowers. They offer their good wishes for the prosperity of the household and are given blessings and presents (sweets, gur, money etc) in return. In a few places even today they sprinkle flowers and rice on the doorsteps and sing:

phool dei, chamma dei
deno dwar, bhar bhakar
yo dei sei namaskar, puje dwar

Sei (a pudding made with floor, curd and jaggery) is prepared specially for this occasion. Folk singers sing the Riturain, Chaiti and other songs welcoming spring and are given presents, money and foodgrains.

4. Harela and Bhitauli: On the first day of the navaratri (nine day holy period) of the month of Chaitra women fill baskets with soil and sow seven types of grains in them. The grains germinate symbolizing the future harvest. These yellow leaves, called Harela, are cut on the tenth day and people put them on their heads and behind their ears. During the month of Chaitra (March-April) brothers send presents to their sisters. These presents are called Bhitauli.

Harela is peculiarly a Kumaoni festival to mark the advent of the rainy season. The celebration falls on the first day of Shravan. Ten days before the due date, seeds of either five or seven kinds of grains are mixed together and sown in pots inside the room, using small baskets filled with earth. The sowing is done either by the head of the family or the family priest. It is done ceremoniously. Water is sprinkled after worship. On the last day of the month of Aasarh, one day before the actual celebration of the festival, a kind of mock weeding is done with small wooden hoes. Gaily painted images of Shiva and Parvati and their off springs are prepared and worshipped on the Shankranti day. Green shoots Harela are placed on the head gear.

The significance of Harela lies in the fact that it provides an opportunity to the cultivator to test the qualities or defects of the seeds he has in his store. Significance is that the festival is the occasion to give taken monetary allowances - pocket money to the young girls of the family.

However, the more popular Harela is the one that is celebrated in the month of Shravan to commemorate the wedding of Lord Shiva and Parvati and to welcome the rainy season and the new harvest. On this day people make Dikaras* or clay statues of Gauri, Maheshwar, Ganesh etc. and worship them. Even the overworked bullocks are given a rest on the occasion of Harela. People put the blades of freshly cut Harela on their heads and send them to their relatives and friends as well.

*Dikars - Small idols of gods and goddesses are made out of clay/red-soil. These idols are decorated with different colours. They are called Dikars.

5. Olgia (Ghee Sankranti): Olgia is celebrated on the first day of Bhado (middle of August), when the harvest is lush and green, vegetables are in abundance and the milch animals very productive. In ancient times sons-in-law and nephews would give presents to fathers-in-law and maternal uncles, respectively, in order to celebrate Olgia. Today agriculturists and artisans give presents to the owners of their land and purchasers of their tools and receive gifts and money in return. **Binai** (oral harp), **datkhocha** (metallic tooth pick), metal calipers, axes, ghee, vegetables and firewood are some of the presents exchanged on this day. People put ghee on their foreheads and eat ghee and chapatis stuffed with 'urad' dal. It is believed that walnuts sweeten after this festival. This festival, which is a celebration of the produce of the land, is now seldom celebrated.

6. Khatarua: Khatarua is essentially the special festival of pastoral- agricultural society and celebrated on the first day of the month of Ashwin in mid September, and signifies the beginning of the autumn. On this day people light bonfires, around which children dance, holding aloft colourful flags. People take special care of their animals and feed them fresh grass. Cucumbers are offered to the fire of Khatarua, which is said to destroy all evil influences. The victory of the king of Kumaon is also said to be one of the reasons for the celebration of Khatarua.

7. Bat Savitri: This festival is celebrated on the Krishna amavasya (last day of the dark half of the month) of Jyestha and on the day married women worship Savitri and the Bat or banyan tree (*Ficus benghalensis*) and pray for the well being of their spouses. Women observe fast in honour of Savitri and Satyavan and remember how Savitri through her intense devotion saved her husband from the claws of death.

8. Ganga Dusshera or Dasar: Ganga Dusshera is celebrated on the Shukla dasami of the Jyestha (May - June). The sacred Ganga is worshipped on this day and Dusshera posters (dwarpatras or dasars), which have various geometric designs on them, are put up on the doors of houses and temples. These posters, once hand written by Brahmins, are now printed. On this day people bathe in the holy rivers.

9. Janeau Punyu: The people of Kumaon celebrate Raksha Bandhan and Janeau punyu, the day on which people change their janeau (sacred thread). On this day the famous Bagwal fair is held at Devidhura in district Champawat.

10. Nanda Devi Raj Jat Yatra: The three week long Nandadevi Rajjaat is one of the world famous festivals of Uttarakhand. People from entire Garhwal-Kumaon as well as other parts of India and the world participate in Nandadevi Raj Jat Yatra.

Godess Nanda Devi is worshipped at dozens of places in Kumaon, but the region around Mt. Nanda Devi and its sanctuary, which falls in the districts of Pithoragarh, Almora and Chamoli, is the prime area related to Nanda Devi. In Chamoli Nanda Devi Rajjaat is organized once in 12 years. The jaat starts from Nauti village near Karnprayag and goes upto the heights of Roopkund and Hemkund with

a four horned sheep. After the havan-yagna is over, the sheep is freed with decorated ornaments, food and clothings and the other offerings are discharged. People also celebrate the annual Nanda jaat.

Though in the Johar region there is no tradition of Nanda Rajjaat but the worship, dance and the ritual of collecting Brahmkamals (it is called Kaul Kamphu) is part of Nanda festivals.

11. Chhipla Jaat: Chhiplakot is situated in the heart land of Kali and Gori rivers, south of Panchchuli mountains. The highest point of this mountain - Najurikund (4497m) - is the seat of Chhipla Kedar.

The people of 15 - 20 villages of Dharchula and Gorikhal regions reach Kedardwe and Najurikote every third year (last 2002, next 2005) on Bhado Purnmasi. The principal yatra starts from village Khela near Tawaghat. It goes through thick forests, rocky lands and Bugyals. People go there barefoot even in these days. The dhami burha or bonia (folk priest) finalizes the dates of the jaat. With folk drums, bhankaras (metallic pipe instrument) and neja (the flag of red cloth pieces collected from all the families of the villages) the jaat goes to Barmano, which is 6 km from Khela. On the second day the yatris go through a thick oak forest. After crossing Bunga, Garapani, Mangthil gwar, Ganbhujdhura (the blooming bugyal) comes Brahmkund (18 km). Around 100 people can stay at the udiyar (cave) of Brahmkund. From this point one can have a glimpse of Chaudans region and the peaks of W. Nepal. On the third day the route is on the back of Najurikote, which is full of buggi grass and brahmkamals (*Saussurea obvallata*). At Kedardwe pond sacred dips are taken and the worship is performed. For the night, the yatris have to come back to Brahmkund. On this day one has to trek about 35 km.

On the fourth day after seeing Jyulital and Patojkund the Jaat reaches Bhaiman Kund (16 km). This small lake is like Brahmkund. A night stay is possible in the cave. On the fifth day, one can reach Baram in Gori valley after seeing the

Kanar Devi temple. If some one wants to remain with the jaat, he can come back to Khela and participate in the village fair.

Chhipla Jaat expresses different aspects of human faith. The bare foot journey, worship, bath, collective food, songs and dances and the possession of the body of Bonia by the folk god are the essential parts of Chhipla Jaat.

12. Hill Jatra: The Hilljatra, which is being celebrated in some parts of Pithoragarh district, is essentially the festival of pastoralists and agriculturalists. In the developmental process, the aathon (eighth day of bhado) and Gawra Visarjan also became the part of Hilljatra. The festival, which basically came to the Sor valley from the Sorar (Mahakali) region of West Nepal, was first introduced in Kumaour village. The Jatra was also accepted by the people of Bajethi, another village near Pithoragarh town and with some modifications it was introduced in Kanalichhina and Askot regions as Hiran Chital.

The Hilljatra is related to ropai (the plantation of paddy) and other agricultural and pastoral labours of the rainy season (Hill = mud, Jatra = Jaat). It has also been connected with the victory of the Champawat ruler. There is another story that Kuru, the representative of a Chand King, who went to Sorar (Nepal) to participate in the hilljatra, was able to sacrifice a buffalo with horns covering the neck. The people became happy and wanted to present Kuru a gift.

Kuru thought of introducing this festival in Sor valley and asked for four masks, Lakhiabhoot, Halwaha, two bullocks, and one implement - the Nepali plough. In this way, the hilljatra was introduced in Sor.

In the first part of jatra, worship and the ritual sacrifice of goats is performed, and in the second part, different pastoral and agricultural activities are presented in a dramatic way. The masks are very expressive and this is the most entertaining part of the festival.

In the third and last part, the songs are recited with the performance of circle dance (Chanchari). It continues late into the night. The songs are traditional as well

as new and popular. The hilljatra is a living tradition and all care should be taken to preserve its style in a rapidly changing society.

13. Kandali: In the Chaudans region of Pithoragarh district, a flower - Kandali (*Strobilanthes wallichii*) - blooms once every 12 years (last in 2011) and the people celebrate Kandali festival between the months of August and October. The Chaundas Valley is remote in the Dharchula tehsil of Pithoragarh. It lies between the Kali and the Dhauli rivers. In the week long festival the local people - Shaukas or the Rangs participate with gaiety and enthusiasm in different villages of the region. Some stories are associated with this festival, which express the martial tradition of the Shaukas. In the first story, it is said that by tasting the poisonous flower of the Kandali the only son of a widow died. In the second story, this flower is the symbol of famine and poverty. According to the third and most popular story, the region was once attacked while the menfolk were away for trade. The brave women repelled the enemy, who hid in the Kandali bushes, and they attacked the bushes and destroyed the enemy. The festival commemorates their bravery and the women therefore destroy the plant ceremonially to remind the local people of the incident and to prevent further mishaps.

The festival begins with the worship of a Shiva Linga made of barley and buck wheat flour mixture. Local liquor is traditionally used during this festival. Every household performs it in a decorated corner of the courtyard. People pray for prosperity. The individual pujas are followed by a community feast. Then, the women and men, in their traditional dresses and laden with gold and silver ornaments, assemble around a tree on the sacred ground of the village. Strips of white cloth are tied to the tree and a flag is raised.

A procession is formed behind the flag. The women lead the procession, each armed with a ril (an implement used in compacting carpet on the loom) followed by children and men armed with swords and shields. As they sing and dance their music echoes in the valley. On approaching the blooms, war like tunes are played

and war cries uttered and the women attack the bushes with their rils. The menfolk then come to their aid, and the bushes are hacked with swords. They uproot the bushes and take them back as the spoils of the war. Victory cries are raised and rice grains are again cast towards the sky to honour the deities with the prayer that the people of Chaundas Valley may be ever victorious over enemies. Festivity, dancing and music continue throughout the night.

The enthusiasm and emotion have to be seen to be believed. All the members of the community, even those living elsewhere, return to their village for the event, on the return of the procession to the village an assembly known as the 'Savdhoomo-sabha' is held at which sweetmeats, liquor and fruits are consumed; the deities are again worshipped with flowers. Festivity, dancing and music continue throughout the night.

14. Uttranchali Holi (Kumauni Holi): The uniqueness of the Kumaoni Holi lies in its being a musical affair, whichever may be its form, be it the Baithki Holi, the Khari Holi or the Mahila Holi. The Baithki Holi and Khari Holi are unique in that the songs on which they are based have touch of melody, fun and spiritualism. These songs are essentially based on classical ragas. No wonder then the Baithki Holi is also known as Nirvan Ki Holi.

The Baithki Holi begins from the premises of temples, where Holiyars (the professional singers of Holi songs) as also the people gather to sing songs to the accompaniment of classical music.

Kumaonis are very particular about the time when the songs based on ragas should be sung. For instance, at noon the songs based on Peelu, Bhimpalasi and Sarang ragas are sung while evening is reserved for the songs based on the ragas like Kalyan, Shyamkalyan and Yaman etc.

The Khari Holi is mostly celebrated in the rural areas of Kumaon. The songs of the Khari Holi are sung by the people, who sporting traditional white churidar payajama and kurta, dance in groups to the tune of ethnic musical instruments.

15.5 FOLK DANCES OF UTTRAKHAND

The Culture of Uttarakhand has its roots in past. Among the diverse cultures and traditions of India it is one of the unique culture which can be seen prominently in its various forms of art. Uttarakhand folk dance is not as complex as the classical dance forms but is something which is beautiful to witness. Its a reflection of the deep sited beliefs and traditions of the local people which is performed to express joy & celebrate the arrival of new season.

Barada Nati, Bhotiya Dance, Chancheri, Chhapeli, Choliya Dance, Jagars, Jhora, Langvir Dance, Langvir Nritya, Pandav Nritya, Ramola, Shotiya Tribal Folk Dances, Thali-Jadda and Jhainta are some of the folk dances performed in various occasions in Uttarakhand.

1. Baradi Nati: The Barada Nati folk dance is a popular dance of the Jaunsar Bhawar area of Chakrata Tehsil in Dehradun district. The folk dance is performed on the eve of some religious festivals or on the occasion of some social functions. Both boys and girls take part in the dance dressed in colourful traditional costumes.

2. Bhotiya Dance: The Bhotiya Dance is performed by the Bhotias tribe and is connected with death ceremonies. It is believed by the tribal people that the soul of the dead person resides in the body of a goat or sheep and by dancing this way the soul can be liberated for their next birth.

3. Chancheri: This is a group dance of Danpur Patti region of Bageshwar District in Kumaon. Both men and women dance in a semi-circular formation with gradually increasing pace putting across unbridled joy.

4. Chhapeli: Chhapeli dance is performed by couples with the female carrying a mirror in her left hand and a colored handkerchief in the other. The male plays a Hudukka on his left shoulder accompanied by others playing the Hurka, Manjira and Flute. The dance is a duet that outlines the joys of romance. The woman partner (sometimes also a young boy) dances with a smile and elegant waist movements,

either in admiration of her beauty and charm or mocking her ways of expressing loves.

5. Chholiya Dance - Folk Dances of Kumaon: Dating back to over a thousand years, the Chholiya Dance has its origins in the warring Khasiya Kingdom of Khasdesh, when marriages were performed at the point of the swords. They were united by the Chand kings who arrived on the scene in the 10th century. In Nepal, the word Khasa is still asynonym for Kashatrya, and in Khasdesh, too, they took on the customs of the Rajputs, who were themselves honorary Kashatryas.

Keeping the old tradition alive, the Rajputs dance this at their weddings as a part of the marriage procession itself, led by the male dancers who go on dancing till they reach the bride's house. Performed by the Rajputs with sword and shield in pairs, the drummers are usually Harijans called Dholies, while the Turi and Ransing are played by Bairagis, Jogis or Gosains. The Turi and Ransing are typical Kumaon instruments.

Perfectly synchronized, and marked with jumps and turns of the body, the dancers show several sword-fighting feats. Attired in the material costumes of ancient warriors, the flashing swords and shields, along with the war-like music, huge red flag with various animal symbols stuck on it conveys fear, joy, awe and wonder, through eyes, eyebrows and shoulders, creating at the same time, the impression of group advancing for an attack.

6. Jagars - Folk Dances of Kumaon and Garhwal: Jaggar falls in the category of ghost and spiritual worship, in the form of a folk song or at times combined with dances. Sometimes, Jaggar may also be in the form of Puja folk songs and are sung in .honour of the various gods and goddesses.

7. Jhora - Folk Dances of Kumaon: A community dance, when all barriers of castes are thrown to the winds, except in the village, where the high and lower castes have separate Jhoras, it is danced at fairs to the accompaniment, of singing that grows with the dance. Performed either in the morning or evening, they are danced at

the coming of spring, mostly at fairs, but also to celebrate weddings. From the minimum, number, six, it swells to 200 at times, men and women both joining in. Together they move in a circle, holding each other's arms and slightly bending their bodies forward as they move. On the first beat of the Hurka, the left leg crosses the right, striking the floor with the left foot. On the second beat, the right foot is thrown sideways with a slight jump and little dip and the performers return to their original standing pose, with the bodies swaying slightly to the back. The third and fourth steps are given to the left and right foot respectively. Each step is taken with a slight jump and the accompanying neck and shoulder movements. This completes one cycle. If the circle is big the Hurka players, accompanied by the cymbals and, flute dance inside the circle, singing and playing simultaneously, rending the air joyous with exhilaration. The men and women dancers, themselves provide the singing following the lead of the Hurka player-the women follow the men-the tempo remains the same neither very fast nor very slow.

8. Langvir Dance: This is an energetic dance performed more often than not by men. In Langvir, the dancer climbs a bamboo pole and balances himself at his navel on the top of the pole. Music is given by Dhol and he balances, swivels and almost dances on his belly at the pole, performing other acrobatic stunts.

9. Langvir Nritya: This is an acrobatic dance and is performed by the men folk only. In this dance, a long bamboo pole is fixed at a place. The dancer-acrobat climbs to the top of this pole and then balances himself on his stomach on the top. Under the pole, a band of musicians play the 'Dhol' and 'Damana', while the dancer rotates on the top of the pole, performing other feats with his hands and feet. This dance is popular in the Tehri Garhwal region.

10. Pandav Nritya: The Pandav Nritya, which is related to the story of the Mahabharata, has been very popular, particularly in the Garhwal region. Pandavas Nritya is nothing but a simple narration of the story of the Mahabharata in the form

of dance and music. It is mostly enacted on the occasion of 'Dussehra' and Diwali. Pandavas Nritya is popular in Chamoli district and Pauri Garhwal.

11. Ramola - Folk Dances of Kumaon: The coming of spring is a matter of joy to everyone, in Kumaon it is announced by. Bards who, roaming from place to place, sing of its charms on a sarangi or dholak: "Oh my bee, oh my beloved, spring has surreptitiously crept in. Quickly take to the valley of flowers where we will play 'Phag together."

At the Holi festival, forgetting their worries, the people join in festivity lasting more than a month and hundreds of songs of classical, semi classical, and folk variety are sung by both men and women to the accompaniment of the Harmonium, Tabla, Dholak and Manzira (cymbals).

12. Shotiya Tribal Folk Dances - Folk Lore of Garhwal: Bhotiya tribals have their typical dances like 'Dhurang, and Dhuring' which are connected with death ceremonies. The aim is liberating the soul of the dead person which they believed to have been living in the body of either a goat or other animal. The dance is similar to the pastorals of Himachal Pradesh or the hunting dance of Nagaland.

13. Thali, Jadda, and Jhainta - Folk Dances of Kumaon: While the Thali is a graceful dance of the women, the Jadda and Jhainta are dances in which men and women whirl together with gay abandon. The whole region a kaleidoscope of folk dancing. the Kumaonis, with their powers of endurance, can go on dancing even after a hard day work. A very part of their life, dance and music surge upto fulfils their emotional and social needs, dancing keeping them ever fresh and alive. The Kumaonis prove the old adage. "The tribe which dances does not die."

15.6 SUMMARY

The culture of Uttarakhand cannot be speculated if the lifestyles of the inhabitants are not studied. The tribal communities thriving in Uttarakhand such as Mundar, Khils and Bhutis speak Garhwali and Kumayani languages mostly. They

show a great deal of vigor and enthusiasm in celebrating their Festivals. National festivals like Holi, Diwali, Dussera, Navratri, Chrtstmas are a common matter in this state. However, the state has some indigenous festivals too. The festival Shraavan symbolizes the arrival of Monsoon and Bhitauli festival is celebrates the bond of brother and sister as they exchange gifts among themselves. Olgia festival is feted to mark the rich harvest of crops in Uttarakhand. The festivals of Uttarakhand are a vibrant one as the song and dance performed during the festivals are chore graphed wonderfully. Music flows in the air of Uttarakhand and people have a genetic inclination towards music. The exponents of musical domain of Uttarakhand has created milestones in Indian music and the songs of the state are a unique medley of mesmerizing tunes and heart-touching lyrics. The folk songs of the state have also maintained its richness by offering great tunes. Some of the popular folk songs of Uttarahand are 'Mandals', 'panwaras', somber, 'thadya', 'khuded', and 'jhoda'. The great bash of the festivals of Uttarakhand will make dance with the tunes rather than just tapping your feet. After such frenzy, you can recharge yourself with a high standard of culinary delights of Uttarakhand. The state has developed a forte in making vegetarian food items as you will find tangy dishes like Aalu ka gutke, Paalak Tinri, Kaapa, Gaderi ke gutke etc to tantaize your taste buds.

15.7 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. Write Down a brief note on fairs in Uttrakhand.
2. Write Down a brief note on festivals in Uttrakhand.
3. Write Down a brief note on folk dances in Uttrakhand.
4. Write a note on religious significance of Kumbh Mela.

15.8 REFERENCES

- <http://www.aboututtarakhand.com/Know-Abouts/Folk-Dance/Folk-Dance.html>
- <http://www.eUttarakhand.com/>

Unit-16
Folk Traditions, Art and Craftmanship

Structure:

- 16.1 Introduction
- 16.2 Objective
- 16.3 Communities in Uttarakhand
- 16.4 Art
- 16.5 Handicraft

16.6 Handlooms

16.7 Answer to check your progress

16.8 References

16.1 INTRODUCTION

This unit will introduce you with the culture, craft and folk traditions of Uttarakhand. Uttarakhand, cradled in the lap of the lofty Himalayas, the state boasts of snow-crapled peaks, stealthy glaciers, meandering rivers, mist laden valleys and exotic species of flora and fauna.

Inspired by this flawless natural splendor, the people of Uttarakhand have created and nurtured variour forms of arts and crafts since ages. Crafts usually

utility items like doors, windows, rugs, carpets, baskets, copper utensils or the folk art Aipan made by Uttarakhandis have a unique touch of nature in their designs.

Owing to the stiff competition faced by these arts and the crafts from the modern and cheap machine-made products, the Government of Uttarakhand felt the need to take concrete steps for their revival and promotion in order to prevent this precious creativity from fading away.

With this vision, the Uttarakhand Handloom & Handicraft Development Council (UHHDC) was constituted. UHHDC acts as the apex body for the overall development and promotion of handlooms and handicrafts in the state. It aims at generating sustainable employment opportunities in these sectors by promoting specialized products for commercialization.

16.2 OBJECTIVE:

The main objective of this unit is to make the students familiar with the:

1. Various communities in Uttarakhand
2. Arts
3. Handicraft
4. Handlooms of Uttarakhand

16.3 COMMUNITIES IN UTTARAKHAND

In olden days, the kings used to assign various duties to people who were engaged in their service and they were given designation / name according to their work. Gradually, the job title became their sub-caste and some of them are still prevailing in Uttarakhand. There are some very interesting facts behind it which gives an insight on the working of ancient society and distribution of work in Uttarakhand. Some Titles and assignments are given here –

1. **Patua** - During the rule of King Indra Chand in Kumaon, there was a weaving factory at Champawat. Nannu Patawa was called from the plains who were expert

in the job of making dor, Raksha Dhaga, chareo and knitting ornaments on the cloth / thread. His descendents remained here and they too were known as Patua.

2. **Nai** - Those doing hair were called Nai. Some them are local 'khas' while others are descendent of Sudhana Nai who came to Kali Kumaon during the rule of King Som Chand.

3. **Thathera** - 'Th' se Thathera' we used to read it in initial period of our school days but did not know what is a thathera. Kundan Thathera came to Uttarakhand during the regime of King Baj Bahadur Chand. His descendent were called thathera.

4. **Dhobi** - Those in washing profession. Some of them came from the plane country while others were local who took up this job.

5. **Saun - Agari** - They were labourer working in mines and expert in purifying metals from the ore and making pottery of use. 'Agar Patti' in Ramgarh is famous from them. According to George Elliot, "As written in 'Vayu Purana' some Gandharva were assigned the duty of extracting / excavating the metals from the earth and called Aagneya". It is possible that they became from Aagneya to Agari over a period of time. Later they became one of the rich castes.

6. **Koli** - They used to do weaving and knitting job. These people kept on wandering house to house and place to place, collect the wool and weave / knit cloths for people. After mechanization, they became jobless and took up other professions.

7. **Tamta**- This is deformation of the word "Tamrakat" which means the person who works on copper to make things. These people were engaged in forging of copper for making utensils. They were mainly concentrated in Kharhi patti of Kumaon. According to some articles, their census in the year 1872 was 140 only. Now a days most of them are doing other jobs after acquiring higher education. Still some of them are engaged in their ancestral profession of forging utensils and Vessels for mass cooking.

8. **Orh**-Those who were good in construction of houses were and related activities such as mason, carpenter, and expert in excavating stones and slates were called orh.

9. **Barha** The kings used to offer bali and the place to rear (he) buffaloes was called Barha and the people assigned the job of up keep of barha was also called BARHA.

10. **Tiruwa** Those engaged in making of 'Teer' (arrow) were called Tiruwa.

11. **Lohar** A lot of them are still there engaged in the same profession of making and repairing of iron instruments used in farming and other usage. In olden days, they were given 'Khawa' a part of yield in lieu of making the farming instruments throughout the year. They were also given some land in the village for settlement.

12. **Bhool** - Those who used to extract oil from mustard, til, rai etc. were known as Bhool.

13. **Rudiya** - They were the workers who made 'Dale' (Baskets), most (Mats) Soop etc. with the 'ringal' or 'bamboo'.

14. **Chimadiya** - They were good in making wooden pots and vessels and sold them to the people.

15. **Bakhariya** - They were 'sais' (Horse keeper) of the kings.

16. **Dunna** - One who processes the cotton to make mattresses etc.

17. **Hankiya** - Engaged in making earthen pottery.

18. **Hunakiya** - They used to sing with the music of 'dholak' while there women folks danced to entertain public by visiting house to house. For that they were given food grains and clothing.

16.4 ART

Aipan (A Traditional Art)

During the last two decades many rock paintings belonging to the protohistoric period have been discovered in Kumaon. Among them Lakhu Udiyar and Lwethaap are well known. The Pahari Kalam (style of painting) probably also

developed in Kumaon, when it was being practiced in some of the Himalayan regions. Unfortunately very few examples of this style are available today.

The Aipan (Alpana) is a popular art form of Kumaon, and walls, papers and pieces of cloth are decorated by the drawing of various geometric and other figures belonging to gods, goddesses and objects of nature. Pichhauras or dupattas are also decorated in this manner. At the time of Harela there is a tradition of making clay idols (Dikaras).

'Aepan' or Aipan or Alpana is an art which has a special place in all Kumaoni homes. The word 'Aepan' is a derivative of 'Arpan'. A commonly used word for it is "Likhai" (writing), although it is a pattern made with the fingers. Aepan are used as ritual designs for Pujas, festivals and ceremonies connected with birth, janeu (the sacred thread ceremony), marriage and death.

The raw material used is simple ochre (*Geru*) colour and rice paste. It is mostly women who paint the designs on the floors and walls of their homes using the last three fingers of the right hand. Once the ochre base is ready the artist draws the pattern free hand. Chowkies are made with mango wood and painted with special designs for each occasion. Pattas & Thapas are made directly on the walls or on paper and cloth. Earlier the paint used was made from natural 'dyes. Today, poster and oil paints both are used. We are using the traditional "patterns for cards, wall hangings, cushion covers, table cloths, even T-Shirts. The decorative patterns used to adorn doorways have been adapted for gift tags, bookmarks, clay items, wooden boxes, trays and coasters.

Different forms of Aipans:

1. Saraswati Chowki: - Saraswati being the Goddess of learning, when a child begins formal education a puja is held to give him/her an auspicious start. The main feature of this chowki is a five-pointed star with a swastik flower or a diya in the center. The artist then proceeds to decorate the center piece with flowing designs or floral patterns

2. Chamunda Hast Chowki: - This chowki is made for "havans" or "yagyas". Two triangles interspersed with two diagonal lines running across both, with a 5-pointed star in between, enclosed in a circle make the centre piece of this chowki. The gaps are filled up with floral designs or lakshmi's feet. The circle itself is often decorated with 8 petals of the lotus.

3. Nav Durga Chowki: - Used for ritual Devi pujas. The main points here are nine dots representing the Nav Durgas. Those who are adept in aapan designs make a square enclosing these dots with parallel lines running crisscross and decorate these with lotus petals. A simpler way is to form swastiks with the 9 dots; it is then called Nav Swastik. There are many variations of this. A simpler version is made by drawing three horizontal and vertical lines with a Swastik in the centre.

4. Shiv or Shivarchan Peeth: - Shiv is the reigning God of the people of the Himalayas. He is worshipped specially in the months of Savan or Magh. 28 or 108 Parthiv Lings are placed in a copper thali and Shiv or Shivarchan Peeth is drawn on the ground. This is an eight cornered design with 12 dots joined by 12 lines. To make it more attractive there is an outside border of four plus four corners.

5. The Surya Darshan Chowki: - It is connected with the naming ceremony of a newborn child. For eleven days the baby is kept indoors, on the eleventh day the child is brought outside for Surya Darshan. This chowki is made on the floor where the priest sits reciting mantras.

6. Asan Chowki:- This is associated with the many kinds of chowkis used for various pujas. It is a decorated seat for the devotee and his wife for a ritual puja.

7. Janeyu Chowki: - The chowki is made specially for the sacred thread ceremony. Seven stars within a six-sided drawing form the main section. The seven stars represent the Sapt Rishis. Around this floral designs with dots are drawn.

8. Dhuli Arghya Chowki: - Twilight in India is called "Godhuli Vela" or the time when cows return home from the pastures. The dust which rises from their hooves gives the time its name. For weddings the bridegroom's party also arrives at the

bride's house at this time of evening. In bygone days the bridegroom's entourage usually walked to the bride's place and so they arrived with dusty feet. Since the groom for this period represents "Narayan". God himself, so he is greeted with devotion. His dust covered feet are washed before the puja welcoming him begins. He stands on a "Chowkil, or small stool on which is painted a tree like figure with three branches coming out on the top. It also resembles a pitcher with Shiva's Trishul or Trident on the top. At the base is Bramha the creator and in the middle Vishnu. On two sides of this painting, two parrots are painted and at the bottom the lotus as well as the Swastik. All three denote luck and are good omens.

9. Acharya Chowki: - The groom is always accompanied among others by his own Pandit or Acharya. The Pandit is given more prominence than even the father of the groom. So a special chowki is made for him. A Swastik is made on it with red colour. The lotus and other auspicious symbols such as a bell, a conch shell, and sometimes even 2 parrots are painted around the Swastik.

10. Durga Thapa:- The Durga Thapa is painted on paper by the women of Kumaon for two Durga Pujas held during the year, one in March-April and the other before the festival of Dussehra. The pujas take place for nine days and are therefore caned Navratras.

This Thapa or painting is highly complex. Almost all the gods and goddesses. Besides several local deities are depicted along with the many-armed Durga who rides the lion. Ranking her on the left and right are the family deities of the Thakurs of Kumaon. Kot Kangra Devi and Jwala Devi. She is surrounded by auspicious symbols such as the conch shell, bell, lamp, tulsi, rice, grain and swastika. To her left are the Bhuj Bali gods. Ram and Lakshman. The twin sisters. Anayari and UjyarL representing light and darkness and the goddesses worshipped at the hill temples of Punyagiri and Dunagiri also find representation in this Thapa. On the right side are- the Nav Durgas and the nine headed Chandi Devi, with the temple guards at the bottom of the hierarchy. The topmost row in the painting features the sun,

Ganesh - the elephant-headed god who is the remover of obstacles, Riddhi, Lakshmi the goddess of wealth and her consort, Vishnu. The Preserver in the Hindu Trinity; Brahma, the Creator and Saraswati the goddess of learning; local gods Gola Nath and Bhola Nath on horseback and Bala Barmi. The eight-petalled lotus within a circle is of special importance in a Durga Puja.

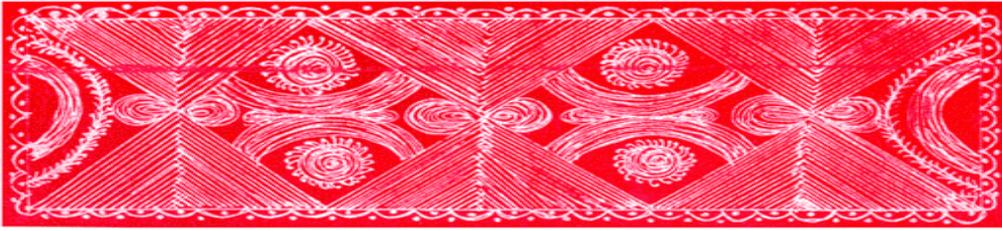
11. Jyoti Patta :- In the hills of Kumaon, among the Brahmin and Sah families there is a practice of drawing a "Jyoonti" at a wedding or a sacred thread ceremony. In earlier times, "Jyoontis" were murals painted on the walls of rooms where religious ceremonies took place. These drawings are now made on paper, hardboard or plywood. Even printed Jyoonti Pattas are available. "Jyoonti" is the local word used for the Jeev Matrikas - Maha Laxmi, Maha Saraswati and Maha Kali. Worship of the Matrikas is an ancient tradition in Kumaon. The Bagnath Temple in Bageshwar has a panel of the Matrikas supposed to date back to the ninth century. The drawing of the "Jyoonti" or Jyoti Patta follows a pattern. The first line depicts the Himalayas because it is the practice to send the first invitation to them. Thereafter there are lines of floral or geometrical designs. One important panel has two lotuses on either side and a tree which symbolizes the mythical Kalpavriksha. Brahma, the Creator, and Vishnu, the Preserver, are said to reside in the roots of the tree, Shiva, the Destroyer, in its trunk and his consort, Parvati, in the topmost part of the tree. Below the tree, two parrots are painted for luck. In the center of the panel are Radha-Krishna or Ganesh and Riddhi' or even the figures of the bride and groom.

The main panel has the three Matrikas attended by Ganesh. On top, are the two circular faces of Anyari Devi and Ujyari Devi, the presiding deities over Light and Darkness. Ranking the central panel is an elaborate design of dots and lines called "Bar Boond". This represents an invocation as well as invitation to the gods to attend the wedding and bless the couple.

12. Lakshmi Yantra: - In the hills of Kumaon as in other parts of India, the goddess of wealth, Lakshmi, is worshipped during the festival of Diwali. Before the idol is placed on the spot where the Puja will take place, the Lakshmi Yantra is drawn on the floor with ochre colour (Geru) and rice paste (Biswar). This is the seat of the goddess. The center point of the Yantra is marked by a dot or flower, which symbolizes the Universe. It is enclosed in two triangles, which form a star with six points. The upper triangle represents Shiva and the lower one, Shakti. The triangle is encircled with six or eight lotuses. There can also be an outer circle of sixteen lotuses. The lotuses represent the moon, stars, the home and wealth. There are usually other circular designs around the centerpiece. The circles are surrounded by lines on four sides signifying "doors" is called "Bhupur". They symbolize the Earth. The entire painting is adorned at various points with Lakshmi's footprints.

Below the Yantra are depicted two puja "asanas" or seats for the couple who perform the puja. Alternatively, these seats could be meant for the head of the household and the priest who conducts the ceremony. In most Kumaoni households instead of a clay or metal statue of Lakshmi, sugarcane is cut and placed crosswise. Traditional feminine attire like a lahanga (long skirt) and Odhni (shaw!) adorn the sugarcane to make it look like a female form. Thus is the sweetness of life invited with ritual precision to preside over a household.





16.5 HANDICRAFT

1. **Ringaal Craft:** Ringaal or dwarf bamboos have been traditionally harvested from oak forests in Uttarakhand on a subsistence basis. It varies according to the altitude at which it grows. Local craftsmen fabricate it into a number of useful household products including, mats (chettai), a variety of baskets for carrying biomass, storing household goods, apart from religious purposes.



Region:

The ghad Ringaal or kathin Ringaal from which baskets are generally made grows in the lower altitudes (3000-5000 feet) in both Kumaon and Garhwal. The finer dev Ringaal which splits cleanly is found at higher altitudes in Kumaon.

Farmers fetch the Ringaal from the forest in October to November and weave baskets in the winter when there is not much work in the fields.

Community:

It is a male-dominated activity mainly undertaken by Doms, the schedule caste members of the community.

Materials:

Bamboo

Tools:

1. Khurpi- Knife
2. Mallet
3. Lamp

Process:

1. The pithy stalk is flattened. The outer skin is made into splits and interlaced into carrying baskets, containers, mats and winnows.
2. The warp splits are beaten to remove the pith and flatten them. The ribs are only partially cleaned.
3. The weave has spokes and grows spirally, strengthened at the base and rim with extra weft twined weave called tyal. The tyal splits face outwards accentuating the difference in weave with textural contrasts.
4. Some baskets are ornamented with complex weaves and open weaves.
5. Dvaks are made from two baskets fitted into each other, the finer one inside, and bound at the rim with reeds.
6. Winnows are woven in a close weave twill pattern.
7. Mats are made by weaving spliced Ringaal in a basket weave pattern.
8. Some baskets are ornamented with complex weaves and open weaves.
9. Ornamentation by way of colour is done using splits blackened by pine bark smoke which being heavy in oil, gives off a shine as well.

Products:

1. Tokri- Grain measures
2. Doka- Large baskets
3. Dalia- Shallow baskets
4. Puthuka-Grain baskets
5. Dvak-double walled baskets
6. Suppa- Winnows
7. Jhoola- Cradles
8. Mats
9. Chairs
10. Dustbins
11. Lampshades

Challenges:

Currently there is no preservation for Ringaal. Drying is also unplanned and is dependent on how long supplies from the forest last. Consumption is not timely since Ringaal is not the only means of livelihood. Because of these reasons, there is a threat to the survival of the craft.

Research studies have shown that that sustainable extraction of Ringaal on a large scale may not be feasible. While conversion of existing subsistence skills into a commercial economic activity is desirable, the pace of this conversion is being controlled. For this, captive bamboo plantations are being developed to sustain the activity.

2. Rambaan Handicrafts: Adding a new look to the traditional crafts made from jute and hemp, the Rambaans crafts have created good market demand in a surprisingly short period. As many as 300 species of Rambanns plants generally known as sisal are found in abundance all over these hills. Some of these species yield fibers, which

can be used to weave various decorative and utility items like bags, purses, wall hangings and show pieces.

3. Copperwares: Copper is deeply integrated with the Himalayan Culture from as old a period as the 12th century, when a number of craftsmen from the plains migrated and came here. The art of copperware, which took birth then, has kept evolving with time. The coppersmiths make gagars or copper pots, water tillers, drinking glasses, musical instruments, masks and other utility items used in houses and temples.

4. Wooden Crafts: Exquisite woodwork has been the specialty of Uttarakhand since times immemorial. Abundance of timber, the suitable temperature for insulation of wood, availability of local, skilled labour, prevalence of family tradition has contributed to the growth of this craft in this region.

Historical evidences also support the presence of intricate wooden carvings in Uttarkahnd. Entire woodworks of 'chaukhats' and 'tibaaris' found here are now on display in the National Museum of Delhi. Some of the carvings in the Gunjyal village are as old as 600 years.

Utility and decorative items like walking sticks, animalfigures, miniature models of famous temples, idolsof Gods etc made by Uttarkhand craftsmen have acquired special place. Apart from that products made of driftwood and pine bark carvings are some other beautiful pieces produced by these craftsmen.

5. Wax Work: Candles not only illuminate your houses, they light up your hart as well. Decotrative candles in beautiful shapes and sizes have emerged as the most popular souvenirs of Nainital. Although ordinary candles have always existed as a cottage industry, decorative candles from Naintal started showing up in the marker in the early 70's. Encouraged by the warm response shown by the market, the started producing new designs as per the market preferences.

6. Handlooms: Handloom products industry in Uttarakhand can be divided into following main categories;

1. Woolen handlooms
2. Cotton handlooms
3. Silk, natural fibers and combinations

1. Woolen Handloom: Uttarakhand is in the north temperate region and has the advantage of producing apparel grade wool, the finest of all wool grades. A large section of population is involved in sheep rearing and production of wool especially in the border areas of the state.

Wool and woodwork is a traditional skill in this mountainous region. Uttarakhand Sheep and Wool Development board has been constituted to integrate various activities right from breed improvement, health and veterinary care of sheep, availability of better rams, proper shearing of wool, washing, grading and training of rearers / wool / producers.

Wool banks have been set up by the Khadi and Village Industries Board to provide all kinds of wool varieties required for the production of variety of products. KVIB is also encouraging hand spinning with efficient charkhas in homes, and buyers who are looking for actual handmade woolen products can find these in Uttarakhand. Harsil, Belchi, Merino are the main varieties of wool produced locally.

Pashmina: Pasham is very soft, light, short fiber wool obtained from goat or yak in very cold regions. The products made with this wool are very warm. Tibet is the main source of this wool.

Angora: Angora rabbit wool is a high value commodity, which in respect of fineness and warmth is much superior to sheep wool.

Angora rabbitry has been taken up in the districts of Uttarkashi, Chamoli and Pithoragarh, Tehri Garhwal and Bageshwar. UNDP project through DARL, Pithoragarh and a project under Swarnajyanti Gramin Swarajgar Yojna through

HIFIED, Ranichauri, Tehri Garhwal have generated interest and availability of Angora wool.

Continuous research and development has brought out a wide range of products and designs. These products have received tremendous response in national in national and international trade exhibitions.

A diverse variety of woolen products are made in the slate, like shawls, both for ladies and gents, Pankhi (unique gents shawl), Tweed (cloth for coats), Mufler and caps. Thulma and Chtka are very special products for cold climates

2. Cotton Handloom: Traditional weavers producing cotton handlooms are located in many villages and localities in District Udhamasinghnagar, Hardwar and Dehradun. Some important clusters are Kashipur, Jaspur, Mahuadabra (US Nagar), Rampur, Kalsi (Dehradun), Imlikhera (Hardwar) Khateema (Champawat). 26 weavers cooperative societies have been covered under Deendayal Hathkargha Yojna and with modernization, new designs, better quality control, and variety of competitive and attractive products are being produced. Government Design Centre, Kashipur has been strengthened to provide training, designs and latest technologies to weavers in the state. CAD facility, modern looms, equipments are available in this centre. Bed sheets, Rajai covers, curtains, surgical cloth (Patti), durries, Asan, handloom cloth, table cloth, dusters etc.

3. Silk Handlooms: Uttarakhand has unique environmental conditions for producing all types of silk. Mulberry silk in terai and plain areas and Tassar silk in hill areas. While the oak Tassar of Uttarakhand is unique, the mulberry silk produced is of superior quality. Tassar silk is a high value silk, increasing their household incomes and providing an incentive to conserve local biodiversity.

Concerted efforts in product development in silk based items have been very successful and a variety of silk and combination products are now available, like shawls, stoles, dress material etc.

Natural Fibres: Uttranchal produces more than 40 varieties of natural fibers. These fibers are amenable to work on handlooms. These fibers alone and more so in combination with cotton, silk and wool, have presented unique opportunities to the artisans, weavers, designers and researchers for developing a new and innovative range of products.

Uttarakhand Bamboo and Fiber Development Board is working in this area and a national level institute for research and development has been proposed by the board to be set up in Uttarakhand with the help of DC (Handicraft) and DC (Handlooms).

16.7 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. Write a brief note on the various forms of AIPAN.
2. Write down a brief note on Handicraft items that are produced in Uttrakhand.
3. Write down the brief note on:
 - a. Woolen Handloom
 - b. Cotton Handloom
 - c. Silk Handloom
4. Write down a brief note on UHHDC

16.8 REFERENCES:

- <http://uttarakhandcrafts.com/handicraft.htm>
- <http://www.Uttarakhand.org.uk/aipan.php>
- <http://www.eUttarakhand.com/culture/kumaon/aipan.php>
- <http://www.atindia.org/Ringaal.htm>

Block-5
Organizational and planning perspectives

Unit-17

State Department of Tourism - Organisation, Policies and Performance

Structure:

- 17.1 Introduction
- 17.2 Objectives
- 17.3 Uttarakhand tourism policies and performance
 - 17.3.1 The short term policy
 - 17.3.2 The medium term policy
 - 17.3.3 The long term policy
- 17.4 The Structure Plan:
- 17.5 Physical and Tourism Infrastructure:
- 17.6 Physical Infrastructure Strategy
- 17.7 Transport Infrastructure
- 17.8 Tourism Infrastructure Strategy
- 17.9 Environment and Eco-tourism Development
- 17.10 Marketing
- 17.11 Institutional/Organisational Issues and Recommendations
- 17.12 Answer to check your progress
- 17.13 References

17.1 INTRODUCTION:

In this unit you will learn about the various tourism policies of the Indian Government. The tourism policy presented in this unit is not merely a policy statement. It is an attempt to analyse the tourism potential and strength of Uttarakhand along with the weaknesses and challenges which lie ahead. On the basis of this analysis, a road map for the development of tourism in the state has been drawn up. Actionable objectives has been set and contours of an action plan have been delineated in order to reach the milestones and achieve specific targets, while indicating the areas of opportunity for participation of the private sector and the tourism industry and trade.

In this process, an effort has also been made to bring out the manifold tourism attractions, which, in close operation with the private sector and all those associated with the tourism industry, both in India as well as abroad, could make Uttarakhand a prime tourism destination globally. Lying in the north of the vast and bountiful expanse of India, and cradled in the awesome beauty and calm serenity of the stately Himalayas, Uttarakhand, the Devbhumi (Land of Gods) has attracted tourists and pilgrims from world over since time immemorial. Sacred pilgrimage of various religions including Hardwar and Char Dham or the four Hindu pilgrimage destinations of Shri Badrinath, Kedarnath, Gangotri and Yamunotri; the sacred sikh pilgrimages of Hemkund Sahib, Nanakmatta, and Meetha Reetha Sahib; and Piran Kaliyar have drawn pilgrims and seekers after spiritual fulfillment to Uttarakhand since ancient times. The rich cultural traditions, the rare natural beauty and the cool and the invigorating climate of this land of origin of the Holy Ganga and Yamuna rivers have been its main attractions.

The unlimited tourism potential of Uttarakhand has, however, not been fully realized in the absence of a planned and coordinated strategy of tourism development. Inadequate capital investment in tourism infrastructure and limited private sector participation have been substantial responsible for this.

17.2 OBJECTIVES OF FRAMING TOURISM POLICIES

The formulation of an Integrated Tourism Development Strategy for Uttarakhand has the fundamental purpose which is as follows:

1. To assist the government in planning tourism coherently and wisely into the future by clearly identifying the role of the public and private sectors in tourism.
2. To analyze the resources, opportunities, priorities, needs and constraints that has been identified.
3. To place Uttarakhand on the tourist map of the world as one of the leading tourist destinations, and to make the State synonymous with tourism.
4. To develop the manifold tourism related resources of the State in an eco-friendly manner, with the active participation of the private sector and the local host communities.
5. To develop tourism as a major source of employment and income/revenue generation and a pivot of the economic and social development in the state.

17.3 UTTARAKHAND TORISM POLICIES & PERFORMANCE:

Tourism development policies of Uttarakhand are divided into three phases -

17.3.1 The Short term Strategy

17.3.2 The Medium Term Strategy

17.3.3 The Long Term Strategy

17.3.1 The Short term Policy, 2008 - 2012: Focus: "Consolidation - Planning - Awareness Creation"

A. **Consolidation:** This consists of strengthening which destinations and products are good and well managed, and improving or closing what is bad, does not meet demand, and is poorly managed or un-sustainable in terms of environmental, socio economic or socio cultural impact.

B. **Planning:** This concerns carrying out detailed planning of the various sectors of the tourism industry in preparation of future tourism destinations and products

in the 7 zones based on existing natural and/or man made resources, or improvement of existing facilities and activities.

C. Awareness Creation: This involves promoting understanding and appreciation among domestic and international tourism markets of what is on going in terms of improvement of existing products, the creation of new tourism destinations and products in Uttarakhand, and the promotion of new, special interest tourism segments. Furthermore it is to make the local industry and general population in urban areas and villages alike understand what tourism can offer of in terms of new opportunities, what skills are necessary to develop, and what obligations are required to be a part of an effective tourism system.

17.3.2 The Medium Term Policy, 2013 - 2017: Focus: "Development - Improvement - Domestic /Special Segment Marketing".

A. Development: This will see the implementing of plans for new destinations and products, which will have been prepared during the first 5 years, with the purpose of adding value to tourism in the state. It will also implement the improvements to the tourism infrastructure in general, including accessibility and connectivity of new tourism products and facilities and the improvement of utilities in the 7 zones in particular.

B. Improvement: The further improvement and adding of quality to existing products, services and infrastructure, as well as implementing measures for the improvement of the tourism system's institutional framework in general, and an integrated and consistent approach towards development control in particular, will be the focus here.

C. Domestic / Special Segment Marketing: This will involve the undertaking of intensive domestic marketing campaigns and simultaneous, focused international marketing towards selected special interest tourism segments by utilizing various marketing channels and media with a global coverage.

17.3.3 The Long Term Policy, 2018 - 2022: Focus: "Operation - Expansion - Maintenance -Intensive Marketing"

A. Operation: This will offer a wide range of good quality tourism facilities at different standards to satisfy all market segments and provide good services and value for money from 0 to 5 stars. Furthermore it will carry out efficient and competent management of tourism facilities as well as the manmade and natural environments of tourism destinations in both urban and rural areas.

B. Expansion: This will involve the growth of market share both domestically and internationally as a consequence of being able to offer easy access and a diverse variety of good service, high quality products and destinations in all 7 tourism zones.

C. Maintenance: It will be necessary to maintain, improve and extend the products, facilities and services that have been developed and to sustain consistency in general skills and service levels within all sectors of the tourism industry.

D. Intensive Marketing: This will be carried out for both domestic and international markets, covering all market segments where Uttarakhand has something to offer. Strong emphasis should be on the unique selling points of the state and the 7 zones. Particular focus will be on eco, nature, adventure and cultural tourism and the synergy of these segments with high quality leisure and wellness facilities based on a "rough it out - learn something - and indulge" philosophy.

17.4 The Structure Plan

The Structure Plan provides a strategic spatial framework for implementing the above strategies. The core of the plan is:

1. The designation and planning of the 7 tourism zones, in terms of their diverse natural and man made resources, existing and future tourism destinations and products.
2. Future improvement in the accessibility by road, rail and air to Uttarakhand from other parts of India and abroad.

3. The future connectivity between the 7 tourism zones in the state, the main urban centres (i.e. the gateways) and the main tourism destinations and products.
4. The geographical division of the state into:
 - A. The Greater Himalayas and Glacier Belt in the northeast
 - B. The Middle Himalayas and Forest Belt in the centre with spectacular views northeast towards the snow clad peaks.
 - C. The Plain, Forest and Wildlife Belt in the southwest
5. The designation of priority areas for upgrading and development of tourism products.

17.5 Physical and Tourism Infrastructure:

Extensive research has been conducted with regard to infrastructure and the findings are described in table below. Uttarakhand has a mostly mountainous terrain and infrastructure, notably transport poses great challenges. Regardless of this, major deficiencies have been observed and considerable investments are needed to bring infrastructure to an acceptable level. The table below summarises these findings.

Infrastructure	Component	Service Quality
TRANSPORT	Expressways	Does not exist
	National and State Highways	Major deficiencies.
	District Roads	Major deficiencies
	Village Roads / LVR	Major deficiencies
	Major Streets	Major deficiencies
	Trails	Adequate to good
	Urban Walkways	Major deficiencies
	Pedestrian Bridges and River Crossings	Poor to good

	Heavy Rail	Major deficiencies
	Light Rail	Does not exist
	Cable Cars and Ropeways	Good
	Ski Lifts	Good
	River Navigation	Does not exist
	Lake Navigation	Does not exist
	International Flights	Does not exist
	Domestic Flights	Very limited
	Helicopter Services	Good
	Intercity Public Transport	Low to average
	Urban Public Transport	Major Deficiencies
	ENERGY	Electricity Supply
Gas (Town Gas, LNG, CNG)		Does not exist
Solar Energy (Photovoltaic)		Does not exist
Solar Water heating		Does not exist
Wind Energy		Does not exist
Micro Hydropower		Does not exist
Bio Gas		Does not exist
Communications	Mobile Phone	Average
	Fixed Line Network	Average
	Internet	Major Deficiencies
Water Supply	Fresh Water	Average to good
	Industrial Water	Does not exist
Waste Management	Waste Water Disposal and Treatment	Major Deficiencies
	Solid Waste	Major Deficiencies
Emergency Services	Rescue	Major Deficiencies
	Disaster Management	Major Deficiencies

A general observation concerning infrastructure is that there seems to be little to no communication and coordination between the different stakeholders and other departments.

It is important to achieve a high degree of interdepartmental coordination to prevent infrastructure projects from negatively impacting tourism by spoiling the scenery of preventing other projects. An example here is a new power line near Pithoragarh that now renders the town's premier hang-gliding location inoperable.

1. Tourist Accommodation: More than 70% of all bed space is in Dharamshalas, mainly concentrated in Haridwar and Rishikesh. There are about 53,900 beds in Hotels, Guesthouses and Lodges and 131,500 beds in Dharamshalas. The total number of beds in Uttarakhand is 185,400. *The following main observations have been made:*

- A. Most hotels are small, averaging only 18 rooms per establishment.
- B. There are only a few high-quality establishments; the majority of accommodation on offer consists of mid-range to low-end guesthouses and small hotels.
- C. Ashrams provide a large proportion of available accommodation in form of dormitories.
- D. The bed to room ratio is considered high with an average of 2.2 beds per room for hotels and 2.6 for guest houses.
- E. The vast majority of hotels have no government approval

17.6 Physical Infrastructure Strategy

Key Objectives of the Infrastructure Strategy

1. Provide incentives to use tourism related infrastructure demands to enhance services for the resident population, local business and for the protection of the environment.
2. Implement a “dual-use strategy” where all new infrastructure projects are designed in a way that gives benefits to both tourists and residents.
3. Avoid tourist infrastructure projects that create a burden to local taxpayers and businesses or drain government budgets for questionable returns. Every project must undergo a rigorous cost-benefit analysis at every planning stage.
4. Strengthen existing infrastructure and create sustainable solutions, especially for transport infrastructure.
5. Ensure adequate capacity building is available for proper maintenance of the physical infrastructure.
6. Ensure budgets for new infrastructure include adequate funds for maintenance and upkeep.

17.7 Transport Infrastructure

Transport infrastructure is the cornerstone for a successful tourism development in Uttarakhand. The state has all the ingredients needed for a first class destination except the means of getting visitors into the state and around within. Building transport infrastructure in a steep mountainous terrain with a difficult geology can cripple even the budget of a wealthy nation and care has been taken to identify the most beneficial projects and the most pressing needs.

These core transport projects are grouped into short, medium and long-term projects

Strategic Projects concern the following key areas:

1. Access to Uttarakhand by rail and road
2. East-west connections within the state to connect the three domestic airports, to provide a scenic drive in the centre and to provide a fast connection in the south

3. Preparation of local transport master plans to prepare towns where increases in traffic can be expected due to proposed or committed infrastructure projects.
4. There are no further recommendations for air transport since the current master plan is seen as adequate and air transport services have yet to commence.

A. The Short term Strategy (2007 - 2012): The short-term strategy concerns issues that must be addressed immediately to enhance the tourism prospects of Uttarakhand, to alleviate serious infrastructure problems or to mitigate effects of projects that are being executed at the moment.

1. **Road Access to Uttarakhand:** A Delhi - Haridwar - Dehradun Motorway should be planned.
2. **Railway Access to Uttarakhand:** The Delhi - Haridwar - Rishikesh / Delhi-Haridwar-Dehradun Rail line needs to be upgraded and electrified.
3. **Integrated Traffic Management Plan for Dehradun:** Dehradun and Environs must be planned comprehensively to allow new development to contribute to the beautification of the city, to guide growth and to enhance the quality of the built environment.
4. **Integrated Traffic Management Plan for Gangotri:** Gangotri, located at the end of the driveable section of the Bhagirathi valley has no through traffic and entire town is pedestrianised. However, there are still problems: Parking is inadequate and turning, passenger drop-off and delivery of goods clog up the road end.
5. **Railway Line to Kathgodam:** The rail line to Kathgodam suffers from the same deficiencies as the one reaching Dehradun. This railway could provide an important link to Delhi for visitors on their way to either Corbett National Park or Nainital.
6. **Integrated Traffic Management Plan for Pantnagar, Kathgodam and Nainital:** This area is a major gateway for tourists to Kumaon and must be planned

comprehensively and holistically to connect the hubs at Kathgodam (rail) and Pantnagar (air) with the road network to the higher reaches of Kumaon.

Further Efforts will have to be put into the following areas as part of the short-term strategy:

1. Long Distance Public Transport provision and management
2. Air Traffic planning beyond airport provision
3. Urban Public Transport
4. Road maintenance Schemes and work plans
5. Travel time predictability
6. Road Safety

B. The Medium Term Strategy (2013 - 2017):

1. **Road Access to Uttarakhand:** A second motorway to Uttarakhand should be planned between Delhi and Pantnagar / Kathgodam.
2. **Southern East-West Connection:** Together and in coordination with the second Delhi expressway, a fast road connection should be built along the southern state border connecting Kathgodam, Pantnagar, Haridwar and Dehradun.
3. **Integrated Traffic Management Plan for Chinyalisaur:** A domestic airport is planned for this town. The airport, a further increase in expected through traffic and the establishment of Tehri Lake as a water sports entertainment hub necessitates an integrated traffic management plan for this area.
4. **Upper East-West Connection:** The three domestic Airports should be connected by an all year/ all-weather road to provide for an east-west connection across Uttarakhand.
5. **Integrated Traffic Management Plan for Rudraprayag:** Transport between Rudraprayag, Gauchar and roads towards Auli and Badrinath need to be holistically planned.

6. **Integrated Traffic Management Plan for Pithoragarh and Tanakpur:** This is a large area, spanning several districts but still should be covered by one transport management study.

7. **Road works:** Road improvements throughout the state can be attempted in this phase. Some roads are still only 1½ lane wide and should be widened to 2 lanes.

3. The Long Term Strategy (2018 - 2022):

1. **Central East-West Connection:** The last of the three recommended east-west connections comprises the central one that serves primarily as a scenic drive for tourists.

2. **Upgrade the remaining Railway lines:** The rail connections to Kotdwar, Tanakpur and Ramnagar should be modernised based on transport and tourism demands at a later stage.

Solid Waste / Wastewater, energy supply, emergency services and environmental protection are infrastructure components that are difficult to resolve within a tourism strategy.

However, tourism can contribute on a small scale to alleviate some of the most pressing problems: Legislation could be put in place to force new hotel developments to provide for proper sewage treatment. This could be widened through grants and incentives to also treat the wastewater of adjacent villages.

This methodology was developed and applied by the European Union's EUTOU (Environmental Upgrading through Tourism) programmes. Channels should be established where infrastructure providers and the tourism sector can Communicate to identify deficiencies and conflicts.

17.8 TOURISM INFRASTRUCTURE STRATEGY

Tourism infrastructure, notable accommodation needs to grow with the attractions on offer and must be aligned with the goals and objectives set out in the overall strategy, sector strategies and marketing/promotion efforts.

A. The Short term Strategy (2007 - 2012): Institutional and administrative measures have to be taken to organise and facilitate the hotel sector in the state. These should include the following:

1. Create a database and registration mechanism for all accommodation by type to allow the authorities to gain insight in what kind of accommodation is available, their occupancy rates, price levels, etc.
2. In coordination with the private sector, notably the hotel associations create a code of conduct for each type of accommodation.
3. Liaise with the private sector to prepare promotion materials as suggested by the marketing Strategy.
4. Research if a particular type of accommodation should be established, find out why it is not available and discuss with the hotel association how to resolve this issue.

B. THE MEDIUM TERM STRATEGY (2013 - 2017):

1. Implementation of codes of conduct established earlier and fine-tuning of codes, laws and regulations to match the fact on the ground.
2. Government incentives, land sales or auctions to steer the private sector into investing in areas earmarked for development by the tourism structure plan and subsequent Tourism Action Plans.
3. Publication of all plans, infrastructure works programmes, changes in laws and regulations, etc. to allow the private sector to be able to plan accordingly and to not give unfair advantage to investors that manage to get hold of such information.

C. The Long Term Strategy (2018 - 2022): The long-term strategy very much depends on the success of those implemented within the next 10 years. Concrete goals and

objectives will have to be established as a feedback to the implementation of the earlier strategies.

17.9 ENVIRONMENT AND ECO-TOURISM DEVELOPMENT

1. Issues Affecting the Natural and Built Environment: Consultation with Government officials at state and district level, as well as representatives from various operators and Non-Government Organizations (NGOs), and an intensive field visit to key touristy areas, identified both negative and positive impacts regarding the natural and built environment which give rise to several issues.

2. Quality of the Gateways: The quality of the environment greeting tourists at the major gateways in Uttarakhand is of vital importance in contributing towards:

1. Creating a favourable image of the state to tourists, for example as an introduction to the famed Himalayan environment;
2. providing a point of information to both promote the Himalayan environment and expose tourists to the types of nature tourism activities that can be carried out in the natural areas such as ecotourism;
3. providing accommodation for excursionists who wish to remain within major towns rather than staying in the mountains at night;
4. Encouraging tourists to stay longer in the gateways and spend money in towns where the large concentration of local people lives.

Unfortunately the two major gateways of the state, Nainital and Dehradun fail to maximise and exploit the above due to considerable urban environmental problems, notably:

1. Overcrowded and severe congestion in the centre of towns;
2. Ineffective segregation of pedestrian and vehicular traffic;
3. A generally poor pedestrian environment;
4. Poor maintenance of historical and cultural buildings;

5. Lack of clean, pleasant civic spaces and green spaces, especially at potential scenic areas;
6. Severe littering and poor maintenance of streetscape;
7. Poor provision of signage and lack of visible information centres;
8. Inadequate disposal of solid waste.

A common perception among operators in Nainital is that the types of tourists visiting the town, mostly day or weekenders, are not segments that are high spending or allow promotion of quality tourism. This is manifested by the increasing sprawl of stalls, cheap amusement parks and budget hotels, which do not inspire Nainital to become a more sophisticated tourism gateway town. For this to happen a more desirable urban environment and better interpretation/information facilities are needed.

Meanwhile in Dehradun the central areas around the station and central business areas present the traveller with a very aggressive environment characterised by monotonous and unstructured urban sprawl, over-crowdedness, anarchical traffic and dilapidated buildings. Poor street sanitation, open or poorly maintained sewers and inadequate solid waste disposal compound these problems. Improvement is especially required in:

1. The arrival space near to the station;
2. A central square or civic area in the centre of the city;
3. Commercial streets where shops or services are concentrated.

Therefore the conditions of the Gateways create an unfortunate introduction to a region that is promoted for its heavenly qualities.

3. Eco-tourism Development Strategy: Despite the world renown of the Himalayan mountains and the huge capacity of the natural environment in Uttarakhand to develop tourism based on nature appreciation and interpretation, ecotourism is relatively poorly developed in the state. This is due to a lack of awareness of what ecotourism actually is and poor understanding of its potential to attract higher

spending tourists that can bring significant environmental, conservation, social and economic benefits to all sectors of the society.

4. Key Objectives of the Ecotourism Strategy:

1. To increase awareness of the nature of, and potential for, ecotourism in Uttarakhand among all stakeholders;
1. To strengthen established ecotourism products to make these state-of-the-art attractions;
2. To ensure that the promotion of alternative livelihoods among communities represent an integral part of all ecotourism recommendations;
3. To ensure that ecotourists have opportunity to contribute to the conservation and protection of the environment either directly or indirectly;
4. To focus on specific products which reflect the strengths of the available resources, notably sustainable use of wildlife; specialist ecotourism trekking; specialist wildlife observation; cultural tourism; village-based tourism;
5. To ensure adequate capacity building is available to targeted communities for the management of ecotourism including providing accommodation (including homestay, cooking and hygiene, guiding etc).

Definitions:

The World Ecotourism Summit in Quebec in 2002 organized by the WTO and the United Nations Environmental Programme (UNEP) recognised that ecotourism embraces the principles of sustainable tourism but holds specific characteristics that distinguish it from this wider concept, namely that it:

1. Contributes actively to the conservation of natural and cultural heritage;
2. Includes local and indigenous communities in its planning, development and operation, contributing to their well-being;
3. Interprets the natural and cultural heritage of the destination to visitor;
4. Lends itself better to independent travelers, as well organized tours
5. For small size groups.

Although ecotourism should minimise negative impacts on the natural and socio-cultural environment, it is also a tool to support the protection of natural areas by:

1. Generating clear economic benefits that can make people realise that conservation and care of the environment can be financially rewarding;
2. Providing alternative employment and highre income for local communities;
3. Increasing awareness towards conservation by both locals and tourists.

As ecotourism helps protect and improve the environment (unlike other forms of nature tourism which may in some cases cause harmful impacts) this form of tourism is considered to be most appropriate for Uttarakhand.

5. *Proposed Ecotourism Strategy:* The ecotourism strategy proposed for Uttarakhand comprises the following key actions:

1. Pursue the ecotourism agenda in the national and state tourism policy;
2. Set out priority actions at a spatial level;
3. Identify and develop key ecotourism sectors;
4. Introduce guidelines for community participation in ecotourism;
5. Improve the urban environment
6. Revise regulatory mechanisms to facilitate ecotourism;
7. Establish an effective implementation framework.

A. Pursue any ecotourism agenda in the national tourism policy process and state tourism/ecotourism policies under preparation: As a first step it would be useful for the instigating agency of an ecotourism strategy in Uttarakhand, (preferably the Forest Department given its control over large land resources, its experience in providing quality products in Corbett National Park and its intention to develop ecotourism) to assimilate and review all relevant national, state-wide, regional and local initiatives with a view of documenting policy support, recording best practices, identifying key issues arising and recognising perceived weaknesses at all levels.

B. Setting out priority actions at a spatial leve: The Uttarakhand Tourism Master Plan has devised, through the structure plan, a spatial strategy for tourism development. The ecotourism strategy should therefore be focused on the main targeted areas defined the plan. It is especially important to focus investments that maximise benefits, lay down solid foundations for future growth and has replication value elsewhere in the state. It is recommended that the ecotourism strategy should firstly aim at strengthening the national parks and wildlife sanctuaries within the priority areas designated under the Tourism Structure Plan, with the ultimate aim of turning these into prime ecotourism destinations.

The recommendations for each priority sanctuary/wildlife sanctuary are summarised in the table below.

Priority Ecotourism Actions within Selected National Parks / Wildlife Sanctuaries

National Park / Wildlife Sanctuary	Main Ecotourism Recommendations
Corbett National Park	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Upgrade the interpretation centre at Ramnagar and its setting into a state-of-the art attraction 2. Introduce themed ecotourism home stay and boutique hotels around Corbett to the north and west of the park 3. Increase and improve community involvement in ecotourism in selected villages around Corbett 4. Involve greater stakeholder arrangements between operators and Forest Department to ensure some of the revenue raised from tourism is channelled back into conservation.
Binsar National Park	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Establish State of the Art ‘Edutainment’ Environmental Interpretation Centre 2. Upgrade Government rest house into Five Star Ecolodge/Spa

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Develop Youth Camps and more simple ecolodges in the park 4. Strengthen bird watching and eco-walks through the national park.
Askot Wildlife Sanctuary	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Establishment of Green Shuttle Bus services and traffic controlled access in and through the sanctuary 2. Park and ride facility at Jauljibi 3. Introduction of eco-tax to support conservation projects in sanctuary 4. Planning of stop-over points for ecotourism trails and village visits at selected points in the sanctuary
Gangotri	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ganga River Natural Museum 2. Mountain Wildlife walks

As well as the selection of actions in high priority areas within the national parks and wildlife sanctuaries, priority ecotourism circuits involving several destinations with ecological and cultural interest should also be devised.

These are summarised below.

Bird Watching Circuits

- Sonanadi Important Bird Area (IBA) to Corbett IBA with possible base at Khirsu or Landsdowne.
- Binog IBA - Rajaji IBA - Assan Barrage IBA with base at Derhadun
- Kedarnath IBA - Valley of Flowers IBA - Nanta Devi IBA.

Other Wildlife Circuits

- High mountain wildlife circuit (Govind - Gangotri - Valley of Flowers - Nanda Devi - Askot Sanctuary)
- Bharbar Belt wildlife circuit (Rajaji - Corbett)

Eco-Cultural Tourism Circuits

- Source of the Ganga Circuit (Uttarkashi – Gangotri – Gaumukh)
- Indo-Tibetan circuit of the Goriganga valley, (Madcot – Darkot – rest of corridor between Munsyari and Askot Sanctuary)
- Colonial Cultural Circuit (Almora – Binsar)
- Religious/ancient culture at Jageshwar (Jageshwar area)

C. Identifying and developing key ecotourism sectors:

a) **Bird Watching:** Bird watchers have been identified as comprising the largest group of nature-based tourists in the world. Potential revenue from this ecotourism activity does not emanate purely from the sighting of birds, but from a whole range of ancillary facilities and services that can be developed around bird watching. The value contributed to the economy by birdwatchers in the UK for example, through the purchase of equipment, bird food, membership subscriptions, travel, books and magazines, is well over \$ 400 million a year.

Uttarakhand has a wide range of native and migratory birds, including many exotic species that migrate from Siberia to spend the winter months south of the Himalayas. Over 632 species of birds have been recorded in the state of which the Oriental White-backed and Slender-billed vultures are critically endangered. Furthermore, 13 species are vulnerable and 15 are near threatened.

There are fourteen Important Bird Areas (IBAs) in Uttarakhand. Six of these lie in the national parks. Despite the variety and exotic nature of the birds visiting the West Himalayan region, bird watching is still very much in an embryonic state in Uttarakhand. The overwhelming majority of users have limited interest in and knowledge of birds and there is a low level of interpretation of birds IBAs.

Much needs to be done to develop bird watching as a potentially important ecotourism sector. A series of guidelines on how to do this, transposed into a series of actions, are provided under this ecotourism strategy. These concerns:

- Improving the overall profile of bird watching sites to upgrade their status;

- Raising the level of interpretation at bird watching sites;
- Introducing management plans for each IBA;
- Enhancing awareness of bird watching and conservation among visitors;
- Promoting awareness of, and encourage participation in, bird conservation among surrounding village communities;
- Encouraging responsible tourism at all bird watching sites;
- Marketing IBAs domestically and internationally;
- Integrating various IBAs as part of circuits.

b) *Viewing Other Wildlife:* Other fauna in Uttarakhand include rare and exotic species, which are very attractive to both domestic and international visitors. These include the big cats, which are increasingly endangered throughout the world, and are ever more sought after as an ecotourism attraction. It is recommended that the highly restrictive policy of access to wildlife reserves be revised, so that sustainable levels of tourists may enter these. A prerequisite is that:

- Parks are well managed so that wildlife is not disturbed) and;
- A proportion of revenues from such visits are directed towards conservation.

It is imperative that management of tourism flows is therefore improved and codes of conduct introduced so that the carrying capacity of the parks may be increased.

Management can be improved by increasing ecotourism attractions both inside and outside the reserves; planning new circuits to disperse tourists more evenly and; by improving the transport of tourists around the park (for improving tours and limiting independent travel). Codes could focus on:

- awareness on the relationship between the location and distribution of animals and observers;
- greater awareness of species' behaviour and knowledge of what causes disturbance to individual species;

- awareness of acceptable distances between observers and different species;
- discretion over release of information on rare and protected species' habitat;
- alertness of signs of disturbance and courses of actions to mitigate these;
- making full use of hides to observe and record species;
- minimising impacts from movement (by keeping visitors grouped and vehicles or walking expeditions on track);
- precluding all forms of littering or disturbance to flora;
- getting visitors involved in habitat restoration and protection where possible;
- Making interpretation a key element and continually highlighting the importance of habitat for wildlife.

Interpretation meanwhile should be provided for a combination of natural trails where wildlife can be observed in habitats ranging from the Bharbar belt to the higher Himalayas. Good interpretation should allow feedback and participation among visitors and combine pleasure with education (as in the concept of 'edutainment'). Measures should:

- Bring interest value in the wildlife natural history of the area;
- Clearly show the importance of wildlife in the ecosystem and in conserving the environment;
- Make clear the threats to wildlife in the area, not least from tourism;
- Interpret tracks and traces of animals to visitors if well explained;
- Highlight the work of the conservation agencies at work in the national parks and sanctuary, including the Forest Department and relevant NGOs;
- Use wherever possible technology to display interpretation (such as touch screen facilities) or view wildlife (as through remote viewing systems);
- Display means by which visitors can be involved in the conservation of the area (donations, joining conservation organisations, purchasing souvenirs etc).

With the above measures wildlife trails could then be designated and shown

on simple maps or brochures and marked on the ground through footpaths, and signage.

Identifying and developing key ecotourism sectors: Combining Trekking with Ecotourism: Trekking activities can target two important segments:

1. **Ecotourists:** Those that engage in activities that are environmentally sustainable and have a natural area focus including bird watching; observation of mountain, savannah or forest fauna; wilderness/long distance trekking with a natural focus (for example visits to glaciers or typical high mountain features); valley or forest walks with varying or unique flora such as the primeval oak forests; development of 'day-use' visits to natural features such as mountain waterfalls; and designation of eco-lodges in areas designated for tourism.
2. **Ethical and Responsible Tourists:** those who wish to contribute financially to the environmental sustainability and consideration of destinations and/or help bring real improvements to host populations. Responsible tourism markets are recommended to be a target for the major trekking routes in Uttarakhand.

To turn trekking routes into ecotourism products the following facilities may be considered.

1. **Establishment of interpretation and information centers:** These should be introduced at the beginning of the treks or in the designated gateway towns or villages. At Gangotri an interpretation centre could focus on the Ganga River, highlighting its cultural and ecological role not only along the river's stretch in Uttarakhand. Monies raised from attractions or sales of guidebooks, T-shirts, maps etc should be ploughed back into maintaining and expanding the conservation of the area and fund other worthwhile wildlife conservation efforts.
2. **Information signs and look out points:** These should be planned at designated points along the trek providing ecotourists with further interpretation and advice concerning what to observe on the treks.

3. *Development of ecotourism infrastructure and facilities:* The following facilities should also be considered along trekking routes at selected places.

- Development of eco-lodges, both luxury and basic;
- Hides to observe wildlife;
- Special eco-resorts on specially designated conservation areas;
- Highly selective kayaking or rafting tours with interpretation through trained guides of the rivers' ecology and natural features;
- Nature camps for students to enhance awareness of environmental protection.

4. *Environmental Improvements:* A successful ecotourism strategy needs to go hand in hand with an environmental improvement programme, to display a presentable, safe and attractive environment, especially in those towns designated as gateways to undertaking ecotourism in surrounding natural areas (these notably include Dehradun and Nainital).

Urgent environmental improvements in the urban areas include:

- Covering of open sewers in the urban environment;
- Adhere to controls on dust emissions from construction and vehicle exhausts;
- Proper solid waste disposal, with landfills well screened and regulated;
- Proper sewage treatment of effluents;
- Effective traffic management.

Typical improvements for making urban areas more attractive are recommended as:

- Pedestrianisation and traffic management schemes;
- Creation of piazzas and tourism squares for artistic displays, restaurants and information Centres.
- Greening of urban areas through quality landscaping, provision of shade, reduction of glare and screening of unsightly buildings;
- Creation of quality promenades along river or lake fronts where appropriate;

- Creation of urban fringe and river/lake front parks;
- Reservation of sites outside urban centres for utility services (bus depots, utility services, dump sites, breakers' yards etc);
- Incentives for redevelopment of environmentally unsustainable land uses;
- Proper waste disposal systems to avoid dumping in the natural environment.

5. Introduce Guidelines for Community Participation in Ecotourism: A central feature of the ecotourism strategy is to involve local communities in engaging in tourism. As well as directly involving local people in ecotourism (such as guiding, the employment of villagers as environmental guards) local people should be encouraged to open small businesses for goods and services. A direct link between economic gain and conservation/environmental protection should be established which will reduce conflicts between villagers and the natural environment.

The ecotourism strategy therefore seeks to strengthen the development of community based, village tourism by further developing specific pilot projects in ecotourism in communities near to major nature/ecotourism resources and products. The selection of the villages and the actions to undertake should be based on a logical sequence, which is related to the overall phasing strategy of the master plan. The steps comprise:

(a) Identifying Targeted Villages: Criteria to select and target communities that are most appropriate to participating in ecotourism comprise:

- The extent to which villages come into conflict with wildlife conservation;
- The extent of environmental and socio-economic problems in villages;
- Willingness of local leaders and residents to engage in tourism and conservation;
- The interest value of the village (culturally, environmentally etc) for tourism;

- The number of vulnerable groups in the community that can benefit from alternative livelihood generation.

(b) Identify Suitable Ecotourism Products: The most appropriate and practical tourism business activity for villagers to practice and which also contributes to the wider conservation of the area should be identified.

Activities should ideally:

- Allow sustainable access to the outstanding mountain environment and scenery;
- Provide first hand experience of authentic culture and ways of life;
- Contribute to a 'feel good' among tourists that know that their money spent is contributing to local welfare, environmental improvement and conservation;
- Lead to further eco-cultural tourism activities that can be undertaken by villagers.

Should no ecotourism products be identified, villagers could be employed as guards or guides in surrounding national parks or bird sanctuaries, thus increasing awareness about the positive aspects of conservation.

(c) Define Nature of Physical Infrastructure Required: It is necessary to define, ideally with the co-operation of the villagers, what type of hard infrastructure is required to implement or support ecotourism. The process should include a meeting to be held with local people to discuss the strengths of the village for ecotourism and to gauge their preference for particular activities and the specific needs of the community.

(d) Define Nature of Participation: In a similar vein it is important to define the nature of participation in tourism that the selected local communities can undertake. This can include private tourism businesses employing local people; local individuals selling produce and handicraft to visitors; individuals within a

community setting up their own businesses or communally owned and run enterprises such as cooperatives.

(e) Undertake Training and Awareness: Once products have been identified, and a mode or modes of operation selected Government should be on hand to kick-start and support initiatives through appropriate training programmes wither directly or through appropriate NGOs. It is recommended that four main elements of training should be targeted.

- Environmental Awareness and Interpretation;
- Hygiene and Safety;
- Tourism Management;
- Financial Management.

The objectives of the training programmes, of which some have already been started as described above, will be to provide villagers with basic skills, sufficient to converse with tourists, to show a degree of expertise in the interpretation and management of the environment, install confidence in hygiene and safety and gain know how in tourism and financial management. It is essential that the courses and the trainers are learner friendly and are geared to local people (i.e. they should be fun and easy to understand). Overly academic or elitist forms of training are likely to fail.

(f) Promote and Market Ecotourism Product: The best way for the community to market its services is through the production and distribution of a promotional pamphlet or simple brochure and on the web. These media should outline and describe in detail the types of services available: rafting, guided walks, cooking lessons, angling, and local accommodation etc.

Specifically the brochure would:

- Describe tourist attractions in and around the village;

- Provide cultural and environmental information about the village and surrounding natural areas;
- Provide a simple code of practice for tourists (recommended as a countryside code);
- Demonstrate how revenues from tourism bring social or environmental benefits to the village community;
- Provide contact information (access, booking facilities, contact persons etc).

(g) Long Term Diversification and Strengthening: In the medium to long term other investments to further strengthen the ecotourism products in the selected villages should be developed. These could help develop more sophisticated forms of training or activities in the villages, in line with villagers' aspirations. They could comprise:

- Developing more sophisticated forms of guiding, interpretation or home-stay;
- Initiating food processing for local products such as local vegetables;
- Creating Indian cooking classes for tourists;
- Developing higher value agriculture;
- Helping create a more comprehensive ecotourism product around trekking, mountaineering, and rafting;
- Helping create skills and abilities necessary for intensified participation in upcoming mainstream tourism;
- Introducing more sophisticated information displays;
- Developing a village heritage trail for tourists;
- Planning village home stay or guesthouses for tourists;
- Introducing a village co-operative store;
- Introducing better public toilets and conveniences.

Clustering of Community Based, Village Ecotourism: Clusters are proposed under the Ecotourism Strategy to complement those activities in key areas already

earmarked such as at Jageshwar and be the focus of community-based, village tourism.

Within these clusters, 5 to 10 villages should be designated for ecotourism (or village-based tourism serving ecotourism activities in the wider area).

Implementation Mechanisms: A number of regulatory mechanisms are recommended to facilitate the ecotourism strategy and to ensure compliance to quality products and services.

(i) Facilitating Ecotourism Development in Priority Areas: It is important that ecotourism can develop in selected national parks. This will entail lifting some of the more draconian regulation that restricts all development or access into forest areas. A special zoning of the forest area could be introduced, proposed as: Zones for Preservation and Research where most tourists would be excluded; Quiet Zones where limited ecotourism activities may be undertaken such as specialist eco-lodges or spas, trekking or wildlife trails, and; Zones of More Intensive Use, namely around selected main towns or gateways where interpretation centres and accommodation could be introduced. Mixed Conservation, Recreation and Traditional Livelihood Zones, that are more populated and include villages, hamlets and agricultural land outside the boundary of the national park (such as buffer areas), could also encompass a variety of recreational uses such as trekking, camping, bird watching and other ecotourism activities. These zones would only be designated under special plans, namely Tourism and Environmental and Management Plans (TEMPs) as described below.

(ii) Devising Schemes to Fund Conservation: Initiatives through Tourism Through consultations with the Forest Department, conservation groups, communities and tourists, strategies should be developed and tested for using tourism as a source of funding for conservation. Entrance fees, wildlife viewing fees, tourism concessions and tourist donation funds are examples of revenue generating strategies that have proved successful and could be used. A further measure could

be an eco-tax. A crucial prerequisite for such measures is for transparency, namely to ensure that the funds are well managed to support key conservation objectives and that such management and its results is clearly visible to tourists. An eco tax would allow:

- Government to raise additional revenue to subsidise environmentally friendly modes of travel such as or important projects on environmental improvements (for example solid waste disposal) or conservation;
- Reinforce the image of Uttarakhand as an exclusive natural environment of the highest quality;
- Discourage the large flows of low spending tourists to selected areas where it is desirable to keep visitor numbers low.

(iii) Introducing Certification and Accreditation Systems: A certification system of eco-resorts or mainstream hotels that adhere to sound environmental practices in natural areas should be set up.

Operators would be accredited if they satisfied a certain number of environmental and socially responsible criteria, helping them differentiate from other operators, namely by:

- Contributing to sustainable tourism development of the target areas;
- Contributing to maintaining and enhancing service quality in tourism;
- Limiting energy consumption;
- Limiting water consumption;
- Limiting the production of waste;
- Favouring use of renewable resources and non-hazardous substances;
- Promoting environmental communication and education;
- Recognising community support contributions from tourism businesses.

A separate accreditation system could be applied to ecolodges where these are permitted in a national park of protected forest environment. This would cover:

- A written policy regarding sustaining the environment and local people;
- A description of the contribution made to conservation and / or local people.
- A description of how contributions to conservation and local communities are measured.
- Percentage of local people employed and numbers in management positions.
- Links to local or national/international conservation groups / charities / NGOs;
- Percentage of produce and services sourced locally from the lodge;
- Treatment of waste water and how sustainable fuels are used;
- Level of information and advice provided to tourists on the local environment;
- Number of guides employed from the local community.

A form of eco-labelling (such as a green elephant sign) could be devised and be publicized widely to make it a worthwhile marketing tool for the operator. The certification system could be applied to those areas designated as TEMPs.

(iv) Establishing Tourism and Environmental Management Plans (TEMPS). Sustainable Tourism cannot be developed successfully by one agency or sector alone: it needs to involve a variety of stakeholders that should work in partnership towards a common aim.

One means to balance economic growth, environmental protection and community support through integrated planning is through the setting up of the Tourism and Environmental and Management Plans (TEMPS).

Such plans, which could be initially, applied to priority areas such as the Johar Valley, can become a flagship of good governance and transparency and be replicated to further areas as tourism expands in accordance with the tourism strategy.

TEMPS would involve a range of stakeholders, encompassing Government, private sector, NGOs and the local communities that would all be actively involved in the preparation, monitoring and implementation of the plans. Their purpose would be to increase sustainable tourism flows in specific areas through better co-ordination between agencies, sound environmental management practices and adherence to carrying capacities.

(v) Involve a Range of Stakeholders. TEMPs and sustainable approaches to tourism planning should also embrace international and national actors. At the international level, organisations such as the World Wide Fund for Nature could be involved in the ecotourism strategy.

At national level, policies and organizations contributing to sustainable tourism, such as the Ecotourism in Protected Areas and Territorial Forest Divisions policy area by the Ministry of Environment and Forests should be actively pursued.

At state level, Uttarakhand Tourism Board should set its commitment to adopting a sustainable approach within this present master plan.

At national and regional level there are several organizations that are working at grass route level in the state in relation to conservation, environmental upgrading and social development.

Their work is relevant to the overall concept of sustainable tourism and should be effectively coordinated as through the medium of a TEMP.

(vi) Establish a Permanent Uttarakhand Heritage Trust. It is recommended that a permanent trust be created in order to promote visitor and environmental management and sustainable tourism in Uttarakhand. The trust should aim to protect and enhance the natural and cultural resources of the region and promote a sustainable tourism industry. It should bring together a range of different organizations whose collective goal would be to promote sustainable tourism in partnership with the goals of protecting the environment and enhancing community development. The specific role of the Trust could be to:

- Taking the Uttarakhand Tourism Master Plan as a blueprint, provide strategic direction and implement funding programmes for sustainable tourism;
- Contribute towards the preparation TEMPS for selected areas;
- Promote quality tourism products that contribute to the conservation of the natural biodiversity of the Himalayan environment;
- Promote greater understanding of the special qualities of the natural resource amongst both local people and tourists;
- Initiate research and monitoring programmes on sustainable tourism and visitor and environmental management issues;
- Contribute towards the integrated planning of sustainable tourism;
- Secure and distribute funding to assist the implementation of projects.

The Trust could also commission various on-the-ground initiatives to develop ecotourism, such as:

- Investing in capacity growth of stakeholders through training programmes and skill building (including local communities);
- Creating greater public awareness by using the media.
- Helping customize and delivery training programmes through collaboration with complementary institutions and individuals.
- Implementing ecotourism projects through private sector sponsorship / bilateral funding in collaboration with local organizations and stakeholders.
- Helping create stakeholder associations in the priority areas.

17.10 MARKETING

1. Market conditions and current actions: According to statistics maintained by the Uttarakhand Tourism Development Board, the estimated tourist visits to the State during 2006 were 19.36 million by domestic tourists and 0.1 million by foreign tourists. However, the method used to compile these figure is doubtful and there is

evidence of double counting. Therefore, it is likely that the figure is closer to 9.13 million for domestic tourists and 0.1 million for foreign tourists. The main market is by far the religious market, pilgrims who come to worship at the Char Dhams. However, spirituality and wellness are growing market segments as well as rafting and adventure tourism. Leisure and relaxation tourism mostly enjoyed by the domestic market is becoming important around the lakes of Nainital, the Kumaon hills and valleys as well as the different hill stations (for both domestic and international visitors). The Uttarakhand tourism statistics system is weak. It is absolutely essential that it is strengthened as early as possible if objective tourism development plans are to be developed.

Uttarakhand's main competitors share a major tourism asset, the Himalayas. Nationally these include Himachal Pradesh which offers a similar product to Uttarakhand and where tourism is performing well, attracting twice as many international tourists as its neighbouring State; Kashmir and Jammu which is hampered by a continuing unsettled political situation; and Sikkim and the North Eastern States which are far from the main domestic tourism generating areas and offer a distinct product. Internationally, the main competitor is Nepal which has become synonymous with the Himalayas, in particular with trekking in the mountains, and despite some political setbacks, tourism to the country is now growing at a rapid rate. Other competitors include Tibet which is mostly visited by domestic tourists and Bhutan which pursues a 'high value - low volume' tourism strategy.

Uttarakhand suffers from a recognition problem. This has been exacerbated by the fact that the State has recently changed its name from Uttarakhand so that all previous promotion efforts have lost whatever impact had been built up and most of the collateral material developed under the previous name is now unusable. The logo and slogan is ineffective as the visual depiction of the ideogram is difficult to understand and the tag line of 'Simply Heaven' is too close to tag lines used by other

Indian States like Himachal Pradesh and Kerela. Generally the image of Uttarakhand in the international market is weak and, with the exception of specialist organisations and associations, there is little awareness about the tourism opportunities available in the State.

The marketing division at the UTDB is a very small department with just two part time publicity officers and one of the directors who manages the publicity section. The division is supported by a skeleton staff. District offices are also seriously understaffed. There is a pressing need to create a well-staffed professional marketing department able to carry out all the tasks expected of a Tourism Administration.

There is no guiding marketing strategy which is regularly monitored and adapted. The only direction is provided by the Tourism Policy which was published in 2001. The department has however been actively promoting the destination in the past couple of year and has carried out advertising campaigns both nationally and internationally. For the domestic market, the year was divided into three periods: Summer, Monsoon and Winter. Advertising was taken out in the more upmarket lifestyle magazines and in serious publications such as India Today, Outlook as well as in travel trade publications. Promotion was aimed at different segments of the high-end Indian market according to the time of the year. Internationally, advertising was taken out in several major English-speaking magazines, but also other languages like German, targeting high-end tourists. Two television commercials were commissioned and TV campaigns launched in the European and South East Asian markets. Unfortunately, the department received just two thirds of the budget it required from the Finance Department which resulted in a scattergun approach to advertising; spread across several channels with too few inserts to have any real impact.

2. Medium & Long Term Marketing Strategy / Short Term Promotion Program:

Before embarking on a marketing strategy, it is important that the right team is in

place to implement the strategy and adapt it when and where necessary. The Master Plan recommends the restructuring of the marketing department at UTDB and the establishment of a new division which would report to an independent Board comprising a mix of public and private sector stakeholders and headed by a Chairman from the private sector. The division will be supported by a marketing/advertising agency / agencies to advise on tourism strategy as well as on marketing and promotional activities and it/they will also carry out some of the functions outsourced by the division or in collaboration with the division. The structure of the marketing division will be as follows:

Each department will have specific functions which it will perform in-house or outsource to reliable firms therefore staffing should be kept to just senior executives who will oversee and evaluate the work of contracted agencies and provide them with guidance when necessary.

Uttarakhand has the potential of attracting a variety of markets and these needs to be analysed and their numbers projected over the life span of the Master Plan to the year 2022. According to Ministry of Tourism statistics, Uttarakhand's share of all India's domestic tourists has mostly remained between 4% and 4.5% since 2001. On the other hand the number of foreign tourists to the State accounted for 1.01% of India's total foreign visits in 2001 but by 2006 this had retreated to 0.84%. It is important therefore that the number of tourists to Uttarakhand grows at least at the rate of the expected growth of arrivals to India as a whole, but preferably at a greater rate.

If domestic tourist arrivals to Uttarakhand grow at the current all-India rate of 14.5% for the first 5 years then at the long-term projected growth rate of 13% thereafter, by 2022 - the end of the Master Plan's life span - the number of arrivals will be nearly 69 million, seven and a half times greater than in 2006. Similarly, an increase of foreign tourists at the current rate of 16% until 2011 and 12% thereafter would result in nearly 800,000 foreigners visiting Uttarakhand annually by 2022.

The different market segments that will be targeted in the marketing strategy are analysed in the Master Plan report. Segmentation is applied by geographic location; by tourist type; and by tourism interest. The analysis concludes that pilgrims do not need to be targeted as they will visit the State as a religious duty anyway.

In the short term the most desirable and reachable markets for Uttarakhand are:

- Four main domestic markets: Delhi, Punjab, West Bengal and Gujarat;
- Adventure and sports tourists (especially the lucrative rafters and anglers, as well as trekkers and hikers), health and wellness tourists and ecotourists (particularly bird watchers);
- Awareness of the State will also be created by a sustained marketing campaign in the general Indian media.

In the medium term as facilities develop and access improves, markets that will be targeted include:

- Other high spending domestic markets such as Hyderabad, Pune and Bangalore, especially to encourage long weekend visits as well as the family market in centres such as Mumbai and Chennai.
- The expatriate market living in India
- The Indian Diaspora abroad
- The MICE market

In the long term, the destination will be endowed with excellent facilities, will be easily accessible and will be well promoted in the domestic as well as the international markets. The focus at this stage will be on:

- Consolidating traditional and niche markets and
- Providing the mainstream international market with well-designed products such as extending the traditional and popular 'Golden Triangle' tour (Delhi,

Agra, and Jaipur) to adjoin Mussoorie (with excursions to Haridwar, Rishikesh and Dehradun) and Corbett National Park for wildlife watching with excursions to the Lake District around Nainital and to Binsar for the view of the Himalayas. This would be known as the 'Golden Diamond'.

However, to achieve this it is important to position Uttarakhand so that it stands out in the mind of the potential tourist and to endow the destination was an appropriate tourism brand. A workshop was organised in Dehradun during the Master Plan study to elicit the views of key stakeholders. The participants were provided with a set of instructions and asked to identify the core or primary asset of Uttarakhand which differentiates the destination from other destinations as well as the diversions that support it. The workshop concluded that the source of the sacred Ganges river emerging from the Himalayas was a very powerful image and several attempts at designing a logo was made. This was supported by associated slogans and 'Himalayan Source of Life' was suggested by the participants. However it is recommended that a professional advertising firm is commissioned to develop the Destination Uttarakhand brand and a budget is allocated in the 5-year promotion strategy for this.

A number of marketing tools and techniques are recommended in the Master Plan including PR and sales activities, the choice of appropriate advertising channels and during which period they should be used, the development of collateral material, e-marketing and developing the Uttarakhand online presence as well as establishing different levels of Tourist Information Centres around the State.

A fully costed and detailed 5-year promotion strategy is presented in the main report and includes the following elements: Advertising (media and e-marketing); Trade and consumer promotion activities; Public relations; Sales; Trade fairs; Production and distribution of collaterals

17.11 INSTITUTIONAL / ORGANIZATIONAL, ISSUES AND RECOMMENDATIONS

1. Institutional Issues: There are serious institutional problems affecting the smooth operation and management of the tourism sector in Uttarakhand. These include:

- ***The relationship between the Department of Tourism and the Uttarakhand Tourism Development Board:*** Because of unclear working conditions and recruitment policy just three of the 120 Department of Tourism staff has agreed to be employed as UTDB staff preferring to stay under the Ministry thus protecting certain benefits such as pensions built up over years.
- ***The lack of private sector presence in the State's tourism administration structure:*** The private sector is represented on the board of UTDB but by just 5 members, all of which are based in Delhi. The local tourism private sector should be represented in a large enough number to ensure that its influence is sufficiently strong to affect decisions.
- ***Virtual non-existence of public sector / private sector coordination:*** There is a lack of coordination and dialogue between the different branches of the public sector involved in tourism and indeed between the public sector and the private sector. They do not agree and streamline policies that affect the development of the tourism sector in Uttarakhand or keep each other informed about their activities and plans; and they do not coordinate their marketing effort to achieve economies of scale. The stated guiding principle of 'greater private sector participation' expressed in the Tourism Policy has yet to be achieved.
- ***The Role of Garhwal Mandal Vikas Nigam (GMVN) and the Kumaon Mandal Vikas Nigam (KMVN):*** The private sector generally resents these semi-governmental corporations which operate rest houses and guest house as well as providing tourism services such as package tours and guiding. They compete directly in the market; receive grants for the maintenance of their rest houses which is not available to the rest of the sector; have a network of offices throughout India and in particular in tourist generating areas where they can sell their products directly; and benefit from free promotion and advertising from UTDB marketing.

- ***Other Operational Constraints:*** These include cumbersome procedures, the lack of one stop- shop facilities to help private sector entrepreneurs set up tourism businesses and the difficulty for hotels and restaurants to obtain the liquor licence. These obstacles have deterred several well-known branded chains from establishing hotels in the State. Some stakeholders reported that the lack of entertainment venues and events in Uttarakhand leisure destinations is mostly a result of the State Entertainment Tax.

2. Restructuring Tourism Institutions/Organizations in Uttarakhand:

Recommendations to solve the institutional issues raised in the situation analysis include:

- ***Restructuring the Uttarakhand Tourism Development Board:*** it is recommended that the organisation be structured with six divisions (Marketing; Research and Information; Planning and Development; Legal and Licensing; Tourism Zone Liaison; and HR) as well as an administrative division for internal management and affairs. The UTDB will be directed by a board comprising an equal number of public and private sector members with the top positions shared (i.e. if the Chairman is from the public sector then the Vice-chairman should be from the private sector and if the CEO is from the public sector then the Additional CEO should be from the private sector, and vice versa).

- ***Setting up a State quality assurance system for the sector:*** The Legal and Licensing division at UTDB will administer a grading system for private sector establishments in the tourism sector. This will exist alongside the national grading system to which few firms in Uttarakhand have enlisted. The State system will be more relevant to their situation and their needs. Recommendations are made on applying the methodology to create this and on the mechanism to operate the system.

- ***Establishing Tourism Zone Administration and Marketing Offices:*** Recommendations are made on establishing Tourism Zone Administration and

Marketing Offices in the different zones identified in the spatial framework. Depending on the urban or tourism importance of the location, main offices, sub-offices or kiosks and counters are indicated (i.e. kiosks at airports). Both main offices and sub-offices will be responsible for tourism development and for relations with the local private sector and communities. These will be well staffed and will liaise with the Tourism Zone Liaison Division at UTDB to take instruction and report developments and events

- ***Establishing a Public Sector Interdepartmental Tourism Council:*** Tourism can only be effectively developed if all concerned institutions and agencies collaborate and coordinate their activities. It is therefore recommended that an interdepartmental/interagency Tourism Council be set up at ministerial level to resolve policy concerns that need coordination and collaboration of different agencies or departments.

From this Council a Management Unit should be formed which is empowered to implement the decisions of the Council, can put forward proposals for consideration and investigate areas of common interest. The Council should have a comprehensive meeting every three months which will also be attended by the Management Unit.

- ***Encouraging Public / Private Partnership (PPP):*** A workshop was organized in Dehradun to discuss the best ways of ensuring Public / Private Partnership. Currently the relationship between the public sector and the private sector is very weak and in some instances antagonistic. The point was made that any partnership between government institutions and private enterprises must be on an equal basis. Trade associations should be given importance and members should voice their concerns and recommendations through the associations. Suggestions for PPP to explore were put forward during the workshop including:
 - Development of forest areas as PPP initiatives
 - Development and conservation of heritage properties

- Tourist Information Centres
- Security and medical facilities
- Showcasing Uttarakhand's culture
- The Uttarakhand website (not just reflecting public sector bodies as it does now)
- Training, seminars and tourism awareness
- Involvement of local communities in partnerships

It is therefore recommended that a forum be formed which includes senior members of tourist trade associations, other major stakeholders for instance from tourism training and education, concerned local communities in tourism development areas as well as senior public sector officials. This forum should meet on a regular basis and present their views to the proposed Tourism Council.

1. *Redefining the Role of GMVN and KMVN in the Tourism Sector:* Whilst their pioneering contribution to the development of tourism in Uttarakhand is undeniable, in particular establishing and operating accommodation units in areas of where tourism had not yet developed but presented great potential, the Corporations should now focus on government development plans and on facilitating private tourism firms by providing them with services, consultancy and mentoring (for which they could demand a reasonable charge). It is recommended that a study is made on the best use of tourist facilities currently owned by GMVN and KMVN; that the role of the GMVN and KMVN offices in other Indian States is examined; that the best mechanism is proposed to use their facilities to promote Uttarakhand rather than act as just promotion and sales offices for the Corporations; and ultimately that a report is commissioned on how to transfer GMVN and KMVN's tourism interests to UTDB.

2. *Facilitating Investment and Operation in the Tourism Sector:* A one-stop-shop system must be established to assist interested investors to set up tourism businesses in Uttarakhand. It is particularly important to attract well-known

branded hotel chains, which until now have been reluctant to invest in the State. The obstacles hampering the issuing of liquor licenses must be resolved if Uttarakhand in going to compete in the leisure tourism market. An economic study is recommended to ascertain whether abolishing the 'Entertainment Tax' would increase tourist visits and therefore revenue for the sector and indirectly for the government to compensate enough for the loss of income.

17.12 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. What are the various objectives of framing tourism policies?
2. Name the three phases in which Uttarakhand tourism policy is divided. Explain the various areas in which these phases focus upon.
3. What are the various points in which the Structure Plan focused upon?
4. What are the key objectives of physical infrastructure policy/strategy?
5. What are the various suggestions for better performance of Tourism Organisations / Institutions?
6. Name three main Government Institutions / Organisations of Uttarakhand responsible for the development of tourism in the state.

17.13 REFERENCES

- uttarakhandtourism.gov.in/files/17th%20sept/1.pdf

Unit-18

'Garhwal' and 'Kumaun' Mandal Vikas Nigam: Role and Contribution in Promotion of Tourism in Uttarakhand

Structure:

- 18.1 Introduction
- 18.2 Objectives
- 18.3 Public Sector: Basic concept and Framework
- 18.4 Organization and Management of Public Enterprises
- 18.5 Role of Public Sector in Tourism
- 18.6 Government Undertakings in Uttarakhand Tourism
 - 18.6.1 Kumaun Mandal Vikas Nigam (KMVN)
 - 18.6.2 Garhwal Mandal Vikas Nigam (GMVN)
- 18.7 Summary
- 18.8 Answer to Check Your Progress Exercises
- 18.9 References / Bibliography
- 18.10 Review Questions

18.1 INTRODUCTION

Public sector, with a number of Government of India / State Government Undertakings today, occupies a key position in the economy of the country. The private entrepreneurs are always in search of profit and this motive urges them to move in fields where the returns are high and certain. In a developing country or in an under-developed country, this tendency has many drawbacks. Development in an under-developed and developing country is usually lopsided and only in certain directions. It is never equitably distributed over various regions of production.

The public sector is playing a prominent role in a wide range of industries, including steel, power generation, aircraft, computer and machine tools, coal, petroleum, copper, aluminum, financial infra-structure consumer items and even films. Each year, the public sector consolidates its gain, spreads out to new fields. The public sector has been playing a vital role in the economic development of the country.

Present unit addresses the basic concept and framework of public sector enterprises and present a detailed description of Garhwal Mandal Vikas Nigam (GMVN) and Kumaon Mandal Vikas Nigam (KMVN) in Uttarakhand State.

18.2 OBJECTIVES

After reading this unit, learners should be able to:

- Know the basic concept and framework of public sector enterprises;
- assimilate the relationship between public sector enterprises in tourism industry;
- Understand the importance of GMVN and KMVN in tourism industry;
- Learn about the different tourism activities performed by GMVN and KMVN in Uttarakhand and management of GMVN and KMVN.

18.3 PUBLIC SECTOR: BASIC CONCEPT AND FRAMEWORK

Since the advent of planned economic era, public sector enterprises have been considered suitable instruments for economic growth, prosperity and development. Public sector is considered a powerful engine of economic development and an important instrument of self-reliance. The main contributions of public enterprises to the country's economy may be described as follows:

- i. To promote rapid economic development through creation and expansion of infrastructure
- ii. To generate financial resources for development
- iii. To promote redistribution of income and wealth
- iv. To create employment opportunities
- v. To promote balanced regional growth
- vi. To encourage the development of small-scale and ancillary industries, and
- vii. To promote exports on the one side and import substitution, on the other.

MEANING OF PUBLIC ENTERPRISES

The business units owned, managed and controlled by the central, state or local government are termed as public sector enterprises or public enterprises. These are also known as public sector undertakings. A public sector enterprise may be defined as any commercial or industrial undertaking owned and managed by the government with a view to maximize social welfare and uphold the public interest. Public enterprises consist of nationalized private sector enterprises, such as, banks, Life Insurance Corporation of India and the new enterprises set up by the government.

Basically, public enterprises is an institution, operating a service of an economic or social character, on behalf of the government but as an independent legal entity largely autonomous in its management, though responsible for the public, through government and parliament and subject to some direction by the government.

CHARACTERISTICS OF PUBLIC ENTERPRISES

(a) **Government Ownership and Management:** The public enterprises are owned and managed by the central or state government, or by the local authority. The government may either wholly own the public enterprises or the ownership may partly be with the government and partly with the private industrialists and the public. In any case the control, management and ownership remain primarily with the government.

(b) **Financed from Government Funds:** The public enterprises get their capital from Government Funds and the government has to make provision for their capital in its budget.

(c) **Public Welfare:** Public enterprises are not guided by profit motive. Their major focus is on providing the service or commodity at reasonable prices.

(d) **Public Utility Services:** Public sector enterprises concentrate on providing public utility services like transport, electricity, telecommunication etc.

(e) **Public Accountability:** Public enterprises are governed by public policies formulated by the government and are accountable to the legislature.

(f) **Excessive Formalities:** The government rules and regulations force the public enterprises to observe excessive formalities in their operations. This makes the task of management very sensitive and cumbersome.

Check Your Progress 1

Activity 1

1. Explain the basic concept and framework of public enterprises?

.....

2. The public enterprises are owned and managed by the central or state government, or by the local authority. How?

.....

18.4 ORGANIZATION AND MANAGEMENT OF PUBLIC ENTERPRISES

There are three different forms of organization used for the public sector

enterprises in India. These are:

1. Departmental Undertaking;
2. Statutory (or Public) Corporation, and
3. Government Company.

Departmental Undertaking form of organization is primarily used for provision of essential services such as railways, postal services, broadcasting etc. Such organizations function under the overall control of a ministry of the Government and are financed and controlled in the same way as any other government department. This form is considered suitable for activities where the government desires to have control over them in view of the public interest.

Statutory Corporation (also known as public corporation) refers to a corporate body created by the Parliament or State Legislature by a special Act which defines its powers, functions and pattern of management. Its capital is wholly provided by the government. Examples of such organizations are Life Insurance Corporation of India, State Trading Corporation etc.

Government Company refers to the company in which 51 percent or more of the paid up capital is held by the government. It is registered under the Companies Act and is fully governed by the provisions of the Act. Most business units owned and managed by government fall in this category.

As per the provisions of the Indian Companies Act, a company in which 51% or more of its capital is held by central and/or state government is regarded as a Government Company. These companies are registered under Indian Companies Act, 1956 and follow all those rules and regulations as are applicable to any other registered company. The Government of India/state government has organized and registered a number of its undertakings as government companies for ensuring managerial autonomy, operational efficiency and provides competition to private sector.

ORGANISATION AND MANAGEMENT

The organisation and management of the public sector enterprises has been on 'trial and error' ever since independence in the country. The constitution of management boards is the major problem, which merits attention most. Here, the government burdens the governing board with the civil servants, undermining the principle of autonomy of the enterprises. The management board tilts the balance of decision making on policy matters greatly in government favour and thus reducing the enterprise to, more or less, a department.

1. Personnel Administration: The personnel management of the public sector is beset with a plethora of problems which are mostly responsible for its inefficient, uneconomic and below standards performance. The recruitment to public enterprises is done by individual enterprises or by a central personnel agency for a group of enterprises in a given sector following general guidelines of the government in matters of reservations, etc. The tendency to second the civil servants to top management is so rampant in the country that it negates the initiative of inbreeding and the insiders are disillusioned, not to talk of their disappointment and disinterestedness.

Remuneration or compensation to the employees is another area, which needs prompt attention. While compensation to top managers is usually high in most of the enterprises with innumerable perks and other amenities and benefits, it is progressively lower in the middle and lower level managements.

2. Financial Management: Financial management is not properly practised in the public enterprises in most cases. The prime requirement of majority of the enterprises is the sound and scientific financial management as they lack financial discipline, consciousness and professionalism. A number of agencies are involved in the planning and control of financial management of public enterprises in the country, viz., Board of Management, Administrative Ministry etc.

3. Workers' Participation in Management : It is missing in public enterprises .The process of WPM involves four main steps, viz., information sharing, joint

consultations, joint decision-making and self-management. With regard to workers' participating at various levels including board level, it is beset with a number of problems relating to selection of employees to be represented on the Board of Management.

4. Autonomy and Accountability: Autonomy' implies "freedom to act" and is related to "freedom in internal management". The Public Enterprises are accountable to Parliament through the concerned minister or state Government as the case may be and therefore cannot act freely. At the same time the public enterprises should be accorded sufficient autonomy to run their operations on business lines. It facilitates quick decision-making and encourages initiative.

Limitations

Despite their impressive role, Public enterprises in India suffer from several problems and shortcomings. Some of these are described below:

1. Poor Project Planning: Investment decisions in many public enterprises are not based upon proper evaluation of demand and supply, cost benefit analysis and technical feasibility. Many projects in the public sector have not been finished according to the time schedule.

2. Over-capitalization: Due to inefficient financial planning, lack of effective financial control and easy availability of money from the government, several public enterprises suffer from over-capitalization

3. Overstaffing: Manpower planning is not effective due to which public enterprises have excess manpower.

4. Under-utilisation of Capacity: Productivity is low on account of poor materials management or ineffective inventory control.

5. Inefficient Management: Managerial efficiency and effectiveness have been low due to inept management, uninspiring leadership, too much centralisation, frequent transfers and lack of personal stake. Civil servants who are deputed to

manage the enterprises often lack proper training and use bureaucratic practices. Political interference in day-to-day affairs, rigid bureaucratic control and ineffective delegation of authority hamper initiative, flexibility and quick decisions. Motivations and morale of both executives and workers are low due to the lack of appropriate incentives.

Check Your Progress 2

Activity 1**Fill in the blanks**

1. Departmental Undertaking form of organization is primarily used forof essential services.
2. Statutory Corporation, also known as
3. In Government Company Capital is held by central and/or state government.
4. The prime requirement of majority of the enterprises is thefinancial management.
5. Manpower planning is not effective due toexcess manpower.

Activity 2**Answer the following questions briefly.**

1. Explain the limitations of public enterprises in India?

.....
.....

2. What are the various forms of public enterprises?

.....
.....

18.5 ROLE OF PUBLIC SECTOR IN TOURISM

Whatever structures are in place, the role of the public sector in tourism remains basically the same. It works on researching, developing and marketing tourism in a destination, something the private sector, made up predominantly of a huge number of small and micro-businesses, is unable to do on its own. It also has a co-coordinating function: brokering agreement and joint working between what would otherwise remain essentially competing business interests. The public sector provides the following main services:

1. Strategic Direction: Strategic direction is provided through the development and production of tourism strategies that recognize important synergies, identify key initiatives and set out coherent plans for the multi-faceted sector that makes up a destination's tourism product.

2. Destination Research: The public sector is able to gather a range of information on:

- The visitors to a destination
- Their numbers and spending habits
- Their perception of and satisfaction with a destination
- Their collective effect on the local economy and individual businesses.

Destination Marketing: Visitors are attracted to places. Those places need to be marketed as destinations so that customers can be encouraged to visit. The public sector has traditionally provided funding, staff resources and the organizational capacity to create and manage campaigns on behalf of the whole sector.

Visitor Information: Destination websites and publications on the range of activities and attractions available in an area have been predominantly the preserve of the public sector. Public sector has the resources and capacity to:

- Develop, operate and manage these services.

- Produce information on culture, architecture, literary figures, landscape, wildlife, and the other elements that make up a destination’s character and distinctiveness.

Tourism Development: Individual businesses will undertake their own development programs to a greater or lesser degree, depending on the business. But destination-wide programs need public sector support to succeed, at least in the early stages, and often throughout the life of a development program. These programs include:

- Raising quality standards
- Training the workforce (in particular the micro-business sector)
- Delivering strategic objectives (eg sustainable business operation, greater uptake of local produce, improved access)
- Conservation and management of heritage and landscape of the area.

Check Your Progress 3

Activity 1

1. Destination Research and Strategic Direction is important thrust area of public sector? Explain?

.....
.....

2. Explain Destination Marketing?

.....
.....

18.6 GOVERNMENT UNDERTAKINGS IN UTTARAKHAND TOURISM

In order to develop the mountain region, the Uttar-Pradesh Government on 30th march 1971 established the Uttar-Pradesh Mountain Development Nigam, a government undertaking with the sum of rupees two crore registered under the

company's act 1956. However, in the year 1976 the Mountain Development Nigam was re-established in two parts:

1. Kumaun Mandal Vikas Nigam (KMVN)
2. Garhwal Mandal Vikas Nigam (GMVN)

18.6.1 Kumaun Mandal Vikas Nigam (KMVN)

Kumaun Mandal Vikas Nigam Ltd. (KMVNL) is an enterprise of Government of Uttarakhand as Garhwal Mandal Vikas Nigam Ltd. (GMVNL). Uttarakhand the 27th state of India is divided into two regions Garhwal and Kumaon. KMVN is responsible to develop the tourism industry in Kumaon region, as this organization has tourist rest houses on every popular destination of Kumaon. Kumaon Mandal Vikas Nigam offers a wide range of services and facilities for tourists who want to plan their tour to Kumaon in Uttarakhand. Tourists can book hotel's room or tour packages in advance by visiting the organization's official website www.kmvn.gov.in. The work area of KMVN, Nainital is limited to six districts which include Almora, Nainital, Udham Singh Nagar, Bageshwar, Pithoragarh and Champawat with its headquarter at Nainital.

The objectives of KMVN had been described in detail in the memorandum of understanding. In brief the objectives of KMVN can be described as:

1. To work in the tourism sector and to encourage tourism through the establishment of hotel, restaurant, and transport sector.
2. To establish the old places, to develop them and to provide employment in those areas.
3. To provide help in the setup of governmental, semi-governmental and private business by providing funds, equipments and through various other medium.

4. To take up small River Valley Projects in the said area for checking Soil erosion, harnessing the available water resources, extension of irrigation facilities etc.
5. To own or run transport facilities in the said area, suitable for starting or expanding tourism, horticultural vegetable, forest and other allied and industrial trades.
6. To exploit mineral resources of the said area and to undertake mining operations.
7. To arrange for marketing facilities of all types of production within the said area and outside.
8. To acquire, purchase, give or sell agricultural implements, machines, equipment, appliances, tools etc., either on hire purchase system or on payment by installments as the Company may deem fit.
9. To distribute loans directly or through any agency/agencies to private and cooperative and corporate sectors for the establishment of various industries necessary to intensify agriculture, animal husbandry, transport, irrigation, forests, tourism etc., or for the processing of agriculture, animals husbandry and forest produce.

Board of Directors

Subject to the provisions of section 252 and until otherwise determined by the Company in a General meeting, the number of Directors shall not be less than three and not more than 15. Directors are not required to hold any Qualification shares. The Directors including Chairman/ Vice Chairman shall be appointed by the Governor and may be paid such remuneration as the Governor may, from time to time determine. The Powers of Board of Directors of KMVN had been described in detail in the memorandum of understanding. General Powers of the Company vested in Board. In brief the Powers can be described as:

1. To acquire property.

2. To pay for property in debentures etc.
3. To secure contracts by mortgages.
4. To execute mortgages by way of indemnity.
5. To make byelaws.
6. Delegation of powers to Committee.

SERVICES AND FACILITIES

For years Kumaon Mandal Vikas Nigam (KMVN) has been welcoming tourist in this land of immense invitations and endless charms. To ensure comfortable stay and conduct and promote various touristic activities, KMVN offers a wide range of services and facilities as given below:

Tourism Related Services:

(1) Tourist Rest Houses / Accommodation Facilities: Development of accommodation facilities in key tourist destinations of Kumaon started in the year 1976. Pioneering role of Nigam in terms of taking initiatives for infrastructure development in key destinations, led to participation by private parties during subsequent years for setting hotels, amenities etc. Hence KMVN has played the role of catalyst.

Table 1: KMVN Tourist Rest Houses in Kumaon Region of Uttarakhand

Place	Name of Tourist Rest House	Place	Name of Tourist Rest House
Almora	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Almora	Lohaghat:	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Lohaghat
	Chiliyanaula KMVN Tourist Rest House, Almora	Mukteshwar	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Mukteshwar

	Monal KMVN Tourist Rest House, Almora	Munsiyari	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Munsiyari
	Danya KMVN Tourist Rest House, Almora	Nainital	KMVN Tallital
	Deenapani KMVN Tourist Rest House, Almora		KMVN Sukhatal
			Snow-View KMVN Tourist Rest House, Nainital
			KMVN Tourist Rest House Kaladhungi, Khairna
Bageshwar	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Bageshwar	Naukuchiatal:	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Naukuchiatal
			Parichay KMVN Tourist Rest House, Naukuchiatal
	Baijnath KMVN Tourist Rest House, Bageshwar	Ramnagar	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Ramnagar
Bhimal	Pandava KMVN Tourist Rest House, Bhimal	Ranikhet	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Ranikhet

Bhowali	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Bhowali	Patal Bhubaneswar	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Patal Bhuvaneshwar
Binsar	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Binsar	Ramgarh:	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Ramgarh
Champawat	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Champawat	Tanakpur	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Tanakpur
	Syamlatal KMVN Tourist Rest House, Champawat	Sattal	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Sattal
Chaukori	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Chaukori	Nanakmatta	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Nanakmatta
Dharchula	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Dharchula	Ranikhet:	Sitlakheta KMVN Tourist Rest House, Ranikhet
Didihat	Didihat KMVN Tourist Rest House, Didihat	Kathgodam	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Kathgodam
Jageshwar	Jageshwar KMVN Tourist Rest House, Jageshwar	Kausani	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Kausani
Kashipur	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Kashipur	Pithoragarh	KMVN Tourist Rest House, Pithoragarh

(2) **Package tours / Trekking Tours / Yatra / Adventure Tourism:** Tourism trade promotion through utilization of resources and expertise was done by Nigam since 1985. Conduct of Kailash Mansarover and other Yatras by Nigam has added to 'brand image' of KMVN.

Packages offered by KMVN:

- 7 Nights Sunderdunga Glacier Trekking Package from KMVN;
- 9 Nights Trekking Package to Sunderdunga Glacier from KMVN: Sunderdunga means the valley of beautiful stones. The valley is situated to the west of Pindari valley and has two glaciers i.e., Maktoli and Sukhram;
- 7 Nights Milam Glacier Trekking Package by KMVN :The base camp for Milam Glacier is Munsiyari (2290mts.) in Pithoragarh district;
- 8 Days Trekking Package to Kafani Glacier from KMVN : The Kafni glacier lies towards the left of Pindari valley below Nandakot;
- 7 Days Panchachuli Trekking Deluxe Package from KMVN;
- 2 Nights Camp Dhikuli Corbett Package by KMVN;
- 2 Nights Camp Sigri Nainital Package by KMVN;
- 6 Nights Kumoan – Corbett Tour Package with KMVN;
- 5 Nights Pindari Glacier Trekking Package by KMVN;
- 7 Nights Trekking Package to Pindari Glacier with KMVN;
- 20 Days Trekking Package to Adi Kailash by KMVN: Popularly known as Chotta Kailash it is the replica of the famous Mt. Kailash in Tibet. Located in Indian Territory close to the Indo- Tibetan border, it is an area of great natural beauty, peace and serenity.
- **Kailash Manasarovar Yatra Package by KMVN:** Kailash Mansarovar yatra, which is the famous holy pilgrimage of Hindus, is conducted by KMVN on every year with the association of Ministry of External Affairs, Government

of India. The Kailash Mansarovar Yatra is generally organized in the months of May and June every year and tour is divided by several batches and leaving for Mount Kailas one by one. KMVN makes all the arrangement for pilgrims.

Rafting Packages by KMVN in Kali Ganga:

Rafting can also be undertaken through Kumaon Mandal Vikas Nigam in Mahakali River.

- I. Rush Trip on Saryu: 2 Nights 3 Days
- II. Rush Trip on Kali: 2 Nights 3 Days
- III. Saryu- Kali Combination: 5 Days
- IV. Mega River Run Kali Expedition: 5 Days
- V. Rafting Cum Fishing Holiday in Kali/ Saryu

(3) Holiday Camps: It is undertaken for local tourism trade promotion and to support to local economy. Presently scale of this activity is limited and in future more thrust in this area will be given.

(4) Amusement/ Recreation Projects (Ropeway, Eco-garden): For utilization of available resources and diversification of tourism activities in Kumaon, KMVN with participation of private players is developing various recreation projects.

MARKETING

1) Distribution of Cooking Gas: To make better energy resources available to people of Kumaon since 1976 KMVN is involved in distribution of cooking gas which leads to preservation of forest and woods.

2) Marketing of Fruits & Herbs: To make avenues available to local producers for getting better returns on their produce in less developed regions of Kumaon, KMVN is involved in marketing of fruits & herbs since 1981.

3) Operating Petrol Pump and Service Station: To make facilities available for tourists visiting Kumaon KMVN is involved in operating petrol pump and service station since 1980.

(4) Mining Building material (Boulder-Bajri): To monitor exploitation of mineral resources as per plans & to monitor payment to labours as per norms set by Government KMVN is involved in this operation since 1976.

INDUSTRIES

(1) Financial Support in form of Assisted, Joint and Subsidiary Industrial Projects: It assists in promotion of industries e.g. Plants Agro and IMPCL by providing financial support involving local entrepreneurs. But this is not area of long term competency for KMVN. Such activity is perhaps more appropriate for being undertaken by specialized financial industry promotion agency.

(2) Direct Management of Industrial Units

CONSTRUCTION

(1) Construction of tourist bungalows, government buildings and other departmental works and maintenance works.

18.5.2 Garhwal Mandal Vikas Nigam (GMVN)

Garhwal Mandal Vikas Nigam Ltd. was established on **31st March 1976** as Public Limited Company registered under companies act. GMVN is an enterprise of the Government of Uttarakhand. GMVN has a very successful chain of 89 guest houses and tourist bungalows spread all over Garhwal with superior tour packages with an approved capital Rs. 40 crores and a committed workforce of 2149 out of which 752 are regular employees, 731 employees are non regular employees and 666 are seasonal employees.

Area: The work area of GMVN is limited to 7 districts of Garhwal such as Chamoli, Pauri, Uttarkashi, Dehradun, Rudraprayag, Haridwar, and Tehri Garhwal. It has it's

headquarter at Dehradun and twelve Public Relation offices in almost every metro of the country.

Objectives:

1. To set up industrial unit and their development.
2. To give financial, technical and other type of aids to set up Government/semi Government and private industrial unit.
3. To work for tourism industry and set up Hotels, Restaurant and transport etc. for betterment of tourism industry.
4. To work for mining in the related region, plantation, Dairy, Bee farming and to establish new orchards.
5. To set up new cold stores and to develop new storage facility.
6. To work for the development of Orchards.
7. To set up units for electric supply, Industrial goods, Raw Material, water for drinking and irrigation, seeds, fertilizers and insecticides etc.
8. To make arrangement for the distribution of the necessities in the related area.

Board of Directors and its Appointment

Like KMVN the number of Directors shall not be less than three and not more than 15. The chairman, vice-chairman and members of Board of Directors are nominated by State Government. Managing Director is the Chief Executive Officer (CEO) and is from Indian Administrative Service (IAS) cadre. The Directors including Chairman / Vice Chairman shall be appointed by the Governor and may be paid such remuneration as the Governor may, from time to time determine.

Powers of Board of Directors

The Powers of Board of Directors of GMVN had been described in detail in the memorandum of understanding. In brief the Powers of GMVN can be described as:

1. To secure contracts by mortgages.
2. To appoint trustees.
3. To bring and defend action etc.
4. To authorize acceptance etc.
5. To invest moneys.
6. To establish Local Board.
7. Acquire property.

ACTIVITIES

1. Tourism Section

Services Offered

- Accommodation in Tourist Rest Houses and Hotels(89 in numbers)
 - Transport Bookings (on hire).It has its own transport fleet of **34** (*Including tourist coaches/buses, tempo traveler, Taxi/cabs, Qualis, Innova etc.*)
 - Package Tours (Pilgrimage – Char Dham Yatra, Adventure, Wildlife, Yoga etc.)
 - Customized Tours (Pilgrimage, Adventure, Wildlife, Yoga etc)
 - Adventure sports such as Trekking & Mountaineering, Skiing, White Water Rafting, Still Water Sports etc.
 - Adventure sports courses
 - Water Skiing (5 days certificate course)
 - White Water Rafting (3 days non-certificate & 5days certificate course at Kaudiyala near Rishikesh)
 - Snow Skiing (7 days non-certificate & 14 days certificate course at Auli)
2. Marketing (LPG & Petroleum products);

3. Industries;
4. Ropeway Project;
5. Civil Construction/Engineering;
6. Mining

Table 2: GMVN Tourist Rest Houses in Garhwal Region of Uttarakhand

Place	Name of Tourist Rest House	Place	Name of Tourist Rest House
Adi Badri	GMVN Adi Badri - Tourist Rest House, Adi Badri	Auli	GMVN Auli Tourist Bungalow, Auli
Badrinath	GMVN Badrinath Tourist Bungalow Devlok, Badrinath	Barkot	GMVN Barkot Yatri Niwas, Barkot
	GMVN Badrinath Govt TRH, Badrinath		GMVN Barkot Old TRH, Barkot
	GMVN Badrinath Yatri Niwas, Badrinath		GMVN Barkot Annexe - Tourist Rest House, Barkot
Chakrata	GMVN Hanol - Tourist Bungalow, Chakrata	Chamba	GMVN Arakot - TRH, Chamba
	GMVN Devprayag TRH, Devprayag		GMVN Chamba - Tourist Bungalow, Chamba
Dehradun	GMVN Dehradun - Drona Hotel TRH, Dehradun	Dhanaulti	GMVN Dhanaulti Tourist Bungalow, Dhanaulti
	GMVN Asan - Tourist Rest House, Dehradun	Gairsain	GMVN Gairsain - Tourist Rest House, Gairsain

	GMVN Sahastradhara - Tourist Rest House, Dehradun	Gangotri	GMVN Bhaironghati - Tourist Rest House, Gangotri
	GMVN Dakpathar - Tourist Rest House, Dehradun		GMVN Gangotri - Tourist Rest House, Gangotri
Gauchar	GMVN Gauchar - Tourist Rest House, Gauchar		GMVN Lanka - Tourist Rest House, Gangotri
Gaurikund	GMVN Gaurikund - Tourist Rest House, Gaurikund		GMVN Bhojwasa - Tourist Rest House, Gangotri
Ghangharia	GMVN Ghangharia - Tourist Bungalow, Ghangharia	Ghuttu	GMVN Ghuttu - Tourist Rest House, Ghuttu
Gopeshwar	GMVN Gopeshwar - Tourist Bungalow, Gopeshwar		GMVN Reeh - Tourist Rest House, Ghuttu
	GMVN Birahi - TRH, Gopeshwar		GMVN Gangi - Tourist Rest House, Ghuttu
Guptkashi	GMVN Guptkashi - Tourist Rest House, Guptkashi	Gwaldam	GMVN Gwaldam - Tourist Rest House, Gwaldam

Har Ki Doon	Tourist Rest House, Har Ki Doon		GMVN Dewal - Tourist Rest House, Gwaldam
	GMVN - Tourist Rest House, Osla		GMVN Mandoli - Tourist Rest House, Gwaldam
	GMVN - Tourist Rest House, Taluka		GMVN Wan - Tourist Rest House, Gwaldam
		Harsil	GMVN Harsil Tourist Bungalow, Harsil
Haridwar	GMVN Haridwar Rahi Motel, Haridwar	Joshimath	GMVN Joshimath Expedition Hostel, Joshimath
	GMVN Chilla - Tourist Rest House, Haridwar		GMVN Joshimath - New TRH, Joshimath
Kedarnath	GMVN Kedarnath - Tourist Rest House, Kedarnath		
	GMVN Rambara - Tourist Rest House, Kedarnath	Karnaprayag	GMVN Karnaprayag - Tourist Bungalow, Karnaprayag
Khirsu	GMVN Khirsu - Tourist Bungalow, Khirsu		GMVN Nauti Village - Tourist Rest House, Karnaprayag
Kotdwar	GMVN Kotdwara - Tourist Rest House, Kotdwar	Lansdowne	GMVN Lansdowne - Tourist Bungalow, Lansdowne
	GMVN Kanwashram -		GMVN Lansdowne - Tip N Top Huts, Lansdowne

	Tourist Rest House, Kotdwar		
Mussoorie	GMVN Mussoorie - Garhwal Terrace TRH, Mussoorie	Nandprayag	GMVN Nandprayag - Tourist Rest House, Nandprayag
Pauri Garhwal	GMVN Pauri Garhwal - Tourist Bungalow, Pauri Garhwal	Rishikesh	GMVN Rishikesh - Bharat Bhoomi TRH, Rishikesh
Pipalkoti	GMVN Pipalkoti - Tourist Bungalow, Pipalkoti		GMVN Rishikesh Rishilok Travel Guest House, Rishikesh
Purola	GMVN Purola - Tourist Rest House, Purola		GMVN Rishikesh - Ganga Resort TRH, Rishikesh
Roorkee	GMVN Piral Kaliyar - Tourist Rest House, Roorkee		GMVN Kaudiyala - Tourist Rest House, Rishikesh
Rudraprayag	Tourist Bungalow, Rudraprayag	Srinagar	Tourist Rest House, Srinagar
	Tourist Rest House, Jakholi		Tourist Rest House, Srikot
	Tourist Rest House, Syalsaur	New Tehri	Tourist Rest House, New Tehri
	Tourist Rest House, Chandrapuri	Ukhimath	Tourist Rest House, Ukhimath
	Tourist Rest House, Hariyali Devi	Uttarkashi	Tourist Rest House, Uttarkashi

	Tourist Rest House, Tilwara		TRH, Barsu Village
Yamunotri	Tourist Rest House, Janki Chatti Annexe		Tourist Bungalow, Chinyalisaur
	Tourist Rest House, Phoolchatti		Tourist Rest House, Raithal
	Tourist Rest House, Yamunotri		Tourist Rest House, Bhatwari
	Tourist Rest House, Janki Chatti		
	Tourist Rest House, Hanuman Chatti		
	Tourist Rest House, Syanachatti		

Trekking: The Mountaineering and Trekking department of GMVN has well maintained stock of equipments', Alpine Tents, Hollow filled sleeping bags, Hollow field jackets, Wind proof trousers, Rucksacks and many more others. Following Trekking tours are offered by GMVN.

Table 3: Trek routes identified by GMVN

S.N o.	Name Of The Trek Route	S.N o.	Name Of The Trek Route
1.	Kedarnath Vasukital Trek	2.	Gangotri Nandavan Tapovan Trek
3.	Panch Kedar Trek	4.	Dodital Yamunotri Trek

5.	Kalindikhal Trek	6.	Valley Of Flowers Trek
7.	Khatling Sahasratal Trek	8.	Har-Ki-Doon Trek
9.	Kalsi Lakhamandal Trek	10.	Roopkund Trek
11.	Lata Panwali Kedarnath Trek	12.	Kuari Pass Trek
13.	Devi-darshan Trek	14.	Binsar Trek
15.	Chandrashila Winter Summit	16.	. Nagtibba Trek
17.	Bhadraj Jwala Devi Trek	18.	Auli Kuari Pass Tapovan Trek
19.	Chinab Trek		

New Trekking Routes

Badrinath – Alkapuri- Satopanth Trek (May to Oct.)

Badrinath- Alkapuri Glacier Trek (May to Oct.)

Badrinath – Arwanala Trek (May to Oct.)

Marwari (Vishnuprayag) – Chinab Valley Trek (May to Oct.)

Harsil – Lamkhaga Pass- Chitkil Trek (May to Oct.)

Phoolchatti – Machkantha Pass - Osla - Harkidoon Trek (May to Oct.)

Uttarkashi – Barsu - Dayara- Dodital Trek (May to Oct.)

Package Tour of GMVN:

- Rishikesh-Kedarnath-Badrinath-Rishikesh, Duration: 6 days 5 nights.
- Delhi-Kedarnath-Badrinath-Delhi, Duration: 8 Days 7 Nights.
- Delhi-Yamunotri-Gangotri-Kedarnath-Badrinath-Delhi,Duration:12D/11Nig
- Rishikesh-Yamunotri-Gangotri-Gaumukh-Kedarnath-Badrinath-Rishikesh Duration: 11 Days 11 Nights.
- Rishikesh - Badrinath - Rishikesh Duration : 4 Days 4 Nights

- Rishikesh - Yamunotri - Gangotri - Gaumukh - Rishikesh Duration: 6 Days 6 Nights.
- Delhi - Kedarnath - Badrinath - Delhi Duration: 7 Days 6 Nights.
- Rishikesh-Yamunotri-Gangotri-Kedarnath-Badrinath-Rishikesh Duration: 10 Days 10 Nights.
- Rishikesh-Valley of Flowers-Hemkund-Badrinath-Rishikesh Duration : 7 Days 7 Nights
- Delhi-Yamunotri-Gangotri-Kedarnath-Badrinath-Delhi Duration: 11 Days 10 Nights.

Month Wise Fixed Departure of Treks / Tours and Packages:

- Rishikesh-Ukhimath-Deoriatal-Kalimath-Tungnath-Gopeshwar-Kartikey-Rudraprayag Rishikesh Duration : 7 days, April
- Uttarkashi-Malla-Budhakedar-Ghuttu-Panwali-Triyuginarayan-Gaurikund-Kedarnath-Gaurikund Duration : 9 days, May
- Gangotri-Bhojwasa-Tapovan-Nandanvan-Vasukital-Gangotri, Duration: 7 days, June
- Gangotri-Badrinath-via Kalindikhal High Altitude Pass Duration : 12 days, July
- Nandprayag-Ghat-Ramni-Gorson-Auli (Lord Curzon Trail)Duration : 7 days, August
- Ghuttu-Reeh-Gangi-Bhelbhagi-Chauki-Masartal-Mayalipass-Vasukital-Kedarnath-Gaurikund
Duration : 10 days, September
- Uttarkashi-Bewara-Dodital-Darwatop (Seema)-Yamunotri-Hanuman Chatti, Duration, October

Yoga Courses: GMVN conducted three types of courses for basic learners, as well as enthusiasts. The courses are 7 days, 15 days and 30 days duration. The courses are conducted by certified and trained instructors of GMVN.

Observations about the GMVN and KMVN

KMVN should evaluate it's aim and objectives time and again and foresee to execute operations for integrated development of Uttarakhand to uplift social, cultural and economic values.

More and more employment prospects should be created for the local youths so as to check heavy out-migration. In case of tourism in Garhwal, aspects of marketing and it's varied instruments have not yet received the thrust. Strategy to cater all segments and strata of population, a facility embracing varied products of tourism should be made available at the earliest.

With the application of appropriate marketing strategies, the rapid pace of region is very possible. Few of the observations about GMVN and KMVN are listed below.

- **Lack in professional attitude:** The professional attitude is lacking in all cadre of staff in almost all units.
- **Poor management information System:** The management information system is poor in all hotels. This leads to delay in decision or no certain management issues.
- **Poor supervision:** There is poor or no supervision in different units in the operations of different department.
- **Under utilization of Space:** The space provided in most of the hotels is underutilized and therefore leads to loss of the revenue.
- **Poor Infrastructure in the kitchen and Dining Hall:** In all the units of GMVN and KMVN the infrastructure provided in the kitchen and dining hall is poor and it needs standard set of equipments.

- **Poor Hygiene:** The possible causes of poor hygiene are inadequate infrastructure, awareness, un-professional attitude and complete lack of Supervision.
- **Poor Maintenance:** The maintenance in most of the areas of the hotels is not up to the mark and this issue requires immediate attention.

Check Your Progress - 4

Activity 1

1. GMVN and KMVN offer a wide range of services. Explain in brief?
.....

2. Which package tours are offered by KMVN?
.....

3. Explain the following:

- a. Marketing of services
- b. Organization structure of GMVN
- c. Trek routes in Garhwal region

18.7 SUMMARY

In this unit we have learnt that Public sector, with a number of Government of India/State Government Undertakings today, occupy a key position in the economy of the country and is a subject of great significance for the students of tourism.

Public sector is considered a powerful engine of economic development and an important instrument of self-reliance. Learners also learnt about different forms of organizations used for the public sector enterprises in India and about role of public sector in tourism. Various govt. undertaking in Uttarakhand tourism are playing a vital role in tourism development.

GMVN and KMVN offer a wide range of services and facilities for tourists in Garhwal and Kumaon region. They have similar objectives and cater the needs of

largest segment of tourist. It is of utmost importance to study the essence of tourism in Uttarakhand so as to have adequate knowledge by the learners to acquaint him/her.

18.8 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS EXERCISES

CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 1

Activity 1

For answer refer section 1.1 and 1.2

Check Your Progress 2

Activity 1

For answer refer to section 1.3. Read carefully the paragraph to solve fill-in the blanks.

Activity 2

Read about Departmental Undertaking, Statutory (or Public) Corporation, and Government Company. Refer section 1.3. Various limitations can be listed as poor project planning, under-utilisation of capacity. Read full section.

Check Your Progress 3

Activity 1

For answer Plz. see section 1.4.

Check Your Progress 4

Activity 1

For answer refer section 1.5, 1.5.1 and 1.5.2.

18.9 REFERENCES/BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Davidson, R (1993). *Tourism*, 2nd edn., Pitman Publishing, London.
- Chand, M (2006). *Travel Agency Management: An Introductory Text*, 2nd edn., Anmol Publications, New Delhi.

- Annual Reports of KMVN & GMVN
-

18.10 REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Review the functioning of GMVN and KMVN?
2. How do you foresee the future of tourism industry in Uttarakhand State?
3. List out various services offered by GMVN and KMVN?
4. Visit any tourist destination of Kumaon and Garhwal Mandal and find out various tourism products that attract you as a tourist?

Unit-19
Prevailing International and Domestic Tourist, Traffic
Trends and Growth Prospects

Structure:

- 19.1 Introduction
- 19.2 Objectives
- 19.3 Tourism traffic in the past / prevailing International and domestic Tourism
 - 19.3.1 Tourism Statistics
 - 19.3.2 S.W.O.T. Analysis
- 19.4 Traffic Trends and Growth prospects
 - 19.4.1 Eco Tourism
 - 19.4.2 Incredible Medical India
 - 19.4.3 Medical Tourism
 - 19.4.4 Scene of India Tourism
- 19.5 Glossary
- 19.6 Answers to check your progress
- 19.7 References

19.1 INTRODUCTION

This unit will introduce you with the-

1. New trends in the tourism industry.
2. Strength, weaknesses, opportunities and threats for the Indian tourism industry.
3. The movement of tourist in past five years in India.

19.2 OBJECTIVE

The objective of this unit is to make the students aware of:

1. Past status of Indian tourism industry.
2. Upcoming trends in the tourism industry.
3. Strength, weaknesses, opportunities and threats for the tourism industry.

19.3 TOURISM TRAFFIC IN THE PAST / PREVAILING INTERNATIONAL AND DOMESTIC TOURISM

19.3.1 Tourism Statistics

Foreign Tourist Arrivals in India During 2008 and Corresponding Figures for 2006 & 2007

FOREIGN TOURIST ARRIVAL (Nos.)				PERCENTAGE CHANGE	
Months	2006	2007	2008 @	2007/06	2008/07
January	459489	535631	591337	16.6	10.4
February	439090	501692	561393	14.3	11.9
March	391009	472494	541478	20.8	14.6
April	309208	350550	384203	13.4	9.6
May	255008	277017	300840	8.6	8.6
June	278370	310364	340159	11.5	9.6
July	337332	399866	429456	18.5	7.4
August	304387	358446	391423	17.8	9.2

Tourism Products of Uttarakhand**BTTMN-301**

September	297891	301892	330874	1.3	9.6
October	391399	444564	452566	13.6	1.8
November	442413	532428	521247	20.3	-2.1
December	541571	596560	521990	10.2	-12.5
Total	4447167	5081504	5366966	14.3	5.6

Foreign Exchange Earnings in India During 2008 and Corresponding Figures for 2006 & 2007

Foreign Exchange Earnings (In Rs. Crores)				Percentage Change	
Months	2006*	2007*	2008#	2007/06	2008/07
January	3970	4698	5438	18.3	15.8
February	3793	4401	5182	16.0	17.7
March	3378	4144	5035	22.7	21.5
April	2850	3218	3773	12.9	17.2
May	2350	2543	2988	8.2	17.5
June	2566	2849	3409	11.0	19.7
July	2990	3436	3870	14.9	12.6
August	2698	3080	3626	14.2	17.7
September	2640	2594	3143	-1.7	21.2
October	3355	3785	4248	12.8	12.2
November	3793	4533	4935	19.5	8.9
December	4642	5079	5083	9.4	0.1
Total	39025	44360	50730	13.7	14.4

Foreign Exchange Earnings in India During 2008 and Corresponding Figures for 2006 & 2007

FOREIGN EXCHANGE EARNINGS (IN US \$ MILLION)				PERCENTAGE CHANGE	
Months	2006*	2007*	2008#	2007/06	2008/07
January	894	1064	1382	19.0	29.9
February	854	996	1305	16.6	31.0
March	761	938	1248	23.3	33.0
April	627	780	943	24.4	20.9
May	517	617	711	19.3	15.2
June	564	691	796	22.5	15.2
July	645	848	904	31.5	6.6
August	582	760	845	30.6	11.2
September	569	640	689	12.5	7.7
October	746	959	873	28.6	-9.0
November	843	1149	1005	36.3	-12.5
December	1032	1287	1046	24.7	-18.7
Total	8634	10729	11747	24.3	9.5

Foreign Tourist Arrivals in India During 2007 and Corresponding Figures for 2005 & 2006

FOREIGN TOURIST ARRIVAL (Nos.)				PERCENTAGE CHANGE	
Months	2005	2006*	2007*	2006/05	2007/06
January	385977	444260	514453	15.1	15.8
February	369844	407198	462578	10.1	13.6
March	352094	390824	443976	11.0	13.6
Total	1107915	1242282	1421007	12.1	14.4

Foreign Exchange Earnings in India During 2007 and Corresponding Figures for 2005 & 2006

FOREIGN EXCHANGE EARNINGS (IN RS.CRORES)				PERCENTAGE CHANGE	
Months	2005	2006*	2007*	2006/05	2007/06
January	2326.2	2722.07	3299.51	17.0	21.2
February	2343.18	2635.98	3003.95	12.5	14.0
March	2210.62	2210.62	2798.96	10.1	15.0
Total	6880.00	7792.37	9102.42	13.3	16.8

FOREIGN EXCHANGE EARNINGS IN INDIA DURING 2007 AND CORRESPONDING FIGURES FOR 2005 & 2006

FOREIGN EXCHANGE EARNINGS (IN US \$ MILLION)				PERCENTAGE CHANGE	
Months	2005	2006*	2007*	2006/05	2007/06
January	532.19	632.43	744.58	18.8	17.7
February	536.07	594.67	680.41	10.9	14.4
March	505.74	547.17	636.05	8.2	16.2
Total	1574.00	1774.24	2061.04	12.7	16.2

FOREIGN TOURIST ARRIVAL IN INDIA DURING 2006 AND CORRESPONDING FIGURES FOR 2004 & 2005

FOREIGN TOURIST ARRIVAL (Nos.)			PERCENTAGE CHANGE		
Months	2004	2005*	2006*	2005/04	2006/05
January	337345	386260	444753	14.50	15.50
February	331697	389081	428325	17.30	10.9
March	293185	367068	407446	25.2	11.0
April	223884	260825	325249	16.5	24.7
May	185502	229172	262860	23.5	14.7

Tourism Products of Uttarakhand**BTTMN-301**

June	223122	258822	286257	16.0	10.6
July	272456	292345	331227	7.3	13.3
August	-	-	-	-	-
September	226773	257184	281102	13.4	9.3
October	307447	347757	394009	13.1	13.3
November	385238	423837	472155	10.0	11.4
December	417527	479411	547488	14.8	14.2
Total	3457477	3918610	4429915	13.3	13.0

**Foreign Exchange Earning In India During 2006 And Corresponding Figures For
2004 & 2005**

FOREIGN EXCHANGE EARNINGS (Nos.)			PERCENTAGE CHANGE		
Months	2004	2005*	2006*	2005/04	2006/05
January	460.67	532.19	632.43	15.53	18.43
February	452.96	536.07	594.64	26.3	8.2
March	400.37	505.74	547.17	26.3	8.2
April	304.77	378.38	473.44	24.2	25.1
May	252.51	333.15	368.56	31.9	10.6
June	303.72	375.47	401.23	23.6	6.9
July	384.87	470.08	497.27	22.1	5.8
August	375.80	435.49	456.76	21.7	4.9
September	320.33	401.83	424.70	25.5	5.7
October	423.97	497.63	594.05	17.4	19.4
November	531.25	597.50	711.61	12.5	19.1
December	575.78	667.33	822.48	15.9	23.2
Total	4769.00	5730.86	6569.34	20.2	14.6

**Tourist Arrivals to India From Top Fifteen Countries of 2005 for the Period
1981 to 2005**

Year	U.K.	U.S.A	Canada	France	Sri Lanka	Germany	Japan	Malaysia
1981	116684	82052	25358	57272	75842	55471	29032	26458
1982	120772	86806	25991	59267	76143	50885	29103	26552
1983	136823	95847	29857	50158	81716	52120	26662	25796
1984	124205	95651	25135	47148	75449	48930	29566	22993
1985	119544	95920	29022	44091	69063	45738	30573	23265
1986	160685	125364	39837	65948	75631	64811	36402	26209
1987	166590	134876	37677	64432	74351	72300	46240	28480
1988	200509	122888	37498	69799	70640	77543	49244	29635
1989	229496	134314	40306	78001	67680	78812	58707	33120
1990	231551	125303	41046	79496	68400	71374	59122	34278
1991	212052	117332	36142	69346	70088	72019	46655	30617
1992	244263	152288	43386	74304	71935	84422	60137	35201
1993	274168	158159	47800	70694	76898	83340	49616	35334
1994	300696	176482	56441	73088	89009	85352	63398	40762
1995	334827	203343	63821	82349	114157	89040	76042	50039
1996	360686	228829	74031	93325	107351	99853	99018	53370
1997	370567	244239	78570	91423	122080	105979	99729	60401
1998	376513	244687	80111	97898	118292	93993	89565	47496
1999	345085	251926	82892	85891	120072	85033	73373	52613
2000	432644	348292	84013	100022	129193	83881	98159	60513
2001	405472	329147	88600	102434	112813	80011	80634	57869
2002	387846	348182	93598	78194	108008	646891	59709	63748
2003	430917	410803	107671	97654	109098	76868	77996	70750

Tourism Products of Uttarakhand**BTTMN-301**

2004	555907	526120	135884	131824	128711	116679	96851	84390
2005	651803	611165	157643	152258	136400	120243	103082	96276

Tourist Arrivals to India From Top Fifteen Countries of 2005 for the Period 1981 To 2005

Year	Australia	Nepal	Singapore	Italy	Netherland	Korea (South)	Spain
1981	20940	11851	17950	28503	10780	2665	10504
1982	23395	12115	19206	29791	10724	4110	10106
1983	23436	12001	21252	27947	11358	3139	7578
1984	24546	13401	24189	38548	15297	1767	14266
1985	22047	15883	18485	23187	13158	3939	7578
1986	33264	13957	24189	38548	15297	1767	14266
1987	32883	16965	26380	41151	18819	2990	16481
1988	31462	19715	27565	47612	21327	3572	16116
1989	30443	19116	29377	50751	22716	3895	20016
1990	30076	20614	32570	49194	24353	3986	18567
1991	22700	21834	28363	41129	19845	3967	13644
1992	26646	25244	35039	51138	30145	5171	24850
1993	28795	28048	40223	40315	30856	4791	20353
1994	33142	34732	44157	43510	35094	7227	21436
1995	36150	34562	48632	53015	40147	9831	24411
1996	48755	43426	54328	54058	54227	16321	25309
1997	50647	43155	52004	53854	44843	15392	22903
1998	57807	38199	54328	54058	54227	16321	25309
1999	73041	25859	53310	50677	48820	19188	23688

Tourism Products of Uttarakhand**BTTMN-301**

2000	53995	38801	46612	50419	46370	23411	26050
2001	73041	25859	42824	41351	42368	27150	23073
2002	50743	37136	44306	37136	31669	29374	19567
2003	58730	42771	48368	46908	40565	35584	30551
2004	81608	51534	60710	65561	51211	47835	42895
2005	96258	77024	68666	67642	52755	49895	45247

Tourist Arrivals to India from Top Fifteen Countries During the Year 2005 with Comparison for the Year 2004

Country of Nationality	Tourist Arrivals 2004	% to the Total	Country of Nationality	Tourist Arrivals 2005	% of The Total	% Change 2005 / 2004
Uk	555907	16.1	Uk	651083	16.6	17.1
Usa	526120	15.2	Usa	611165	15.6	16.2
Canada	135884	3.9	Canada	157643	4.0	16.0
France	131824	3.8	France	152258	3.9	15.5
Srilanka	128711	3.7	Srilanka	136400	3.5	6.0
Germany	116679	3.4	Germany	120243	3.1	3.1
Japan	96851	2.8	Japan	103082	2.6	6.4
Malaysia	84390	2.4	Malaysia	96258	2.5	18.0
Australia	81608	2.4	Australia	96258	2.5	18.0
Italy	65561	1.9	Italy	67642	1.7	3.2
Singapore	60710	1.8	Singapore	68666	1.8	13.1
Nepal	51534	1.5	Nepal	77024	2.0	49.5
Netherlands	51211	1.5	Netherlands	52755	1.3	3.0
Korea(s)	47835	1.4	Korea(s)	49895	1.3	4.3

Spain	42895	1.2	Spain	45247	1.2	5.5
-------	-------	-----	-------	-------	-----	-----

19.3.2 TOURISM S.W.O.T ANALYSIS: INDIA

The specific strength and weakness of the product in relation to the market segments identified are analyzed along with the existing opportunities and threats. A typical SWOT analysis matrix in case of India in reaction to competitive destinations is as under:-

There are various environmental forces influence the tourism industry. The other aspect of this industry is that it is heavily dependent on a set of other industries who are in turn dependant on the tourist flow for their business. This combination of various industries has to work as one to increase the tourist's traffic of the country. This set of industries takes care of the activities that support tourism industries are:

1. The Hotel Industry
2. Airlines
3. The Railways
4. Road Networks
5. The Tour Operators
6. The Government

These facilities decide the status of a place in a tourist's portfolio. They on one hand attract tourists to a particular destination and on the other act as a major demotivating factor if they are unable to fulfill the expectations of the visitors. So the major bottlenecks to this industry are looked into on a priority basis (Only Major One's).

1. Hotel Industry: Hotels form one of the most important support service that affect the arrival of tourist to a country. The major players in the industry are Indian Hotels Company Ltd (IHCL) operating under the Taj brand, the Oberoi, Welcome Group

of Hotels, Hotel Leela Venture and the Ashoka chain of hotels, owned and operated by the Indian Tourism Development Corporation (ITDC).

There are around 1000 classified hotels and the total room availability is pegged at 97,000 rooms. Hotels are classified into six categories according to the star rating assigned by the Department of Tourism. These range from one star to Five star deluxe depending upon size and amenities. About 30% of the rooms fall under the 5-star deluxe categories.

To find out the present status of this industry strength, weakness opportunity and threat (SWOT) analysis is ment. This will help us in understanding this industry and also identify the weak spots

S.W.O.T ANALYSIS OF HOTEL INDUSTRY

Strengths:

- A very wide variety of hotels is present in the country that can fulfill the demand of the tourists.
- There are international players in the market such as Taj and Oberoi & International Chains. Thus, the needs of the international tourist's travelers are met while they are on a visit to India.
- Manpower costs in the Indian hotel industry are one of the lowest in the world. This provides better margins for Indian hotel industry.
- India offers a readymade tourist destination with the resources it has. Thus the magnet to pull customers already exists and has potential grow.

Weaknesses:

- The cost of land in India is high at 50% of total project cost as against 15% abroad. This acts as a major deterrent to the Indian hotel industry.
- The hotel industry in India is heavily staffed. This can be gauged from the facts that while Indian hotel companies have a staff to room ratio of 3:1, this ratio is 1:1 for international hotel companies.

- High tax structure in the industry makes the industry worse off than its international equivalent. In India the expenditure tax, luxury tax and sales tax inflate the hotel bill by over 30%. Effective tax in the South East Asian countries works out to only 4-5%.
- Only 97,000 hotel rooms are available in India today, which is less than the Bangkok hotel capacity.
- The services currently offered by the hotels in India are only limited value added services. It is not comparable to the existing world standards.

Opportunities:

- Demand between the national and the inbound tourists can be easily managed due to difference in the period of holidays. For international tourists the peak season for arrival is between Septembers to March when the climatic conditions are suitable where as the national tourist waits for school holidays, generally the summer months.
- In the long-term the hotel industry in India has latent potential for growth. This is because India is an ideal destination for tourists as it is the only country with the most diverse topography. For India, the inbound tourists are a mere 0.49% of the global figures. This number is expected to increase at a phenomenal rate thus pushing up the demand for the hotel industry.
- Unique experience in heritage hotels.

Threats:

- Guest houses replace the hotels. This is a growing trend in the west and is now catching up in India also, thus diverting the hotel traffic.
- Political turbulence in the area reduces tourist traffic and thus the business of the hotels. In India examples of the same are Insurgency in Jammu Kashmir and the Kargil war.

- Changing trends in the west demand similar changes in India, which here are difficult to implement due to high project costs.
- The economic conditions of a country have a direct impact on the earnings in hotel industry.
- Lack of training man power in the hotel industry.

Transport Facilities

A well knit and coordinated system of transport plays an important role in the sustained economic growth of the country. The present transport system of the country comprises of several modes of transport including rail, road, air transport etc. Tourism industry is also affected by the performance of these services heavy road taxes are the great threat to the tourism industry.

1. The Airline Industry: Airports are the primary infrastructure facility that a country has to offer to the international tourists. It would be surprising to note that renowned tourist's destinations like Jaipur and Goa do not have an international airport. Foreign guests, who constitute more than 60% of the tourists destined for these cities, currently have to travel via Mumbai, unless they are ready to charter a flight. This makes things cumbersome and time consuming, thus discouraging many time conscious tourists from visiting these places. Similar is the case of cities like Agra, Udaipur and Varanasi where foreign tourists account for approximately 50% of the total tourists arrival. These facilities decide the status of a place in a tourist's portfolio. They on one hand attract tourists to a particular destination and on the other act as a major demotivating factor if they are unable to fulfill the expectations of the visitors. So the major bottlenecks to this industry are to be found here. In the subsequent pages an attempt to SWOT analyse some of these services and detect areas that need attention.

To find out the present status of this industry we have done a strength, weakness opportunity and threat (SWOT) analysis. This will help us in understanding this industry and also identify the weak spots.

➤ **S.W.O.T ANALYSIS OF AIRLINES INDUSTRY:**

Strengths:

- Airlines are the most preferred mode of transportation by the foreign tourists as the convenience provided by the airlines is higher.
- The savings in time that this mode of transport offers is immense.
- Manpower costs in the transportation in Indian hotel industry are one of the lowest in the world. This provides better margins for Indian hotel industry.
- India offers a readymade tourist destination connected by air. Thus the magnet to pull customers already exists.
- Low cost carriers have brought boom in air travel.

Weaknesses:

- Inefficiency of the domestic airlines - there are number of instances of flight being cancelled or delayed. Secondly frequent strikes by the pilots and maintenance problems are a major cause of concern. This is one of the reasons that make a tourist disheartened.
- Lack of basic facilities at the airport. When international airports offer such services like free transportation facilities, private lounge facilities at airports, food etc, it sometimes become impossible to find a clear toilet in our international airports.
- Government does not allow the capacity of existing airports to increase and private and foreign operators are not given clearances to operate in the country.

Opportunities:

- As the tourism industry expands the airline industry is also in for a boom.

- Development and up gradation of the present airports, India's geographic location makes it an ideal location to serve as a link between the East and the West.

Threats:

- Domestic airlines (Air India and Indian Airlines) face major competition from other transnational airlines.
- Under cutting in for their existence and then go on to business.

2. Road and Railway Network: Airports being a weak links in Indian tourism, tourists are forced to use roads. More than 80% of the tourists have to use road network but the deplorable road conditions in India do not make the travelling easier. The major factor that hampers the development of road sector is the government control over all the road properties. Internationally, all the major cities within the country are connected with six lane highways. But in India, even the four metros are not well connected. Thus, the basic infrastructure to support the tourism industry is missing.

➤ **S.W.O.T ANALYSIS OF ROAD AND RAILWAYS NETWORK**

Strengths:

- India has one of the largest road networks in the world. Country's total road length was 30, 15,299 km. More roads are being added.
- Trains like Palace on Wheels provide a feel of Indian majesty of the days gone by.
- Deccan odyssey, Heritage on wheel, Taj trains offer unique Rail experience.

Weaknesses:

- The road condition in India is very bad. The roller coaster ride is not what is expected while travelling by the tourists.
- Heavy road taxes.

Opportunities:

- As the tourism industry expands the airline industry is also in for a boom.
- The smaller places that cannot be accessed by the air, road, railways are the next best options.

Threats:

There are no major threats to this industry as there is no substitute at present. Airlines are the only threat, which will take time to develop to come up to have such extensive distribution as rail or roadways.

Travel Agents and Tour Operators

Travel agents and tour operators form the backbone of the industry. They play an important role in promoting the country as a tourist destination. An example, City Cross Travels Private Limited, Mumbai is promoting tourism in Jammu and Kashmir despite the violence that took place some time ago. Similarly other travel agencies are also trying to project a peaceful picture of India abroad. The travel agencies provide package tours that lure the foreign tourists towards our country. These packaged tour extract the best our of places and gives a foreign tourist a feel of the rich cultural diversity of our country.

➤ S.W.O.T ANALYSIS OF TOUR OPERATORS IN INDIA**Strengths:**

- Travel agents are moving from being mere ticket issuers to travel consultants taking complete responsibility for the consumer's needs.
- Travel agencies not only provide the picture of the country to the interested parties but also lure them to visit a country by the attractive packages.

Weaknesses:

- Travel agents are most affected by the taxes that are part of the industry.

Opportunities:

- As the number of tourist is increasing, there is a need to identify their requirements and the travel agencies can tap this segment.

Threats:

- With the advent of internet the role of travel agents is changing and the whole industry faces a threat of extinction unless they change to meet the need of tourists.

The Government of India

One of the most glaring reasons that the study has brought out is the lacuna in the Government's policies towards the industry. The Government is the most important player in this industry and all the other players have to follow the lead taken by it. However, the actions of the government have not been proactive. Rather it has been late in rising to the opportunity that the tourism industry offers. There are not enough incentives been offered to the other players like Hotels and the travel agencies. There are no incentives for the hospitality industry to set up shop in area, as is the case with other industries. The government should be taking the lead and attracting the industry to places that have vast tourist potential but have still not fully developed. Incentives like tax holiday or a reduced rate of duties would go a long way in the promotion of the places. Secondly, the various restrictions those are in place in areas like Sikkim and the North-East should be relaxed so that more people can visit those places.

Even when the Government is in charge of maintaining the sites of historical importance, it has been greatly hampered due to resource crunch. The sites that are under the Archaeological Survey of India are in pathetic condition, as the agency does not have enough manpower or the **money** to look after all of them. This has lead to the gradual decay and destruction of many important sites both by nature as well as because of vandalism. There have been cases where whole temples have been systematically stripped and completely dismantled without the agencies in charge being aware of them.

➤ **Poor Infrastructure:** The infrastructure has been a major reason why the international tourist has been skipping the country. Delayed or absence of connectivity to different locations, lack of proper accommodation facilities, bad roads and no communication facilities are some of the factors that are stopping people from visiting many places.

Unless the infrastructure is properly developed, a large majority of tourists will give the country a skip. Again this is linked to the above bottleneck. The lack of a Government that is proactive. Unless the government sanctions the infrastructure projects there will be no improvements in the situation. A very recent example that has been in the news is the airport project in Bangalore. Although the proposal has been lying with the government for three years, still now it has not been implemented. There is an acute lack of proper accommodation facilities for the tourist. So more hotels have to be built. Even now there are some places that are not properly connected by even good and navigable roads. These also need to be developed.

➤ **Apprehensions about the law and order situations:** The lack of security that is faced by a lot of international tourist is also a major cause for concern. There have been many instances where tourist have been physically assaulted, robbed and sexually harassed. Any such incident reflects badly on the country and creates a negative image in the country from which the tourist has come. In the mid nineties, when insurgency was thought to be on a decline in Jammu and Kashmir, five foreign tourists were kidnapped. This led to a lot of clamor and the State Department of the USA issued a specific warning to its citizens not to visit Jammu and Kashmir. Although the notice was only for J&K still then it affected the total inflow of tourist into the country. Similarly French national/ Japanese National were sexually assaulted in New Delhi and that too had attracted international attention. Apart from these, there are hundreds of other incidents like cheating to murder that tarnish the image of the country. Socio-religious problems (Riots etc) have become a regular

affair and the country is not perceived as a peaceful destination. All these concerns have to be seriously looked into by the concerned agencies.

19.4 TRAFFIC TRENDS AND GROWTH PROSPECTS

1. Eco Tourism India
2. Incredible Medical India
3. Medical Tourism India
4. Scene of India Tourism

19.4.1 Eco Tourism India

Today, Eco-tourism is the fastest growing segment of the tourism industry that attracts between 40 to 60 % of all international tourists, translating into anything between 317 million to 600 million. The diversity of India is to be seen not only in its people, culture, religion, languages and life style, the diversity in fact starts from the land itself which is made up of snowbound peaks of the Himalayas, beautiful cool hills, fertile river valleys, tropical rain forests, blistering hot deserts and breath taking beautiful coasts. Each diverse geographical region generates a startlingly different picture and exploring them provides a unique experience. Now all these are packaged for tourist to provide Eco-friendly holiday sojourn in India.

We are promoting tourism but while promoting tourism to eco-sensitive areas, the emphasis is to control the volume so that the fragile of the area is not disturbed. The whole objective of Eco-tourism is to have purposeful travel to natural areas to understand the culture, history of the environment, taking special care not to alter the integrity of the Eco-system while utilizing the economic opportunities that make conservation of natural resources beneficial to local people. Thus travel to these areas enlightens, educates and revives the tired souls of the Eco-tourists and on the other hand provides a basis of economic enlistment to local people, tribes, or other stake holders directly dependent on the natural heritage. India's snow capped Himalayas are one of our rich Eco-tourism destinations. It not only provide the base

for adventure tourism activities in the form of mountaineering, skiing, rock climbing, mountain river sports, nature walk, orchids, plants - (all these activities are free from any power machine or pollution, the Himalayas house rare creatures such as snow leopard, musk deer, ibex, pheasants of all descriptions, this on the other side the great India desert of that which runs in the North West of India supports a surprising variety of plants and animals.

Green heavens are not only in forests, the islands are also some of the best Eco-tourism destinations. Bangaram Island in Lakshadweep with thatched huts, with private showers and toilets, fishing, scuba diving to see that enchanting coral gardens, swimming in crystal sun warmed waters, sunbathing and exclusiveness at the resorts brings you so close to nature. The Andamans located in India's South Eastern is the Island chain all covered with rain forests ringed by coral reefs, good for viewing marine life, swimming and sunbathing. The access is from Calcutta, Madras to Port Blair and accommodation is available at Hotel Bay Island, Andaman Beach Resort.

Goa is important Eco-tourism destination in India. The hotels like Leela, Taj Resorts are samples of Eco-friendly resorts available there. These are five-star hotels camouflaged with greenery around. Rishikesh in Uttar Pradesh, with the river rafting (white water tourism) yoga, mountain walks, trekking, Angling etc., is getting very popular with younger generation tourists. In Rajasthan, Camel Safari, Horse Safari, Elephant Safari, desert driving and typical village life of Rajasthan provide unique Eco-experience. In Rajasthan, there is one community known as Bishnois and they have to be seen to believe how human being, nature and wildlife can live together even in this 21st century. Thus endless options are available in every part of India for naturalists, Researchers and Eco-holidays.

Ministry of Tourism has also formulated Eco-tourism guidelines for regulated and sustainable Tourism which have focused respect for the frailty of the earth to leave behind the rich natural heritage for future generations to enjoy. Leave

only foot prints, take only photographs but do not take away from natural areas and heritage monuments, encourage local culture, respect local traditions and help in their conservation efforts: do not buy products made from endangered plants or animals such as wildlife skins, ivory, tortoise shell: Always follow designated trails so that animals, plants are not disturbed and try to respect the natural habitats, and support them and those products which promote the cause of environment protection etc., all these have been focused in the Eco-tourism guidelines.

Most of our tour operators, who operate tours in the fragile nature zones, have adopted these ASTA eco-practices (American Society of Travel Agents) for the Eco-tourism business and organize a briefing session before the start of tours in the forests, mountains to educate their clients. Like airlines do inside the aircraft before the flight departs. Being late comer in tourism we have learnt enough from the mistakes of man; tourism developed countries and have imitated right steps. No doubt, very few countries in the world can provide such varied options as India can mainly being a vast country. It is environmentally yours! India - Explore now.

19.4.2 Incredible Medical Tourism India

The new domestic and global campaigns for the current year focus on India as a destination for niche segments like Medical Tourism, Cruise Tourism, and Spiritual Tourism. The aim is to expand the range of the tourism products in India both for the domestic and international consumers. The Ministry has also promoted Monsoon Tourism in various states.

Medical Tourism - Health is Wealth:

One of the remarkable initiatives of the year was medical tourism. The potential of Medical Tourism which can bring additional ten thousand crore foreign exchange annually, was never considered in the past. The medical tourism market in India is currently estimated to be worth over \$300m. According to McKinsey

reports, India is poised to generate business worth US\$ 2.2 billion by 2010, but is yet to have a standardisation system in place. Also, there is a dearth of synergies between hospitals and tour operators. A tripartite synergy between the hospitals, tour operators and state governments was imperative to harness India's latent medical tourism potential.

Initiatives:

The government of India has taken up a number of steps to increase foreign tourist arrivals to India. They include: Creation of World Class Collaterals, Centralized Electronic Media Campaigns, Direct cooperative marketing with tour operators and wholesalers overseas, Greater Focus in the emerging markets, particularly in the Region of China; North-East Asia and South East Asia, Participation in Trade Fairs & Exhibitions, Optimizing Editorial PR and Publicity, Use of Internet and Web marketing, Generating Tourist Publications, Reinforcing hospitality programs including grant of air passages to invite media personnel and tour operators and Launching of Road Shows in key source markets of Europe.

Initiatives have been launched in the sphere of Medical Tourism in partnership with the private sector to make India emerge as a major global hub. Expert committees have been set up to draw plan and criteria for accreditation for the hospitals and related agencies. A large number of job generation activities are expected through medical tourism. The government of India has introduced a new category of Medical Visa (M-Visa), which can be given for specific period to foreign tourists coming to India for medical treatment.

The Ministry of Health & Family Welfare and the Ministry of Tourism have jointly formed a Task Force with a view to promoting India as a Health Destination for persons across the globe so as to gainfully utilize the health care expertise and infrastructure available in the country.

Sub-committees were constituted to sort out issues of accreditation of hospitals, standardization of services and marketing. The work of price-bending of

hospitals to ensure uniform and reasonable prices for particular treatment and accreditation for maintaining required international standards have been completed. The Ministry of Tourism has also prepared promotional CDs, brochures and other material for launching campaign in overseas markets in January next year. A new category of visa, M-visa providing long stay to medical tourist and his or her companion also started this year.

For not so critical surgery, tourists from the US, UK and Canada like to combine it with travel. They prefer to visit cold destinations like Shimla, Manali, and Mussoorie after their surgery. For a nose job, tourist can head to the backwaters of Kerala, or combine a tummy-tuck with a visit to the Taj Mahal.

Cosmetic surgery is the next big thing to come packaged with tourism in India. The Incredible India! Website promises cosmetic-surgery tourism for anything from hair implants, scalp reductions, rhinoplasty (reshaping or re-contouring of the nose), face-lift, cosmetic eyelid surgery, brow lifts, sub-metal lipectomy for double chin, chin and cheek enlargement, and lip reductions to various types of breast surgery/reconstruction and liposuction.

India is hoping to divert some traffic from established cosmetic surgery destinations like Argentina, Brazil, Costa Rica, Dominican Republic, South Africa, and Thailand. About 1,53,000 foreigners took advantage of the comparatively low-priced medical services last year. They are expected to increase multifold in the next five years, with about one-third of the traffic going in for some sort of cosmetic surgery procedure across states.

Opportunity for Tour Operators

Mainly due to low cost and banking on international goodwill of Indian Doctors, the initiative is hoping to benefit both hospitality and healthcare industry. The international marketing team for new-age healthcare chains like Apollo, Fortis and

Escorts are tying up with hospitality industry and service providers to help these tourists improve their looks in five star comfort.

Others who are part of this health tourism circuit include AIIMS, Christian Medical College, Tata Memorial Hospital, Indraprastha Medical Corporation, Escorts Hospital and Research Centre.

Erco travels has tied up with Apollo Hospital in New Delhi for various cosmetic procedures like liposuction. Similarly, the Leela Palaces and Resorts hospitality chain has announced a tie-up with UK-based Globe Health Tours to offer cosmetic procedures in Kerala.

19.4.3 Medical Tourism

Cost effective private medical care in collaboration with the tourism industry for patients needing surgical or other forms of specialized treatments is the trust of medical tourism concept.

Health Tourism is now a common form of vacationing and covers a broad spectrum of medical services. It mixes leisure, fun relaxation together with wellness & Health care. Many people from developed world had been coming to India & even they come now in more numbers for the rejuvenation promised by Yoga & Ayurvedic massage.

Now with a good blend of top class medical hospitals with doctors of international repute, our hospitals are being considered for hip replacement or brain surgery lot of foreign patients including from developed countries like UK and US are coming to India.

Affluent nations with high medical care costs look for effective options & India has proved to be very competitive which have good hospitals very salubrious climate, advanced medical facilities & built in tourism medical options.

Things are going in favour of India as compared to Singapore, Thailand, in view of high quality expertise of medical professionals, backed by the latest equipment in use & nursing facilities and above all cost effectiveness of the medical packages.

India has gained high reputation for handling very specialized treatments like cardiology, cardiothoracic surgery, Joint Replacement, Orthopedic Surgery, Gastroenterology, Ophthalmology, transplants including Neurology, Neurosurgery, Oncology, Rheumatology, Dermatology, Pediatric Surgery, Plastic Surgery and General Surgery.

Indian corporate hospitals are on par if not better than the best hospitals in any parts of the global & thus become a preferred medical destination.

In addition to the cost part, top class medical care, a big draw for foreign patients. And the very minimal or hardly any waitlist as is common in Europe; USA is the favourable point for India. In fact priority treatment is offered today in Indian hospitals to foreigners.

The Apollo Group, Escorts in New Delhi, Jaslok & Hindjas in Mumbai are of great repute other corporate hospitals include Dr. L.V. Prasad Eye Hospital in Hyderabad. NM Excellence in Mumbai, in Vellore, all have been handling a steady increasing flow of foreign patients.

What makes India unique is the costs are much less almost one third of those in Asian Countries & one tenth of UK/USA or Canada and more patients are now from poorer countries like Bangladesh where treatment may not be available.

Now the country is moving into a new area of "Medical Outsourcing" where sub contractors provide services to the overburdened medical care system in western countries.

It is estimated that medical tourism could bring between \$1 billion to \$2 billion US into the country by 2012. The MC Kinsey report which has shown the above estimate has also estimated that Medical Tourism to India is growing by 30% a year.

India's top related education system is helping in its growth by churning out 20,000 to 30,000 doctors, engineers, nurses each year which helps to sustain the growth. As understood from sources, Apollo Hospital treated 60,000 patients 2001-04. Dr. Reddy had negotiations with British National Health service for treatment of their patients at a fraction of the cost in Britain for either govt. or private care. Infected Apollo Hospital is aggressively moving into Medical outsourcing. India is now promoting easy import of modern equipment. Apollo now has 37 hospitals with about 7000 beds. The company in partnership with Kuwait, Srilanka and many other countries.

According to study conducted by the C.I.I. & MC Kinsey Consultants last year some 150,000 foreigner visited India for medical treatment with number increasing between 15% to 20% per year.

With an increasing number of foreign patients India could earn Rs. 100 billion through Medical Tourism by 2012 is their study report. It is not only the cost but competency which is India's selling point - through its bench mark is cheap safe and best alternative.

In one article in USA I read about costs comparison - Instead of paying \$ 2,00,000 for a mitral valve surgery in US a patient could travel to India & receive the same treatment for \$ 7000 US. Similarly rather than paying UK15000 Pound for hip resurfacing in UK a patient can get the same treatment for UK 5000 Pound in India including surgery, airfare & hotel stay (Bloomberg Market & Magazine source).

A number of private hospitals also offer packages designed to attract foreign patients, with airport transfer, Hospital bed, car service, in room internet access, private chefs and the trend is health holiday combining surgery with Yoga holiday or trip to Taj or hill station etc.

The post surgery care is the best selling point of Indian medical tourism. Medical Tourism is going to be major foreign exchange earner as increasing number of patients unwilling to accept long queue in US, UK and high cost now will travel

to India under go surgery with traditional therapies like Yoga, meditation, Ayurveda and other naturo therapy. On India's high specialized medical treatment at an affordable with no waiting time is my feeling.

19.4.4 Scene of Indian Tourism

Very Progressive:

- Arrivals show upward travel since 2003 and average growth of 15% year on basis.
- Infact India's growth is much better than global growth which is around 5%.
- Last year 2006 as per provisional estimates global tourist arrival was 842 million an increase from 808 million in 2005. (+5%).
- India achieved 4.43 million figures with 14.2 % growth in 2006.
- Foreign Exchange earnings showed better growth -+14.6% US\$-6 billion. In rupee terms it is Rs. 29603.56 crores (+ 17.6%).
- Domestic Tourism has shown better progress - 368 million in 2005 -may reach 500 million in 2006. About 150 million are from urban cities, so there is greater potential to increase.
- Out bound tourism is progressing much faster than international arrivals. It is estimated that in 2005 it reached 7 million & by 2010 it may cross 15 million. It will be second to China in this segment.
- Tourism contributed 5.90% to GDP in 2003-04 (both direct & indirect).
- Tourism accounts for 4.59% of total number of **jobs** in the country and if indirect jobs are also included it reaches 8.78% that means 38.6 million jobs are created through tourism related activities.
- Labor / capital ratio by per million rupees of investment at 1984-86 prices.

Agriculture Sector	- 44.07
Manufacturing	- 12.06
Mining	- 02.06

Hotel & Transport	- 39.00
Tourism	- 47.00
Total	- 86.00

- Tourism is thus a major driver of economic growth and employment in India.
- Indian Industry is growing at close to 7.5% a year & services sector is moving ahead at 8% a year. It is tourism, however, which has recorded the highest level of growth - more than 15% per annum consecutively for the last three years.

Overall Scene:

For India, tourism is most essential as it acts as:

- A major force for preservation of arts & crafts.
- Preservation of heritage monuments/wildlife.
- International understanding.
- Opening up backward & far-flung areas.
- Distribution of income from developed areas to under developed regions.
- Women empowerment.
- Rural Development through rural tourism steps.
- Over all infrastructural development as tourism is a multi dimensional activity. Waterways, Roads, Aviation.
- Steps for poverty elimination.
- A sense of pride in peoples mind by having knowledge about unique qualities of the country.
- National Integration.
- Source of Foreign Exchange earnings to help in balance of payments & international trade.

All these are not only essential for India but have opened up new challenges - especially to sustain the advantages which India wants to achieve through tourism.

CHALLENGES:

- We have not been able to utilize our potentials in full. We lack positive mind set to do something big & that is also reflected in tourism field also. The biggest challenge for us to change our attitude.
- We have to understand our real problems and many of those are influenced by internal factors and external factors. Internal one includes a firm determination to formulate a clear-cut policy which should have tourism friendly directives. The Policy is totally inconsistent and policy is even changing with change of Government.
- Tourism is an easy prey to put loads of taxes by successive Governments - no tax incentive, no priority to tourism, no human resource development incentives - with taxes the destination has become an overpriced product - we can't give the matching price which our competitors are offering. We are losing business to our competitors on this account.
- In external terrorism is a big challenge. This is going to continue which has further been aggravated by rising energy prices, inflation, interest rates, upward insurance fees, spread of avian flue- these are serious threat for tourism sector and we need to put in place crisis management programme. We are yet to do our homework united.
- We are too dependent on cash rich long distance European/USA Canada Region for our international tourist arrivals. Anything negative happens in India, tourism becomes the first casualty and these tourists avoid India - these countries are over smart in issuing advisories and we do not response to fast first. To counter attack we have to work out strategies to attract middle budget tourist's form the neighboring countries. Inter-regional-SARC region, middle east, which are within 3 to 4 hrs flying time & can give us traffic throughout the year.

- We have many things to offer, many unique products - it is hard to communicate all that to all visitors and now it stand as a challenge to properly position these products in these neighboring markets. All these products are acceptable to them.
- We have failed to reach new markets as we lack funds to do market research. We are now quite late to know about the Chinese market. They are moving to many unexplored destinations and they are quite high spenders, spending \$ 175-200 per day per person. When going abroad like Indians spend lot of their savings in shopping. We have to reach this lucrative market. Business to business provide essential links & India should make right platform for reaching this new market. This is going to give real volume to our arrivals.
- New communications technologies are changing fast with visible impact on our way of life. The internet today has dramatically changed the world. What could not be ascertained by personal visits now can be known with comfort and authenticity with a button click. Our tour operators have to meet this challenge by updating their system.
- Concept of Border free world is in fashion & there is new grouping - E.U., Middle East, African Union, COTAL and Visa free and easy movements with in the region. We have to ensure we follow a visa free or liberal visa policy. We have still a very rigid entry formality - visa, RAP, PAP, Inner line permit and photography restrictions, high fees which are very annoying for tourists.

Essentials:

- We are not moving with new trends.
- A new industry structure is emerging like acquisitions of Thomas Cook in the travel industry, Air Sahara in the travel industry which is new mantra of success i.e. look for global giants and net work with them but there will be

smaller & faster moving players These companies have their, own set of challenges.

- The giants will bring its own set of complexity along with an opportunity to exploit its size and scope as well as large number of professionals with durable competitive age.
- The smaller & faster moving players will depend on speed & their nimbleness to create a distinct advantage.
- Indian Tourism has to understand the unique value propositions and develop business support, incentives. Accordingly - This will ultimately bring the ultimate benefits to clients.

Human Resource Development Issues:

- The battle field for talent hunt is in operation. For a long time new travel & tourism industry facing scarcity in well-trained talent & this is going to intensify further. since the same talent pool is going to be targeted by new emerging industries - BPO'S to give an example.
- If the travel & tourism industry is to grow & increase its contribution to GDP, we need to generate a huge talent pool which can take the Indian Travel & Tourism Industry to the higher level.
- The talent issue needs to be at two levels. One at the grass root level here we need to create infrastructure by working with training institutes to revamp the curriculum that will meet the changing needs of the industry as it evolves to face the challenges of the new economy and more informed and demanding travelers.
- At the other end, we need to look at creating future leaders from the talent pool that exist with in the industry by training them regularly to upgrade their skills which will enable them to face new challenges with confidence and lead travel & tourism industry to higher levels.

Domestic Tourism:

The consumer landscape will expand significantly with new opportunities with 5 million domestic tourists by 2006. Vacationing will be the second largest spending category competing with eating out. It will be essential to understand consumer's mind, and offer the end consumer value innovation, understand vacation spending habits which changes from community to community. Different communities are to be targeted with different propositions. Our Tour operators should understand the implications of these customer needs.

Specific Issues:

- Aviation: We should not go complacent with our four million arrivals. We are yet to be connecting from traffic generating markets. We have no flights from Latin American countries. Even we do not use our full capacity because our national carriers do not use the capacity available under bilateral treaty because of lack of aircrafts.
- So air capacity is always remained a big problem. We must allow all those foreign airlines who are willing to fly to India without putting lot of conditions or privatize soon our national carriers so that it becomes competitive or we loose business. As potential clients are not going to wait. They have many more destinations to choose from.
- In the aviation field our problems are all the more complex with aviation related taxes. States should reduce ATF tax (which varies from 4% to 25% from State to State).
- Our Airports are outdated, they need total face lift to take more charters, new age aircrafts and up market business traffic.
- Airports forms first impression & we cannot create right image with present conditions of our airports.
- We need to relax the charter norms. This will help us to combat off seasonal problems. New airports can take away congestion from metropolitan cities &

open up new tourist centers that can ensure balanced growth of tourism all over the country.

The Indian aviation & tourism industry is seeing rapid changes, rapid traffic growth, massive fleet orders, and new set of budget airlines. The year 2005 was marked by the entry of no less than five new carriers including Air India Express, Spice Jet, Kingfisher airlines, Paramount Airways & Go Air representing variety of different models of aircrafts. Several more carriers are planning to launch service in 2006 including Jagsons, Indigo, Premier to name a few.

To take advantage of the market growth both new & incumbent carriers have been ordering aircraft at a rate never seen before in India. Notable among there was an order of 100 aircrafts by Indigo and the first Indian order of A-380 aircraft by Kingfisher airline. By the end of the year Indian carries are going to place order for 400 aircrafts. An incredible number when compared to the total combined number currently operating is only half of that.

- Indian airlines & Air India are not behind. They are also going for heavy orders, Jet Airways have heavy orders.

Outbound:

More Indian's are traveling abroad than even before. Technology has transformed the way they make booking & the job opportunities it has opened. Business travel is increasing & India & China will have maximum business travelers. 70% will be business travelers for India as per an estimate given by Carlson Wagon Marketing Agency. Efforts to be made to ensure more Indians explore their own country rather than traveling abroad for leisure holidays.

Other Constraints:

It will need to improve our infrastructure. In infrastructure the budget accommodations should be the priority as people would like to move with their families and like to spend longer holidays. Such accommodations will be needed at

island resorts, hill resorts, and wild life resorts. People would like to be nearer to the nature. Rail travel also to be modernized with speedy train services and railways also should provide budget accommodations at their stations where they have enough lands to provide such facilities.

Safety and security will be the most important challenge for Indian Tourism. There will be regular socio religious events and terrorist activities throughout Region. So effective steps is to be placed at all the entry points.

Entertainment:

Though it appears to be of marginal importance India Tourism has to work out various entertainments for tourists specially for the evening part as tourist do not have any opportunity to enjoy evenings in India. Some sort of Delhi Hut type entertainment centers should be available in all the states where cultural platform to be established along with shopping arcades and discounted offers for tourists.

Conclusion: If all these areas are action properly then only India can be the right destination in the world. Otherwise, we will be quite far away from our competitive countries like, China, Thailand, Malaysia, Singapore even Mauritius.

19.5 GLOSSARY

- **Business visitor:** A business visitor is a visitor whose main purpose for a tourism trip corresponds to the business and professional category.
- **Country of reference:** The country of reference refers to the country for which the measurement is done.
- **Country of residence:** The country of residence of a household is determined according to the centre of predominant economic interest of its members. If a person resides (or intends to reside) for more than one year in a given country and has there his/her centre of economic interest (for example, where the predominant amount of time is spent), he/she is considered as a resident of this country.

- **Destination (main destination) of a trip:** The main destination of a tourism trip is defined as the place visited that is central to the decision to take the trip.
- **Domestic tourism:** Comprises the activities of a resident visitor within the country of reference, either as part of a domestic tourism trip or part of an outbound tourism trip.
- **Employment in tourism industries:** Employment in tourism industries may be measured as a count of the persons employed in tourism industries in any of their jobs, as a count of the persons employed in tourism industries in their main job, as a count of the jobs in tourism industries, or as full-time equivalent figures.
- **Excursionist (or same-day visitor):** A visitor (domestic, inbound or outbound) is classified as a same-day visitor (or excursionist) if his/her trip does not include an overnight stay.
- **Forms of tourism:** There are three basic forms of tourism: domestic tourism, inbound tourism, and outbound tourism. These can be combined in various ways to derive the following additional forms of tourism: internal tourism, national tourism and international tourism.
- **Inbound tourism:** Comprises the activities of a non-resident visitor within the country of reference on an inbound tourism trip.
- **Internal tourism:** Internal tourism comprises domestic tourism plus inbound tourism, that is to say, the activities of resident and non-resident visitors within the country of reference as part of domestic or international tourism trips.
- **International tourism:** International tourism comprises inbound tourism plus outbound tourism, that is to say, the activities of resident visitors outside the country of reference, either as part of domestic or outbound tourism trips and the activities of non-resident visitors within the country of reference on inbound tourism trips.

- **MICE:** Meetings, Incentives, Conferences and Exhibitions
- **National tourism:** National tourism comprises domestic tourism plus outbound tourism, that is to say, the activities of resident visitors within and outside the country of reference, either as part of domestic or outbound tourism trips.
- **Outbound tourism:** Comprises the activities of a resident visitor outside the country of reference, either as part of an outbound tourism trip or as part of a domestic tourism trip.
- **Tourism expenditure:** Tourism expenditure refers to the amount paid for the acquisition of consumption goods and services, as well as valuables, for own use or to give away, for and during tourism trips.
- **Tourist (or overnight visitor):** A visitor (domestic, inbound or outbound) is classified as a tourist (or overnight visitor), if his/her trip includes an overnight stay.
- **Travel / tourism Travel refers to the activity of travelers:** A traveller is someone who moves between different geographic locations, for any purpose and any duration. The visitor is a particular type of traveller and consequently tourism is a subset of travel.
- **Travel party:** A travel party is defined as visitors travelling together on a trip and whose expenditures are pooled.
- **Trip:** A trip refers to the travel by a person from the time of departure from his/her usual residence until he/she returns: it thus refers to a round trip. Trips taken by visitors are tourism trips.
- **Visitor:** A visitor is a traveller taking a trip to a main destination outside his/her usual environment, for less than a year, for any main purpose (business, leisure or other personal purpose) other than to be employed by a resident entity in the country or place visited. A visitor (domestic, inbound or

outbound) is classified as a tourist (or overnight visitor), if his/her trip includes an overnight stay, or as a same-day visitor (or excursionist) otherwise.

19.6 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. Write down a detailed note on Medical tourism.
2. Write down a detailed note on Eco tourism.
3. Explain the various strength of tourism industry.
4. Explain the various opportunities of tourism industry.
5. Explain the various weaknesses of tourism industry.
6. Explain the various threats for the tourism industry.
7. Write down the detailed notes on present status of Indian tourism industry.

19.7 REFERENCES

- <http://www.gourkanjilal.com/india-tourism-scene/india-tourism-scene.html>